

**Do patterns of ellipsis in text support systemic
functional linguistics' 'context-metafunction hook-up'
hypothesis?**

A corpus based approach

Benjamin Clarke

**A thesis submitted to Cardiff University in fulfilment of the requirements for
the degree of Doctor of Philosophy**

August 2012

Summary

In this thesis, systemic functional linguistics' long-assumed 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis is subjected to its first large-scale, data-driven exploration.

The claims embodied in the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis (henceforth CMHH) concern the relationship between language and context. Viewed as a set of relationships modelled with systemic primacy, linguistic phenomena group into three metafunctional sorts according to systemic functional linguists. The CMHH claims that these three metafunctional groupings correspond to three parameters of semiotic context such that they share a realisational relationship.

The CMHH is one of the assumed strengths of the theory of systemic functional linguistics (henceforth SFL). Yet, despite its centrality to wider SFL research, ventures to test it on large-scale with naturally occurring language data are notable by their absence in SFL work.

This project takes a step in the direction of filling the aforementioned void. Adopting Martin's model of the contextual mode parameter as a starting point, the project proceeds on the assumption that if SFL's CMHH is predictively sound, variation in 'mode of discourse' should correlate with variation in the occurrence of ellipsis in text. Assembling four different sub-corpora of natural language data varied in their contextual mode values following Martin – but otherwise in contextual identity – cases of ellipsis are coded along several variables. Statistical calculations are conducted on the results of this analysis. These calculations allow for detailed cross corpora comparisons which in turn allow for conclusions relative to the central research question to be drawn.

The results suggest support for the CMHH at a broad level of generality. The most significant results in this regard are: (i) ellipsis is found to be more frequent the more ancillary a text's context is; and (ii) the more ancillary a text's context, the greater proportion of its instances of ellipsis are of the situational, rather than textual, type.

Acknowledgments

A work of a kind such as a PhD thesis comprising, as it does, such significant time and energy is never truly the product of just the author's efforts. I have no illusions that I would have been without any hope of putting together the few hundred or so pages which follow had it not been for the people mentioned on this and the next page. I have been very lucky to have been the receiver of so much support, both professional and personal. I can only hope I that have honoured this support by producing a piece of research which does justice to the efforts of others from which I have benefited. As has become all but a fixed phrase in the register of acknowledgments, any shortcomings that remain are, of course, wholly my responsibility.

It is appropriate that the first two people to whom I offer my thanks are those who first told me I would be capable of such a feat. As a second-year undergraduate student, I'm sure I would have found the possibility difficult to believe. However, it seems time has proved Dr Gordon Tucker and Dr Lise Fontaine right. Gordon and Lise encouraged my interest for the academic study of language very early on. As two inspiring teachers who I looked up to, it was initially a little bit un-nerving when they made great effort to include me in informal and formal conversations about language. They taught me to believe in my ability as a researcher and in so doing gave me the confidence necessary to achieve it. I am hugely grateful to them both for encouraging me to believe in my academic ability.

I extend both my thanks and my apologies to the primary supervisor of my PhD, Dr Tom Bartlett. I thank him for his unwavering support; for always having an open door for me to discuss my PhD research with him and for bending over backwards in an attempt to see me over the line. I apologise to him for at times being a very difficult, digressing student, precious of letting go of his work. Using his favourite football analogy, I hope that as a result of his input I have managed, in the way that I work, to become a little more like the George Graham Arsenal vintage and a little less, therefore, like the Arsene Wenger Arsenal vintage.

I am grateful to all the staff at the Centre for Language and Communication Research at Cardiff University from the years 2003 through to 2012. During this time, I have been both a student, in one form or another, and a postgraduate tutor in CLCR. Without exception, every member of staff has made me feel welcome, has been interested in my ideas and has encouraged me. I would particularly like to thank Dr Joanna Thornborrow and Professor Alison Wray for their very significant inputs at very key moments in the project. I would also like to thank Dr Gerard O'Grady with whom, along with Dr Bartlett, Dr Fontaine and Dr Tucker, I have had the pleasure of having many a pleasant, fruitful and lively conversation on matters of a linguistic nature and, occasionally, a football-related one too – a rare capacity for a Chelsea fan.

I am grateful to the systemic functional linguistics community. I have had many very valuable conversations with some very influential figures in the field. This input has been valuable to my education. In no order other than an alphabetic one, my thanks to Professor Chris Butler, Professor David Butt, Professor Ruqaiya Hasan, Dr Annabell Lukin, Dr Mick O'Donnell, Mr Geoff Thompson and Dr Rebeccah Wegener. I am sure there are a whole host of other people whose thoughts and ideas I have benefited from. In this regard, a special thank you is extended to Margaret Berry whom I met three years ago when she came out of her retirement. As a colleague respected for many years by all those in the field, I have been extremely lucky to

have benefited from very many long conversations with Margaret by e-mail. A second special thank you is to Professor Robin Fawcett. I particularly extend my thanks to him for his making available to me a wealth of ideas, published or unpublished, his own or of others. Robin has been extremely generous with his resources and his time and like many other systemic functional linguists, I have benefited greatly from his generosity.

I am indebted to Dr Mick O'Donnell for creating UAM CorpusTool, a fantastic piece of coding software which formed a centre-piece in the methodology of this work. More than just creating this software, Mick has been staggeringly generous, not only in making his software freely available, but particularly in providing incredibly extensive 'our of hours' support to help me use it. I am sure that a great proportion of the systemics community feels like it owes a huge thanks to Mick. I am certainly one of them.

I thank the Arts and Humanities Research Council for funding my doctoral research, particularly those selected as the Council's assessors summer 2007 who decided my project was worth supporting financially. Such recognition goes a significant way to instilling confidence in one's self. Without this funding, the research would simply not have happened. A time of economic downturn should remind us not to take the value of our research for granted, either in grass economic terms or in some more meaningful measure. Thank you too to all staff working for the Arts and Humanities Research Council. Whenever I have needed to contact them for any reason, their organisation and professionalism has always left me extremely impressed.

I would also like to thank all my colleagues in the School of English at University of Leeds. I was offered a post at the School in September 2011. My colleagues, particularly Professor Clive Upton, Dr Fiona Douglas, Dr Christiana Gregoriou, Dr Alison Johnson and Dr Laura Paterson as well as the Head of School, Professor John Whale, have supported me in finishing my thesis at every possible opportunity. Their accommodating me in very many ways over the past few months is a debt I shall owe them for some time to come.

On a completely personal note, I owe two final sets of thanks. The first such group are all my friends who have helped keep me sane at very many challenging times throughout the course of the PhD. Particularly focal amongst these are Alex Holland, Ben Wright, Tim Vizard and Janus Mortensen whose company I have frequently had the pleasure of during my doctoral studies.

The biggest thank you is saved for last. To the three most important people in my life: my Mum, my Dad and my girlfriend Sally, all I love very dearly, though I probably do not tell them so nearly enough. Without the happiness they bring to my life, I don't think I would have been able to have summoned up the grit and staying power necessary to see this work through to its conclusion. I only hope they can see the extent of, and can take pride in, my efforts. This work is dedicated to them.

**Do patterns of ellipsis in text support systemic functional linguistics' 'context-
metafunction hook-up' hypothesis? A corpus-based approach**

| | Page |
|---|------|
| Abstract | i |
| Acknowledgements | ii |
| Table of contents | iv |
| List of figures | vii |
| | |
| 1. Introduction | 1 |
| | |
| 2. Setting the context in systemic functional linguistics | 10 |
| 2.1. The global theoretical abstractions of systemic functional theory | 10 |
| 2.2.1. Stratification | 11 |
| 2.2.2. System | 16 |
| 2.2.3. Metafunction | 23 |
| 2.2.4. Other theoretical abstractions and philosophical orientation | 29 |
| 2.2. The 'context metafunction hook-up' hypothesis explained | 31 |
| 2.2.1 Organisation at the lexicogrammatical and semantic strata | 32 |
| 2.2.2 Organisation at the contextual stratum | 35 |
| 2.2.3 The nature of the 'hook-up' relationship | 39 |
| 2.2.4 Operationalising the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis for falsification through analysis | 42 |
| | |
| 3. Ellipsis as a dependent variable measure | 43 |
| 3.1 The clause as the structural unit under focus in this project | 43 |
| 3.2 The Quirk et al. grammar's atheoretical account of | 46 |

| | |
|---|----|
| ellipsis as a fuzzy grammatical phenomenon | |
| 3.2.1 Five criteria for ellipsis | 47 |
| 3.2.1.1 The 'precisely recoverable' criterion | 48 |
| 3.2.1.2 The 'grammatically defective' criterion | 50 |
| 3.2.1.3 The 're-insertion of the missing element(s) gives a grammatical and synonymous structure' criterion | 53 |
| 3.2.1.4 The 'textually recoverable' criterion | 54 |
| 3.2.1.5 The 'exact copy' criterion | 56 |
| 3.2.2 A gradience scale of ellipsis types based on the five criteria | 57 |
| 3.2.3 A working definition of ellipsis for this project based on the five criteria | 62 |
| 3.3 Previous accounts of ellipsis in systemic functional linguistics | 66 |
| 3.3.1 The metafunctional membership of ellipsis | 68 |
| 3.3.2 The stratal location of ellipsis | 70 |
| 4. Developing a methodology for coding cases of ellipsis across contextually-varied corpora | 72 |
| 4.1 The independent variable: A relevant spectrum of contextual variation | 72 |
| 4.1.1 Organisation at the contextual stratum revisited | 72 |
| 4.1.2 The 'mode of discourse' parameter of context: Primary considerations and primary systems | 74 |
| 4.1.2.1 Matthiessen's systematisation of Hasan's primary 'mode' considerations | 75 |
| 4.1.2.2 Martin's systematisation of his own primary 'mode' considerations | 78 |
| 4.1.2.3 The correlation between Hasan's and Martin's descriptions of primary matters at the 'mode of discourse' contextual parameter | 81 |

| | | |
|---------|--|-----|
| 4.1.3 | The EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE primary 'mode' system | 94 |
| 4.2 | The data and dataset design: Corpora of contextually- varied texts | 104 |
| 4.2.1 | Controlled contextual variables | 104 |
| 4.2.1.1 | The 'field of discourse' parameter of context: Primary considerations and primary systems | 105 |
| 4.2.1.2 | The 'tenor of discourse' parameter of context: Primary considerations and primary systems | 108 |
| 4.2.2 | The corpus | 112 |
| 4.2.2.1 | 'Newspaper reports' sub-corpus | 112 |
| 4.2.2.2 | 'Joy of six' editorial' sub-corpus | 116 |
| 4.2.2.3 | 'Radio commentary' sub-corpus | 119 |
| 4.2.2.4 | 'TV commentary' sub-corpus | 121 |
| 4.3 | The coding software and the associated annotation scheme | 124 |
| 4.3.1 | The coding software: UAM CorpusTool | 125 |
| 4.3.2 | The organisation of linguistic information and its theoretical status | 134 |
| 4.3.3 | Operationalising textual metafunctional phenomena for objective study | 137 |
| 4.3.4 | The coding scheme: Relevant information and relevant distinctions | 142 |
| 5. | What do patterns of ellipsis have to say about the context- metafunction hook-up' hypothesis? The results of analysis | 151 |
| 5.1 | General descriptive-statistical profiling of the four corpora | 153 |
| 5.2 | Patterns in the frequency of ellipsis per se | 156 |
| 5.3 | Patterns in the occurrence of functional-structural types of ellipsis | 166 |
| 5.4 | Patterns in the occurrence of recoverability types of ellipsis | 190 |
| 6. | Ellipsis? Mode of discourse? So what? Putting the analytical results into some wider context | 199 |
| 6.1. | Issues arising fundamental to language | 200 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| 6.2. Issues arising fundamental systemic functional linguistics' descriptions of context | 204 |
| 6.3. Issues arising fundamental to methodology | 208 |
| List of references | 215 |

LIST OF FIGURES

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| Fig. 1.i | Cyclical renewal in the progress of knowledge in a Popperian view of science |
| Figure 2.1.1.i | The strata of language, as theorised according to systemic functional linguistics |
| Figure 2.1.2.i | Paradigmatic and syntagmatic relations as vertical and horizontal axes |
| Figure 2.1.2.ii | Lexicogrammatical 'MOOD TYPE' system as an example of 'either-or' systemic logic |
| Figure 2.1.2.iii | MOOD systems combining to form system networks |
| Figure 2.1.2.iv | Semantic 'ROLE ALLOCATION' system as an example of 'both-and' systemic logic |
| Figure 2.1.2.v | Lexicogrammatical 'TAGGING TYPE' system as an example of a 'disjunct' complex entry condition |
| Figure 2.1.2.vi | Semantic 'QUESTION TYPE' system as an example of a 'conjunct' complex entry condition |
| Figure 2.1.3.i | Lexicogrammatical 'RELATIONAL TYPE' system as an example of a direct delicacy dependency |
| Figure 2.1.3.ii | Lexicogrammatical 'EXPANDING TYPE' system as an example of an indirect delicacy dependency |
| Figure 2.1.3.iii | Lexicogrammatical 'VERBAL TYPE' system as an example of simultaneity dependency |
| Figure 2.1.3.iv | Systemic dependency indicating metafunctional diversity |
| Figure 3.1.i | Fawcett's (2008: 75) basic relationships of syntax, following the proposals of Fawcett (2000) |
| Figure 3.1.ii | This project's limit of coverage of ellipsis, syntactically |
| Figure 3.2.2.i | Types of ellipsis defined along a scale of prototypicality |
| Figure 4.1.2.1.i | Hasan's primary MODE OF DISCOURSE systems at the contextual stratum according to Matthiessen |
| Figure 4.1.2.1.ii | A re-interpretation of Matthiessen's systematisation of Hasan's primary MODE OF DISCOURSE systems |
| Figure 4.1.2.2.i | Primary MODE OF DISCOURSE systems at the contextual stratum, according to Martin |
| Figure 4.1.2.3.i | Comparing Hasan's LANGUAGE ROLE and Martin's EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE primary 'mode' systems |

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Figure 4.1.2.3.ii | A snapshot of multiple semiotic systems and their shared semiotic context |
| Figure 4.1.2.3.iii | A re-interpretation of Matthiessen systematisation of Hasan's primary MODE OF DISCOURSE systems |
| Figure 4.1.2.3.iv | Comparing Hasan's PROCESS SHARING and Martin's INTERPERSONALLY-ORIENTED MODE primary 'mode' systems |
| Figure 4.1.2.3.v | Comparing Hasan's and Martin's primary systems at the 'mode of discourse' contextual parameter |
| Figure 4.1.2.3.vi | Comparing Hasan's and Martin's primary 'mode' systems having omitted Hasan's MEDIUM system |
| Figure 4.1.3.i | Martin's EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE primary MODE OF DISCOURSE system |
| Figure 4.1.3.ii | Martin's systemic distinction between 'accompanying social process' and 'constituting social process' experientially-oriented modes |
| Figure 4.1.3.iii | Martin's systemic distinction between 'participation' and 'commentary' accompanying social process modes |
| Figure 4.1.3.iv | Martin's systemic distinction between 'ancillary' and 'monitoring' participation modes |
| Figure 4.1.3.v | Martin's systemic distinction between 'co-observing' and 'relay' commentary modes |
| Figure 4.1.3.vi | Martin's systemic distinction between 'reconstruction' and 'construction' constituting social process modes |
| Figure 4.1.3.vii | Martin's systemic distinction between 'shared' and 'vicarious' reconstruction modes |
| Figure 4.1.3.viii | Martin's systemic distinction between 'fiction' and 'generalisation' construction modes |
| Figure 4.2.1.1.i | Primary FIELD OF DISCOURSE systems according to Martin |
| Figure 4.2.1.2.i | Primary TENOR OF DISCOURSE systems according to Poynton |
| Figure 4.2.1.2.ii | The STATUS primary tenor system according to Poynton |
| Figure 4.2.1.2.iii | The CONTACT primary tenor system according to Poynton |
| Figure 4.2.1.2.iv | The AFFECT primary tenor system according to Poynton |
| Figure 4.2.2.1.i | An example text from the 'newspaper reports' sub-corpus |
| Figure 4.2.2.2.i | An example text from the 'joy of six' sub-corpus |

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Figure 4.2.2.3.i | An example text transcribed from the ‘radio-commentary’ sub-corpus |
| Figure 4.2.2.4.i | An example text transcribed from the ‘TV commentary’ sub-corpus |
| Table 4.2.2.4.i | The contextual design attributes of the dataset |
| Figure 4.3.1.i | The prompt command give upon opening UAM CorpusTool |
| Figure 4.3.1.ii | The macro organisation of UAM CorpusTool into ‘panes’ |
| Figure 4.3.1.iii | The incorporation of text to the project in preparation for analysis |
| Figure 4.3.1.iv | UAM CorpusTool’s ‘drag-and-drop’ function for assigning units of analysis to texts |
| Figure 4.3.1.v | UAM CorpusTool’s allowance for different units of analysis corresponding to different coding schemes |
| Figure 4.3.1.vi | Units of analysis of the frequent, over-lapping type |
| Figure 4.3.1.vii | Assigning categories of the coding scheme to the identified units of analysis |
| Figure 4.3.2.i | A snapshot of the MOOD system as an example of a linguistic phenomenon that amounts to a descriptive linguistic statement |
| Figure 4.3.2.ii | Word classes as an example of a linguistic phenomenon that does not amount to a descriptive linguistic statement |
| Figure 4.3.3.i | A ‘system’ of ellipsis recoverability type |
| Figure 4.3.3.ii | A basic, intuitive coding scheme for the mark-up of ellipsis |
| Figure 4.3.4.i | The full coding scheme for the analysis of clause elemental ellipsis |
| Figure 4.3.4.ii | The ‘matrix clause’ as the entry point to the coding scheme |
| Fig. 4.3.4.iii | A system of TRANSITIVITY for the coding scheme following Matthiessen and based on features with ‘structural insertion’ realisations |
| Figure 4.3.4.iv | MOOD-TYPE system for the coding scheme |
| Table 4.3.4.i. | The combination of features from TRANSITIVITY and MOOD systems in the coding scheme, illustrated with examples |
| Figure 4.3.4.v | Coding scheme system for charting the realisation of anticipated individual functional-structural elements |
| Figure 5.i | Martin’s EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE system as the blueprint for dataset design in the current project |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Table 5.i | The contextual design attributes of the project's dataset by sub-corpus |
| Table 5.1.i | Initial size of corpora in words |
| Table 5.1.ii | Omissions from corpora owing to analytically-determined exclusions |
| Table 5.1.iii | Edited size of corpora in words |
| Table 5.1.iv | Number of clauses in corpora |
| Table 5.1.v | Average length of clause for each corpus |
| Table 5.2.i | Total number of instances of ellipsis by corpus |
| Table 5.2.ii | Total number of instances of ellipsis by corpus based on the projected analysis of 50,000 words of each dataset |
| Graph 5.2.i | Instances of ellipsis by corpus based on the projected analysis of 50,000 words of each dataset |
| Table 5.2.iii | Frequency of ellipsis by corpus calculated per one-hundred clauses |
| Graph 5.2.ii | Frequency of ellipsis by corpus calculated per one-hundred clauses |
| Graph 5.2.iii | Mean and standard error calculations for instances of ellipsis per se by sub-corpus |
| Table 5.2.iv | ANOVA post-hoc multiple pairwise comparisons for ellipsis per se by sub-corpus |
| Table 5.3.i | Instances of all functional-structural ellipsis types classified by corpus |
| Table 5.3.ii | Instances of Subject-only ellipsis by corpus using raw figures |
| Table 5.3.iii | Instances of Main Verb-only ellipsis by corpus using raw figures |
| Table 5.3.iv | Frequency of Subject-only ellipsis by corpus calculated per one-thousand clauses |
| Table 5.3.v | Frequency of Main Verb-only ellipsis by corpus calculated per one-thousand clauses |
| Table 5.3.vi | The proportional occurrence of Subject-only ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage |
| Table 5.3.vii | The proportional occurrence of Subject+Operator ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage |

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Table 5.3.viii | The proportional occurrence of Subject+Operator/Main Verb ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage |
| Table 5.3.ix | The proportional occurrence of Subject+Operator+Main Verb ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage |
| Table 5.3.x | The proportional occurrence of Subject+Main Verb ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage |
| Table 5.3.xi | The proportional occurrence of Operator/Main Verb ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage |
| Table 5.3.xii | The proportional occurrence of Main Verb-only ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage |
| Table 5.3.xiii | The proportional occurrence of Complement-only ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage |
| Table 5.3.xiv | Proportional occurrence of all functional-structural ellipsis types classified by corpus and calculated as a percentage |
| Chart 5.3.i | Proportions of functional-structural types of ellipsis in 'newspaper reports' corpus |
| Chart 5.3.ii | Proportions of functional-structural types of ellipsis in 'joy of six' corpus |
| Chart 5.3.iii | Proportions of functional-structural types of ellipsis in 'radio commentary' corpus |
| Chart 5.3.iv | Proportions of functional-structural types of ellipsis in 'TV commentary' corpus |
| Table 5.3.xv | The proportional occurrence of 'clausal ellipsis' |
| Table 5.4.i | Instances of recoverability types of ellipsis by corpus |
| Table 5.4.ii | The proportional occurrence of recoverability-types of ellipsis in each corpus as a percentage |
| Graph 5.4.i | The proportional occurrence of recoverability-types of ellipsis in each corpus as a cumulative bar graph |
| Graph 5.4.ii | The proportional occurrence of recoverability-types of ellipsis in each corpus as a line-by-type graph |
| Graph 5.4.iii | Correlation between the proportional occurrence of situational ellipsis and contextual mode |
| Figure 6.i | Martin's EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE system as the blueprint for dataset design in the current project |

CHAPTER ONE

INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this thesis is to extend the current understanding of the relationship between language and context in systemic functional linguistics, by testing one of the theory's central hypotheses. The 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis predicts that metafunctionally organised aspects of language system will co-vary with parameters of the communicative context. The 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis (henceforth CMHH) has never been subject to large-scale testing with natural language data. In this thesis, the predictive strength of the hypothesis is tested by observing patterns of ellipsis in datasets of text differentiated along one parameter: the mode of discourse. In order to test the CMHH, a suitable methodology had to be developed. This is outlined in chapter 4, which forms a fundamental component of the project. Chapter 2 locates the study as relevant in systemic functional theory. Central to the organisation of this chapter is the explanation of the CMHH. Chapter 3 describes and defines the phenomenon of ellipsis, first in reasonably atheoretical terms and then its treatment within systemic functional work is described. Chapter 5 applies the methodology described in chapter 4 to a dataset composed of four sub-corpora differentiated along the contextual parameter of mode while but constant in the contextual parameters of field and tenor. Chapter 5 offers a balance of analytical evidence in support of the CMHH and analytical evidence that supports a 'null-hypothesis'. On the basis of this analytical evidence, chapter 5 also discusses which of two interpretations of the CMHH is preferable. Chapter 6 discusses a range of issues arising from the analysis, some fundamental to language as a whole, some consequent on the current state of knowledge in systemic functional linguistics and some consequent on the particular decisions taken in the study here. It is argued that, these various considerations notwithstanding, the research reported here has made an important contribution to current knowledge of the relationship between language and context as it is theorised in systemic functional linguistics.

In this introductory chapter, some of the themes and concepts that become central issues in chapters to follow are set out. Since this thesis's main contributions to knowledge centre on rigorously testing a hypothesis on a large scale and with natural language data for the first time in the hypothesis history, a particular focus in this chapter

is on the place of hypothesis testing in language and theorise of language generally but in systemic functional linguistics particularly.

Arguably the most popular question for functional theories of language to ask has been “what are the functions language has evolved to serve its users?”. Malinowski (1923), Bühler (1934) and Jakobson (1960) are notable examples among an abundance of attempts to provide some typological answer. Systemic functional linguists consider “how is the structure that is inherent in language organised to serve its users?” to be a logically prior question. They claim to have provided an answer to this second question in the form of their metafunctional theory, and, further, that this answer sheds significant light on an answer to the previous question. Systemic functional linguistics’ metafunctional claim is only one – though central – part of a wider systemic functional theory. Works now cited as the origin of the theory (e.g. Firth, 1957a; Halliday, 1961; 1963; 1969; 1970) postulated a number of theoretical abstractions so as to account for the data: in the case of systemic functional linguistics, the preferred data being naturally occurring language. In keeping with a scientific practice following something like Popper (1963), the combination of these abstractions logically leads to a number of hypotheses about the nature of the object under study – again, language – which thus **can** be tested as one further move in the direction of cyclical renewal which is consistent with Popperian science:

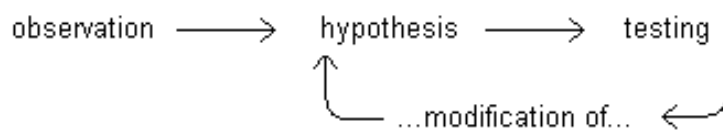


Fig. 1.i: Cyclical renewal in the progress of knowledge in a Popperian view of science

To illustrate, at least the following three hypotheses are immediately evident with an appreciation of systemic functional theory:

- (1) There is a direct relationship between, on the one hand, a small number of discernable types of linguistic phenomena and, on the other, a small number of distinct dimensions of the linguistically-relevant context in which communicative events are situated. This relationship is so such that a certain selection in one of the types of linguistic phenomena is likely to trigger a certain selection in the corresponding dimension of context to which it is related – and vice versa. This has usually been labelled **the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis**;
- (2) The manifestation in linguistic form of each of these different, discernable types of linguistic phenomena is different in that each favours its own type of structural realisation (e.g. constituency-based realisation; prosodic realisation; etc.), distinct from others. Berry (2010) has suggested the label **the ‘preferred realisation hook-up’ hypothesis** for this hypothesis, in absence of any suggestions in the systemic functional literature.
- (3) That all linguistic phenomena within any one of the single discernable types are highly interdependent, yet all linguistic phenomena across discernable types are largely independent of each other. Again, in absence of a current label for this hypothesis, Berry (2010) has suggested **the ‘relatively independent network’ hypothesis**.

Of these, the CMHH has received some attention in systemic functional literature and research, increasingly so in so in more recent times (for example, Hasan, 1995; 1999; Martin, 1992a; 1999; Thompson, 1999; Bowcher, 1999; 2001). The other two hypotheses, however, have received little attention in systemic functional work as hypotheses with potentially powerful predictive benefits. The original proposals (Halliday, 1979; 1967-8) have only been discussed in further theoretical and descriptive terms (e.g. Halliday, 1978; 1994; Matthiessen, 1995). This reflects a more general trend in systemic functional linguistics. It would perhaps not be unfair to generalise by arguing that systemic functional research has tended to devote too much energy to theorising and too little to testing the multitude of its often competing theoretical claims (Hasan, 2009). On the whole, systemic functional linguistics has long needed to pause from its theorising, and reflect by:

- (a) considering what claims are being made by the hypotheses that result from its theoretical organisation;
- (b) deciding to what size and nature of population it wants to generalise these claims to; and
- (c) subsequently designing and carrying out the appropriate tests needed to substantiate these claims to this population.

This thesis makes a small contribution to redressing the imbalance, by undertaking original research relevant to the CMHH in line with the logic as given above as (a) – (c). Of course, the already exist exceptions to the above. There exist systemic functional linguists who have called on their systemic colleagues to conduct the kind of empirical testing here being alluded to. Berry (1987; 1989), Hasan (1995) and Butler (1985; 2003), for example, all make such calls and/or gives suggestions for how such work might be conducted. There are also exist some systemic functional linguists who have even made commendable attempts to carry out such work (e.g. Patten, 1988; Matthiessen & Bateman, 1991; Fawcett, Tucker & Lin, 1993). However, such testing has been limited both in quantitative and also qualitative terms. On the latter, as the aforementioned references testify, such testing has often taken the form of computational modelling. And despite this valuable work, the theorising has vastly outweighed the testing.

The reason for arguing that more empirical work is needed is that the school of systemic functional linguistics professes its linguistics as a science, and as such needs to advance its knowledge in a recognised scientific manner (Berry, 1989; Butler, 2003). At strategic points in the development of systemic functional linguistics, the school has chosen to align itself with such scientific practice: the undertones are clearly there in Firth (1957a) with his emphasis on the ‘renewal of connection’; Firth’s work being a forerunner to systemic functional linguistics. However, the importance of empirical testing is, as Butler (2003: 202-203) notes, still very much up for debate for systemic functional linguistics. Halliday, Fawcett and Martin (Halliday & Fawcett, 1987; Martin 1992c) are three likely candidates for offering objections to the claim that systemic functional linguistics would benefit from practicing as a science, while Berry (1987, 1989) and Butler (1985, 2003) would argue for it.

More than just being a matter of doing its linguistic as a science, though, the lack of empirical hypothesis testing in systemic functional linguistics leaves it open to criticism. Such criticism comes both from outside the school, but also much of it internal to the school from its central protagonists. With respect this latter point, as a community, systemic functional linguists work with a plethora of different versions of the theory, many of which are alarmingly disparate from each other (Hasan, 2009). If the original Hallidayan proposals – as in Halliday (1961; 1977; 1979; 1994), Matthiessen (1995), and Hasan (1985a, b, c) – are considered the primary version of the theory, there now exist a number of more or less divergent takes on the theory, for example Martin and colleagues (e.g. Martin, 1992a; 1999; Martin & Rose, 2008) and Fawcett, Tucker and colleagues (e.g. Fawcett, 2000; 2008; Tucker, 1996; 1998). While contention and critical questioning within any theoretical school are not only to be encouraged but should actually be regarded as a prerequisite to developing and strengthening a theory, tests should be devised and conducted so as to identify which of any competing versions of the theory are descriptively more powerful, either completely so or for some given purpose(s). Aside from the significant unresolved inconsistencies internal to the school, systemic functional work has also been very heavily criticised by non-systemicist on-lookers. Again, systemic functional linguistics is particularly vulnerable to such criticism when it hasn't either backed up its claims in the form of positive results following heavy testing, or, as the consequence of any negative results from such testing, either: (i) revised those claims, or (ii) revised the theory. Van Dijk (2008) and van Leeuwen (2005) are just two examples of recent critical appraisals of SF theory.

The above noted inconsistencies of whether systemic functional linguistics should be conducted as a science aside, the internal and outside criticism of systemic functional work is a paramount reason why even reluctant systemic functional linguists should consider the value of practicing their research as science. No substantial review of either of the internal or external criticisms to systemic functional linguistics is given in this work. That omission is a conscious decision. For any such review and subsequent discussion to be useful, it would require dense exposition on a complex linguistic theory of the type that would demand most of, if not all, the space available. Such a remit is not only not the intention of this work, it actually flies in the face of the intended rhetoric this work seeks to promote, the main professed purpose of this work: actually testing the

hypotheses postulated by systemic functional theory and so beginning to re-address the 'testing-theorising' imbalance of the school.

In this project, then, one of the hypotheses implied by systemic functional linguistic theory generally – focusing on its metafunctional aspect specifically – is subjected to empirical investigation; namely, the CMHH. There are four particular but fairly immediate and evident motivations for choosing to test the CMHH. Firstly, its claims are of crucial strategic importance to the validity of systemic functional theory as a whole (Hasan, 1995); the consequence of this, of course, being the wide relevance of the results here to much other systemic functional work. Secondly, though Hasan and Thompson, amongst others, have extended invites:

[It] is surprising [...] that not many systemicists [...] have attempted to devise ways of testing Halliday's [CMH] hypothesis. It would not be an exaggeration to say that the CMH hypothesis as put forward by Halliday is either acceded to without any such testing – as in my own work and that of Berry's, among others – because presumably it satisfies our intuition or, more disappointingly still, it has been quietly put aside without a fair trial, for example, in Martin's work

(Hasan, 1995: 223-224)

I believe that it will be useful to carry out a sustained data-driven exploration of links between metafunctional choices and the contexts they construe, identifying contextual factors that appear to motivate the occurrence of specific linguistic forms.

(Thompson, 1999: 121)

still no-one has taken up their suggestions. Thirdly, of all the hypotheses that can be reconstructed from the theoretical organisation of systemic functional linguistics, it is the most transparent and explicitly given in the literature, such that the claims are now undeniably asserted by the school's central protagonists (Halliday, 1977; 1985a; Hasan, 1995; Matthiessen, 1995; Martin, 1999). Fourth and finally, testing the CMHH is not only operationally possible, but, much more than this, it also appeals to the type of test that surely has to be the ultimate test for a linguistic theory which professes to be

'functionally-oriented'. For any truly functional linguistic school, considering what a functional orientation to language as the object of study entails, the most valued data has to be authentic language; language as used by real people in genuine occasions of communication.

As one logical step of the reflection that it was above urged systemic functional linguists now need engage in, it was said they should decide to what nature and size population they want to generalise their claims. These are, again, largely issues of data. In asserting **typologically and quantitatively, as much attested language use as possible** as an answer to the aforementioned, this project makes a claim on behalf of the systemic functional community. There are reasons to be confident of this claim given the systemic functional tradition. But, the intellectual leap involved in making this claim leaves the relevance of any findings of this project open to doubt if there exist systemic functional linguists who disagree that this answer position on the 'nature and size of the population' reflect systemic functional values.

The methodological programme promoted here comprises the selection of the following components:

- (i) a linguistic phenomenon attributable to one of systemic functional linguistics' professed metafunctions;
- (ii) a dataset of natural language text internally organised so as to reflect systematic variation in – and only in – the contextual parameter the CMHH predicts as relevant to the linguistic phenomenon under study.

This gives what shall here be termed a 'case study' by which to test the CMHH and it is one compatible with Thompson's (1999) vision, as referred to above. For (i) and (ii) in this project, the phenomenon of ellipsis and four datasets systematically varied in their 'mode of discourse', respectively, are chosen. Though more will be said about both at the relevant places below, a couple of remarks are given here with respect each.

A case of ellipsis is an instance of a reduced form of some given syntactic structure, such that one or more of its fundamental elements has been omitted but is recoverable.

A far more thorough definition, drawing on several sources different in nature but all applicable to the account here, is given in chapter 3. On the whole, ellipsis has been assumed a textual metafunctional phenomenon in systemic functional linguistics. Regarding the metafunctional and stratal categorical assignment of ellipsis, there are, however, some issues of contention and debate. These will be the topic of discussion in due course.

The CMHH still predicts that it is those aspects of linguistically-relevant context known to systemic functional linguists as 'mode of discourse' (see section 2.2.2. for explanation) that are the ones which should explain its occurrence and frequency of use. Consequently, the dataset used in this project varies in its internal organisation for 'mode of discourse' while keeping other contextual parameters – 'tenor of discourse' and 'field of discourse' (again, see section 2.2.2.) – in identity across the 'mode'-varied sets.

Just as the only way to gain insight into the linguistic system is to start with a single text and work quantitatively upwards (Halliday, 1992b), so too the way into verifying or falsifying the claim embodied in the CMHH is through continually selecting and carrying out particular and relevant 'case studies', as they are being labelled here, or the adoption of some similar methodological programme. A single case study should lead to a set of results that suggest some answer with respect to the validity of the CMHH but of which there can only be limited confidence. However, as the results from more and more different case studies are added, a more confident picture of the CMHH's validity will come into clearer view.

There is plenty more to say about these methodological issues. What has been said thus far regarding methodology is enough for the meantime. Elaborating on what has so far been said requires the prior statement of some background theory on systemic functional linguistics and an elucidating description of the phenomenon of ellipsis. Thus, a full exposition of methodological concerns will be given in chapter 4. The identified background theory and description will take up the space of the interim.

Given how much of what has already been said is about methodology, it should be fairly obvious that the methodological component is a crucial and substantial part of this work. This is the case because, in conjunction with justifying why testing systemic functional

linguistics hypotheses is paramount at this time in the theory's history, designing a suitable programme by which to test them is a central goal of this project. It is hoped that the framework proposed at least encourages future similar testing of systemic functional linguistics' hypotheses.

CHAPTER TWO

SETTING THE CONTEXT IN SYSTEMIC FUNCTIONAL LINGUISTICS

The introductory chapter offered an overview of the project, focusing very largely on issues of methodology. The first two substantive chapters of this work in turn introduce the theoretical school of thought, systemic functional linguistics, and the specific linguistic phenomenon under study: ellipsis. (The intersection of these two topics – the description of ellipsis from a systemic functional perspective – will be covered in the latter.) In so doing, they give more detail of the components of ‘the case study’ by which the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis (henceforth, CMHH) is here being tested. Once this necessary ground is covered, the specifics of the analytical project can be sketched (methodology, chapter 4), the subsequent results discussed (results, chapter 5), and these contemplated for their significance (discussion, chapter 6).

In this second chapter, then, the theoretical school of thought – systemic functional linguistics – is introduced. This introduction is managed in two steps. Firstly, a picture of the global organisation of systemic functional theory is given through selective enumeration and explanation of only its most central theoretical abstractions. Then, building on this first half, more specific detail about those parts of the theory relevant to this project is given through a discussion of the CMHH, the hypothesis of the school of systemic functional linguistics being tested in this project.

2.1. The global theoretical abstractions of systemic functional theory

In line with the more general characteristic of systemic functional research as evolutionary rather than revolutionary (Matthiessen, 2007), many of the school’s central protagonists have been keen to stress that it is in the nature of progress in systemic functional linguistics to develop from the global to the specific (Halliday & Fawcett, 1987; Matthiessen, 2007; Matthiessen & Halliday, 2009). It is not surprising, then, that there exist many introductions to systemic functional linguistics that sketch the global dimensions of the theory, including Berry (1975 & 1977), Butler (1985), Eggins (1994), Butt, Fahley, Feez, Spinks & Yallop (2000), Matthiessen, Teruya & Lam (2010). In systemic functional work which has a remit of focusing on some more specific, local

phenomenon, as is the case with this project, it is due practice to first offer an outline of the global dimensions of the theory and in particular the general perspective being adopted before zooming in to the area under focus. To provide a detailed but global picture of systemic functional theory for the present purposes, Section 2.1 introduces three theoretical abstractions, 'stratification' (2.1.1), 'system' (2.1.2) and 'metafunction' (2.1.3). Section 2.1.4 completes the picture by bringing together a handful of further theoretical abstractions of systemic functional linguistics as well as some broader remarks about the theory.

2.1.1. Stratification

As Halliday (1961: 245) said long ago, ordering the theoretical abstractions of systemic functional theory is essentially an artificial enterprise. None are logically prior to any other in any sense. They are mutually defining. Therefore, starting with any single concept, however global and significant to the theory, is always going to be a selectively narrowing in the interim until all necessary others are spelled out appropriately within a fuller context of the theory. That said, 'stratification' provides probably the best place to start. Of the three global abstractions described here, stratification is the one that best provides a context for the others, sketching in the boundaries of the theory first.

The concept of stratification arrived into systemic functional theory via Lamb (e.g. Lamb, 1966). However, theoretical precursors can be seen in Hjelmslev's (1961) concept of 'plane' and in Saussure's (1966) 'sign'. In insisting that any full description of language required explanations across 'multiple levels', Firth (1950; 1957a) too alluded to some concept similar to stratification. The common point in all these concepts is that the language system evidences recurring linguistic patternings at different orders of abstraction. And systemic functional linguistics makes precisely this claim, arguing that stratification as *different orders of semiotic abstraction* is an inherent property of language.

But what is this repeated linguistic patterning like? Taking a contrived and non-sense example to illustrate, imagine a language system that contains a pattern 'a,b,c'. A similar pattern of a different type, 'x,y,z', is also found in this system. There seems to be a relationship between 'a' in the first pattern and 'x' in the second such that, say, when 'a'

is present 'x' is too; but when 'a' isn't neither is 'x'. Likewise, the same relationship appears to stand between the pairs 'b' and 'y' and so too 'c' and 'z'. This amounts to saying that there is a relationship between these sets of pairs of the type that one is *encoded as* the other. By "encoded as", here, it is being signalled that the relationship between these pairs is one of 'realisation'. The concept of 'realisation' shall be introduced later in section 2.1. It is the concept of realisation that formalises the repetitive nature of this patterning which itself, is an indicator of the existence of different orders of semiotic abstraction and so of stratification. In the example, then, there appear to be two distinct orders of semiotic abstraction; two strata: one at 'a,b,c' – let us call it '0' – and one at 'x,y,z'; let us call the latter '1'. This importance of repeated patterning will be revisited in section 2.2 below, where it will form a significant part of that discussion on the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis.

Leaving behind the contrived example, what is the nature of abstraction in human language? Mainstream systemic functional theory (e.g. Halliday, 1985c; 1993) argues for the recognition of five strata in human language systems. Apart from the highest and most abstract stratum, that of 'context', all of these are language-internal strata. In order of abstraction from highest to lowest, these are: 'semantics', 'lexicogrammar', 'phonology' and 'phonetics'. There is a useful generalisation to be made that splits these four strata into two sets of two by applying the Hjelmslevian (1961) distinction between 'content' and 'expression'. Thus the 'semantic' and 'lexicogrammatical' strata can be distinguished from the 'phonological' and 'phonetic' strata, in that the former pair are concerned with language content, and the latter pair with the expression of that content. But as Hasan (1995) warns, caution should be adopted in applying such a distinction, as content and expression do not have the theoretical status in systemic functional linguistics that they have for Hjelmslev's (1961) theory. The highest stratum, 'context', is strictly speaking a language external stratum. As shall be explained in section 2.1.4 below, systemic functional linguistics' orientation to the study of language is to see it as a form of communication and thus view the language system as a meaning making resource. By taking such an orientation, a stratum of context is implicated by the very existence of the semantic stratum (Hasan, 1995).

It is standard practice in systemic functional linguistics to present the different strata diagrammatically as below (Fig 2.1.1.i) Abstraction is represented in the diagram by size.

Thus, context, as the highest stratum, is indicated by its being the biggest circle; phonetics, as the lowest stratum, by the smallest circle. Additionally, the cotangential nature of the circles represents the contextualising nature of stratification. For example, 'semantics' is contextualised by 'context'; 'semantics' contextualises lexicogrammar, etc. Figure 2.1.1.i is supplemented with the two distinctions made above: (i) 'language-internal' vs. 'language-external'; and (ii) within the former, 'content' vs. 'expression'.

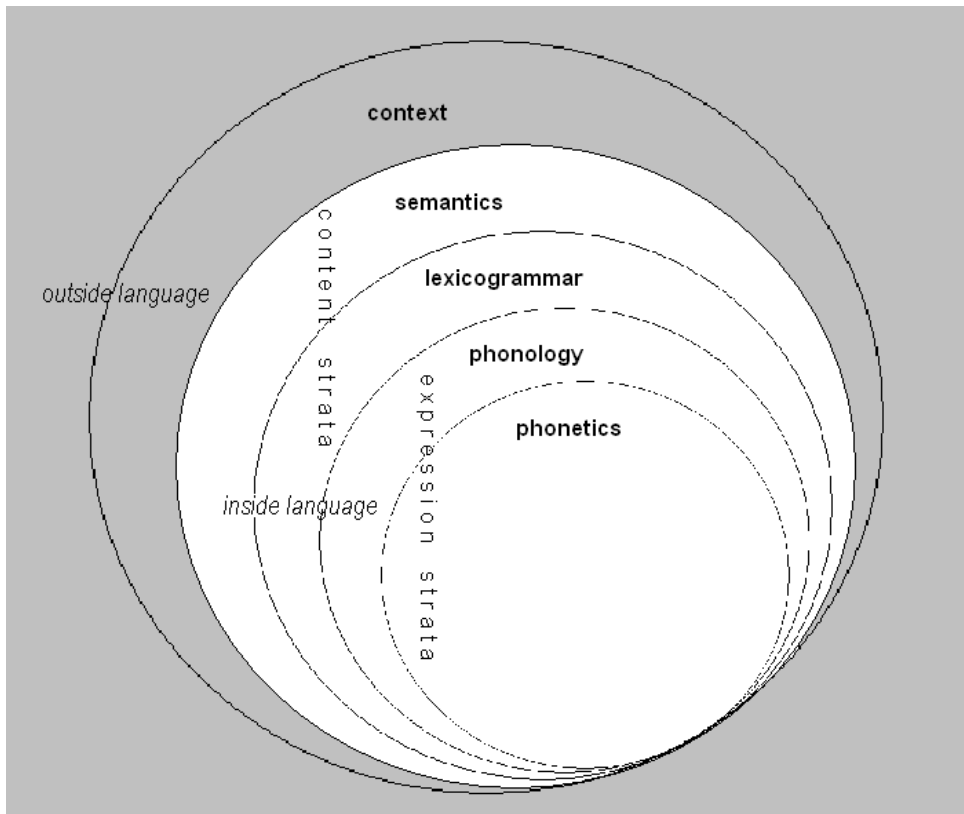


Figure 2.1.1.i The strata of language, as theorised according to systemic functional linguistics

As will probably now be clear, an exposition of the role of 'stratification' in systemic functional theory can only proceed so far before it is necessary to invoke a notion of 'realisation'. The two are mutually-defining abstractions. It is correct to say "a notion of realisation", rather than "the notion of realisation" because, as Hasan (2009: 188) identifies, the concept of realisation is made to do extensive work in systemic functional theory. It is, in fact, used in three different senses. It is crucially important to immediately

distinguish a general notion of realisation from its specific senses, and, subsequently, all its specific senses from each other. In general terms, the concept of realisation can be defined relatively simply as a relation between two values distinct in their ordering along some hierarchy. The three senses in which 'realisation' is put to use in systemic functional linguistics differ precisely with respect to what that hierarchy is. The three hierarchies to which realisation relates values distinctly are: (i) 'stratal'; (ii) 'axial'; and (iii) 'rank'. Realisation as a relationship between values along the axial hierarchy will be discussed in section 2.1.2 below once the concepts of 'system' and 'structure' have been introduced. Realisation in the hierarchy of rank will be discussed briefly in section 2.1.4 when 'rank' is introduced as a further theoretical abstraction important to systemic functional theory. For the remainder of this sub-section on 'stratification', by 'realisation' shall only be meant the sense in which it is used with respect relations between values distinct by strata; namely, 'inter-stratal realisation'.

Having introduced realisation as the theoretical abstraction that relates independently postulated strata, all that remains necessary in the present discussion of stratification is an explanation of the relationships between neighbouring stratal pairs. The recognition of two different types of realisational relationship between strata is not only crucial to systemic functional linguistics' conception of stratification, it also bears a much wider significance to the theory. An explanation of organisation internal to strata is presented from a general perspective next, in the section 2.1.2, and specifically to the individual strata 'lexicogrammar', 'semantics' (2.2.1) and 'context' (2.2.2) subsequently. In explaining the different realisational relationships pertaining between strata, two earlier raised issues can simultaneously be resolved:

- (i) why is context an imperatively theorised stratum in systemic functional linguistics?
- (ii) why is the Hjelmslevian conception of realisation insufficient for systemic functional theory's purposes?

It was said above that Hjelmslev's (1961) 'content'-'expression' distinction was still descriptively useful to systemic functional linguistics, though having no theoretical status in it (Hasan, 1995). Like systemic functional linguistics' stratificational claim, the planar claim of Hjelmslev's wider linguistic theory (Hjelmslev, 1961) is simultaneously a claim of

relation between the specific *planes*. Again, it is a relation of realisation. But Hjelmslev's conception of 'realisation' is narrower than systemic functional linguistics'. For Hjelmslev, the realisation relationship between his 'content' and 'expression' planes is characterised by its being: (a) uni-directional; and (b) one of conventional association. As uni-directional, Hjelmslev's conception of 'realisation' is one where 'content' phenomena are seen as realised by, or encoded in, phenomena of the lower 'expression' plane; or, more informally, content influences expression but not vice-versa. As Hasan (1995: 205) puts it, in this view, phenomena of the higher strata are only knowable as phenomena at the lower strata in which they are thus realised. To conceive of realisation as conventional association is to view the links between 'content' and 'expression' as arbitrary in their very nature. To go back to the earlier contrived example, in Hjelmslev's conception of realisation, there is no particular reason why 'x' should be that which realises 'a' anymore than it could have been 'z' or 'y'; it just happened to be that the language system was organised that way, as if by chance.

For the strata postulated by systemic functional linguistics, this Hjelmslevian conception of 'realisation' is said to be sufficient for the following neighbouring stratal pairings:

- (i) lexicogrammar → phonology
- (ii) phonology → phonetics

And hence the 'content-expression' distinction in Fig. 2.1.1i. is placed between the lexicogrammar and phonology boundary. Some systemic functional linguists (for example, Halliday & Greaves, 2008; Hasan, 2011) refute the Hjelmslevian conception of realisation as not sophisticated enough to explain even these stratal pairings. However, systemic functional linguists are unanimous in a belief that the Hjelmslevian conception of realisation is an under-privileged one to account for the remaining stratal pairings:

- (iii) semantics → lexicogrammar
- (iv) context → semantics

Consequently, systemic functional linguistics theorises a different and more sophisticated conception of realisation than the Hjelmslevian one so as to account for the relations that exist between phenomena of semantic and lexicogrammatical strata,

as well as between phenomena of contextual and semantic strata. This more sophisticated conception of 'realisation' differs from the Hjelmslevian one in precisely the characteristics 'indirectionality' and 'association by convention', as discussed above. In their place are the alternative characteristics that realisation between the stratal pairings in question is: (c) bi-directional, or 'dialectal'; and (d) natural. To begin elaborating the latter first, to view the relationship between phenomena of neighbouring strata as one of natural association is to claim that their relation is not coincidental, but rather is intentional and motivated. Thus, to again draw on the earlier contrived example, there is a logical relationship between 'x' and 'a' that neither 'y' nor 'z' share with 'a'. The 'logic' of such relationships is reflected in the bi-directionality of strata in this more sophisticated conception of realisation. That is, not only do the phenomena at the 'higher' strata *become encoded in* – or, in systemic functional terms, **activate** – phenomena at the 'lower' strata, as in the Hjelmslevian conception of realisation, but phenomena of the 'lower' strata can also **construe** phenomena of the higher strata. To take an example from a genuine human language system:, though asking questions may be an indicator of – or 'be activated by' – an interlocutor's high power status, the use of questions may also enact – or 'construe' – high power status for an interlocutor. Such a view of the relation between language and context as dialectal is largely accepted amongst contemporary sociolinguists, ethnomethodologists and related schools. To give another example,: though the giving of information will, in the unmarked case, activate declarative structure (lexicogrammatically determined behaviour), the use of declarative structures is also likely to 'construe' the giving of information.

The first of these two examples also demonstrates why, with such a conception of realisation, a semantically-concerned linguistic theory such as systemic functional linguistics implicates context as a stratum in need of description. If part of the explanation of some semantic phenomenon is a contextual phenomenon, then, as Firth (1950; 1957b) said, the linguistic description will be incomplete without an account of context as that which is construed by/activates the semantics.

2.1.2. System

As was explained in the last section, systemic functional linguistics is one linguistic theory to claim that language systems are by nature organised as stratified systems. For

such theories, it is a reasonable next question to ask “what of organisation within individual strata?” Here that question is addressed in general terms. That is, an exposition of the organisation within an individual stratum is not made with reference to any specific stratum. Rather, organisational differences between specific strata are suppressed and the exposition is concerned with those organisational principles which are general to all strata. Such a general discussion of the internal organisation of strata is entirely possible in systemic functional linguistics as organisation within strata is broadly similar. Within section 2.2 – specifically in the sections 2.2.1 and 2.2.2 – the question as to what the organisation of individual strata is like is addressed in specific terms with respect to the strata of ‘lexicogrammar’, ‘semantics’ and ‘context’ in turn.

In theorising the nature of the sign, Saussure (1966) made the explicit distinction between paradigmatic and syntagmatic relations in language. The former concerns the competition of a number of examples of some studied linguistic phenomenon to one specific environment where the latter is the consideration of successive combinations of linguistic units. Following Saussure’s (1966) lead, in explaining the distinction, many linguists make use of the metaphor of axis, assigning the vertical axis to represent paradigmatic relations, and the horizontal axis to represent syntagmatic relations.

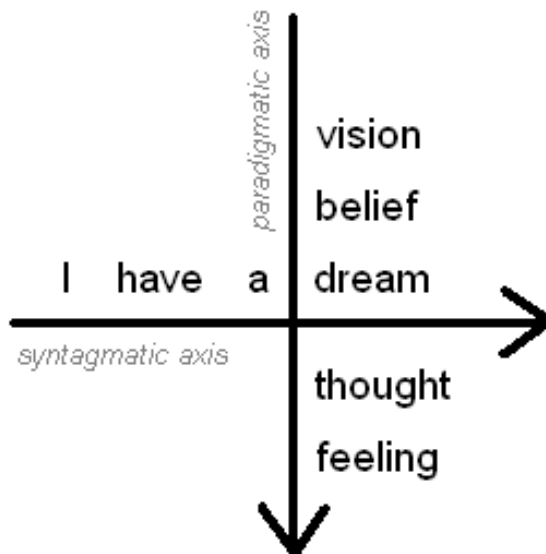


Figure 2.1.2.i Paradigmatic and syntagmatic relations as vertical and horizontal axes

Given the bounds and conventions traditional to written language, the axis metaphor is best applied to language conceived as a written phenomenon; although sequence in space can be supplemented by sequence in time to apply the metaphor to language as speech. It aids the view of the paradigm as *contrast* and *choice*, whereas the syntagm is *chain* and *pattern*. Fig 2.1.2.i shows that along the horizontal axis there are a combination of items and along units of different size (e.g. phrase, word, grapheme, etc.). Focusing on word-level here – in line with the discussion of the paradigmatic axis just given –there are a succession of items combining to produce a clause. There are constraints on what might succeed any given word-item (Brazil, 1995), but they are not contrastive choices as in the environment of the paradigm. Using basic Chomskyan terminology, having selected a simple noun-phrase, some kind of verb-phrase is **likely** to follow, as happens in this instance with ‘have’. Similarly, once a verb has been given in the verb-phrase, we expect it likely a complementive noun-phrase to follow. Again, this expectation is met here with ‘a dream’. We are thus left with a chain of ‘NP+VP’ (Chomskyan), or ‘S+MV+O/C’ (more functional), or ‘pronoun+lexical verb+indefinite article+noun’ (using word class labels).

All linguistic theories need to make decisions with respect their coverage of paradigmatic and syntagmatic relations in language. The first question is: “does the theory aim to account for one or both these relations?”. If the answer to this question is the former, the next logical question is “which?”. If the answer is the latter, the next logical question is: “how will it account for these with respect to each other?”. The answers to these questions are largely determined by the orientation to language the school in question takes. Reflexively, the answers to such questions also become one of the criteria along which linguistic theories can be typologically classified. The theoretical approach of Chomsky and followers (e.g. Chomsky, 1957; 1965), for example, is one concerned only with the syntagmatic relations of language. Systemic functional linguists, however, are concerned with both paradigmatic and syntagmatic relations. However, unlike Firth (1957a), who gave equal weight to these relations, systemic functional linguists view the paradigm as primary and the syntagm as derived from the paradigm (Halliday, 1979: 77). This privilege to the notions of ‘choice’ and ‘contrast’ is unsurprising given the systemic functional approach to language, seeing it as synonymous with the social act of communication. Put informally, systemic functional linguists see structure as a means to

an end – an end that is concerned with choice and contrast in the paradigm – not the end in itself, as it is for Chomsky, for example.

Despite the last point, it should be stressed that syntagmatic relations are not an ad-hoc concern in systemic functional linguistics. Their secondary status to paradigmatic relations is one of orientation, not of importance. A comprehensive and accurate account of syntagmatic relations as derived from paradigms is every bit as important as the comprehensive account of paradigmatic relations (Hudson, 1971; Fawcett, 2000)

Systemic functional linguistics adopts the ‘system’ as a means by which to model the paradigmatic relations of language. The concept of the system is comprised of a small set of very basic logical relationships and principles which, according to systemic functional linguists, can successfully account for the paradigmatic relations seen in a language. Before these ‘logical relationships’ of the system are explained, it is worth noting that, fairly unastonishingly, systemic functional linguistics accounts for syntagmatic relations as structure. Specifically, this structure is in the form of the ‘realisation rule’ or ‘statement’. And because the syntagm is seen as derived from the paradigm in systemic functional linguistics, specific realisation rules are associated with specific paradigmatic contexts. In its most basic form, the ‘system’ is a choice between two options (Fig. 2.1.2.ii).

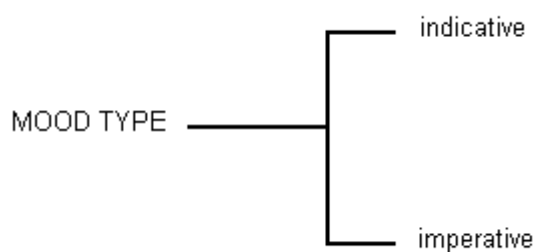


Figure 2.1.2.ii: Lexicogrammatical ‘MOOD TYPE’ system as an example of ‘either-or’ systemic logic

The flat bracket, ‘-[]’, is the appropriate notation for representing an *either/or* logical relationship. Here, then, is a lexicogrammatical system with a choice between ‘indicative’ and ‘imperative’. The system reads: “there is a choice to be made between either

'indicative' or 'imperative', one of which must be chosen in this environment". The choices in a system are variously labelled 'options', 'terms', 'contrasts', 'distinctions' or 'features' in the systemic functional literature. The last of these shall be preferred here. The features in a system share a common area of meaning, as reflected in the name of the system, which is thus the entry condition for the system. In this instance, the system name is 'MOOD TYPE' and the common area shared by the features in this system, 'indicative' and 'imperative', is that they are both respectively types of MOOD.

Features in a system themselves very often become the entry condition for some further system, which it is thus the name for.

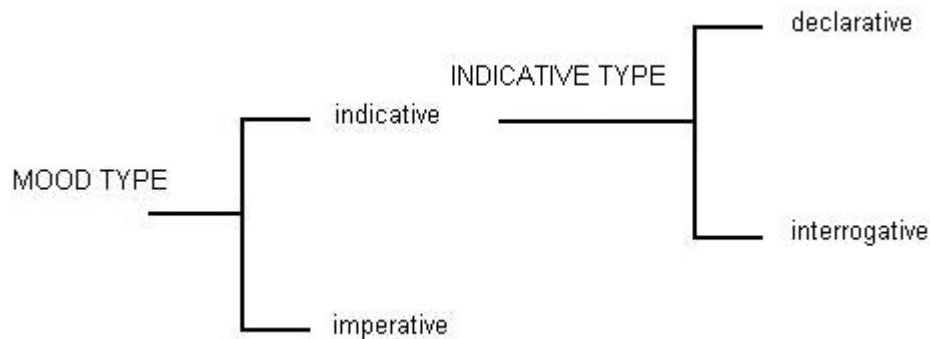


Figure 2.1.2.iii MOOD systems combining to form system networks

Thus, in Fig. 2.1.2.iii, 'indicative' becomes the entry condition for a further system, 'INDICATIVE TYPE', which then embodies a further choice between the features 'declarative' and 'interrogative'. Systems combine to form system networks, the combination of more than one system. Systems in a system network are ordered in their delicacy. With reference to the above example again, 'INDICATIVE TYPE' is a more delicate system than 'MOOD TYPE'. Delicacy is therefore related to 'dependency'. 'MOOD TYPE' thus has the system 'INDICATIVE TYPE' immediately dependent on it.

Through agnation, the concept of 'system' embodies two basic logical relationships: (i) 'either/or'; and (ii) 'both-and'. The 'either-or' type has now been discussed. It should be added, however, that systems may have any number of features; not just two, as in the

examples given above. Switching the stratum of illustration upwards one from the lexicogrammar to the semantics, below is an example of logical relations of type (ii); 'both-and' (Fig 2.1.2.iv).

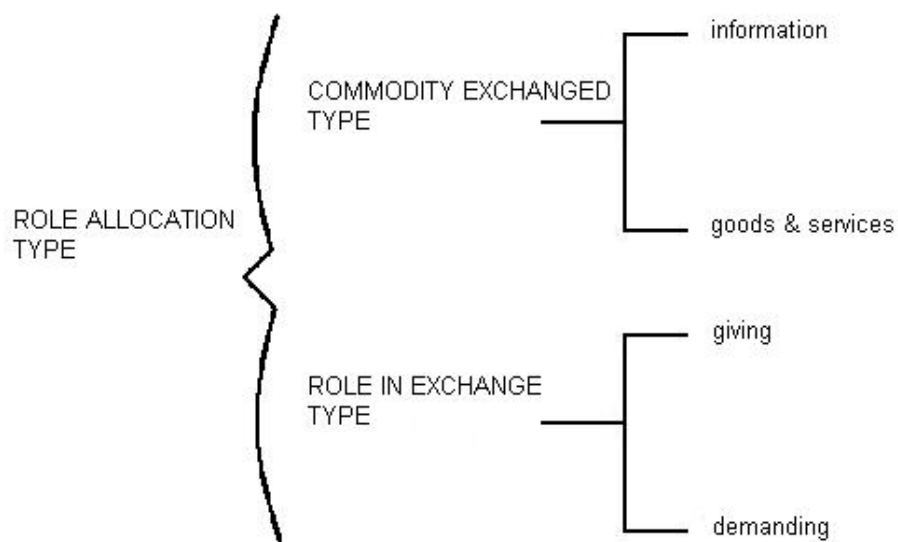


Figure 2.1.2.iv Semantic 'ROLE ALLOCATION' system as an example of 'both-and' systemic logic

In this semantic system network, then, there are three systems. The arrowed bracket, '{', left of these two systems is an instance of the *both-and* systemic logical relationship. This system network thus reads: "there is a choice to be made in both the 'COMMODITY EXCHANGED TYPE' system (between either 'information' or 'goods & services') and the 'ROLE IN EXCHANGE TYPE' system (between either 'giving' or 'demanding')" and a choice must be made in both. An additional point to be made with reference to this example is that the systems 'COMMODITY EXCHANGED TYPE' and 'ROLE IN EXCHANGE TYPE' are simultaneous. That is, both share the same entry condition and, therefore, neither system is dependent on the other; rather, they are simultaneous.

To complicate the picture a little, however, both these two types of logical relationship – 'either/or' and 'both-and' – can point in either direction in a systems network. That is, these relationships may be the outcome of a satisfied entry condition, as has been the case in all examples so far given. Alternatively, the relationships may be the input to – or

the condition of satisfaction of – an entry condition. Such instances are known as ‘complex entry conditions’. The following is an example at the lexicogrammatical stratum of an ‘either-or’ relationship as the input to an entry condition, which is also called a ‘disjunct’ in the systemic functional literature (Fig. 2.1.2.v).

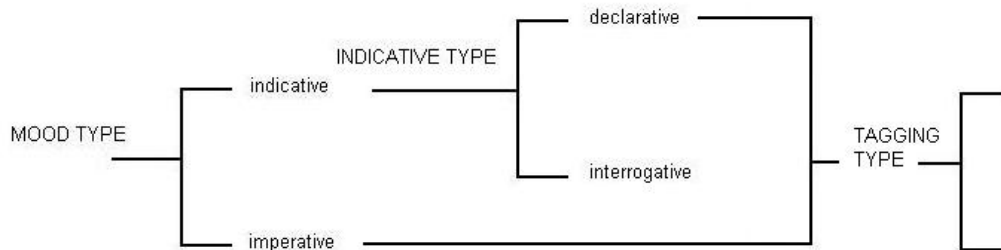


Figure 2.1.2.v Lexicogrammatical ‘TAGGING TYPE’ system as an example of a ‘disjunct’ complex entry condition

The part of this system network concerned with entry to the ‘TAGGING TYPE’ system thus reads: “the system ‘TAGGING TYPE’ is entered if either the feature ‘declarative’ or the feature ‘imperative’ is chosen”. At the semantic stratum, the following is an example of a ‘both-and’ relationship as the input to an entry condition, which is also called a ‘conjunct’ in the systemic functional literature (Fig 2.1.2.vi).

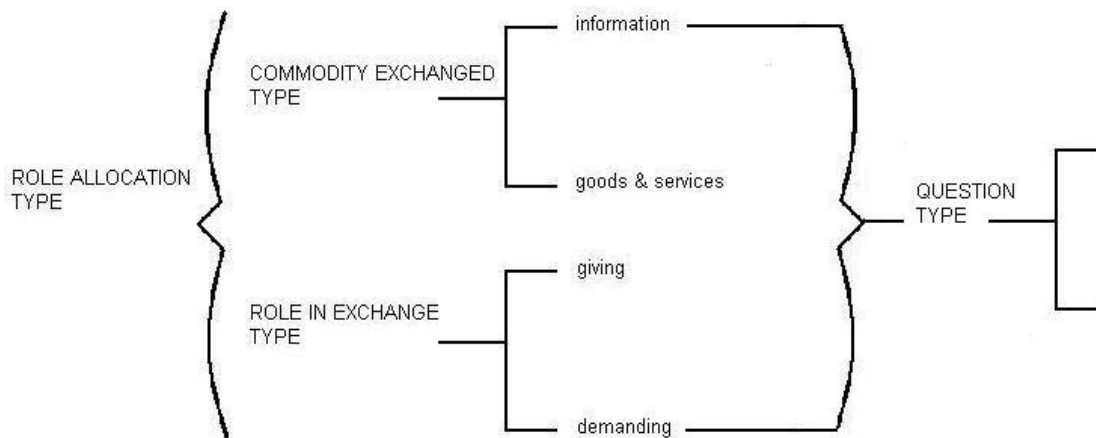


Figure 2.1.2.vi: Semantic ‘QUESTION TYPE’ system as an example of a ‘conjunct’ complex entry condition

The part of this system network concerned with entry to the 'QUESTION TYPE' system thus reads: "the system 'QUESTION TYPE' is entered if both the feature 'information' and the feature 'demanding' are chosen".

This concludes the discussion of all the logical relationships embodied in the notion of the system in systemic functional linguistics, which itself is a descriptive tool for the modelling of the paradigmatic relations in language. However, before the discussion of 'system' as a central and global theoretical abstraction for systemic functional theory is concluded, it is necessary to make just a few further comments regarding inherent properties of the 'system'.

As Berry (1975) stresses, it is important to bear in mind three properties inherent in the concept of the system and the systems network. Firstly, the features within any disjunct system are mutually exclusive. That is, the choice of one feature precludes the choice of any other in that system. Secondly, a system is finite. All and only those features mutually exclusive from each other are included within the system. Finally, the 'valeur', to use the Saussurian (1966) term, of a feature is only truly given when considered against the backdrop of all alternative features in that system. With reference to the example from Fig 2.1.2.ii, part of the meaning of the feature 'indicative' is that it is not 'imperative'. Consequently, should one feature in the system change – as happens given that language systems are evolving systems (Lemke, 1985) – then the meaning of all remaining features in the system are likewise altered.

2.1.3. Metafunction

There are many functional theories which argue that language serves some particular group of functions for its users. And systemic functional linguistics is just one example of a theory with such claims. However, where pragmatic function-typologies are based either largely or solely on language-extrinsic grounds, systemic functional linguistics' theory of language functions are in the first instance stated on language-intrinsic criteria. The resulting typology is subsequently also an extrinsic claim of the functions of language. Systemic functional linguistics describes language as metafunctionally-organised in that it recognises language phenomenon of three broad types: those that represent experience, those that are involved in the negotiation of inter-subjectivity and

those that help structure linguistic information as meaningful discourse. More than any other theoretical abstraction, systemic functional linguistics' metafunctional claim characterises it as a distinct linguistic theory. It hasn't been introduced earlier only because presentations of both the theoretical abstractions of 'stratification' and 'system' are necessary prerequisites to any discussion of 'metafunction', as should become clear in the remainder of this sub-section.

The language-intrinsic argument for systemic functional linguistics' tripartite theory of language functions is two-fold. As explained in the last sub-section, the systemic functional approach to modelling language is one that takes paradigmatic relations to be primary and syntagmatic ones to be derived from these paradigms to which they can be shown to be associated. Again, as set out in the previous sub-section, such paradigmatic relations are modelled in systemic functional linguistics in the form of the system and its associated relational logic. In taking such an approach to modelling the language system, systemic functional linguists argue that systems group into three fairly distinct sets. Halliday (1967-8) gave an early presentation of this with respect to the lexicogrammatical stratum. More recently, more comprehensively, and in a spirit incorporating subsequent changes to systemic functional theory since Halliday (1967-8), Matthiessen (1995) has shown that this tripartite organisation of the language as systems networks still holds when applied to the lexicogrammatical stratum. These "three sets" are "distinct" in that systems and features between these different sets attest relatively little to no interdependence. Yet there is a great deal of interdependence among the systems and their features within any one of these 'sets'. This 'dependency' relationship manifests itself in the form of either *delicacy* or *simultaneity*. The former relationship is the necessary and prior satisfaction of some feature for the selection of some other feature; or vice-versa, given that delicacy is a bi-directional relationship. So, for example, the selection of either 'existential' or 'expanding' in the RELATIONAL TYPE system is dependent on the prior and therefore less delicate selection of 'relational' in the PROCESS TYPE system:

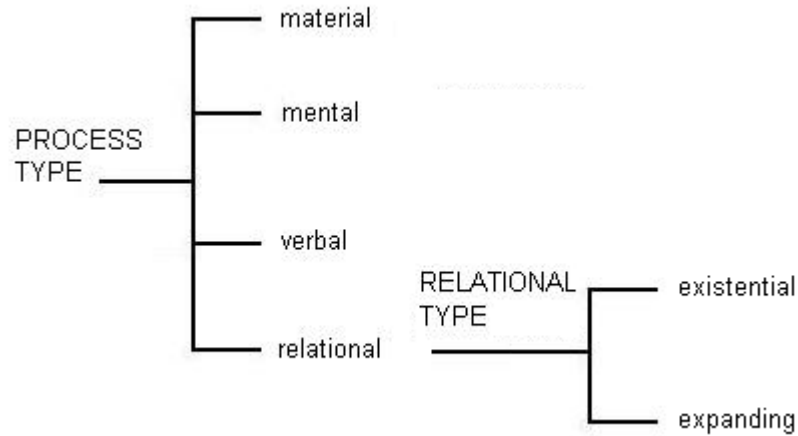


Figure 2.1.3.i: Lexicogrammatical ‘RELATIONAL TYPE’ system as an example of a direct delicacy dependency

Delicacy dependency may be either direct, as in the last example, or indirect, as the selection of either ‘identifying’ or ‘attributive’ in the EXPANDING TYPE system is to the less delicate selection of ‘relational’ in the PROCESS TYPE system:

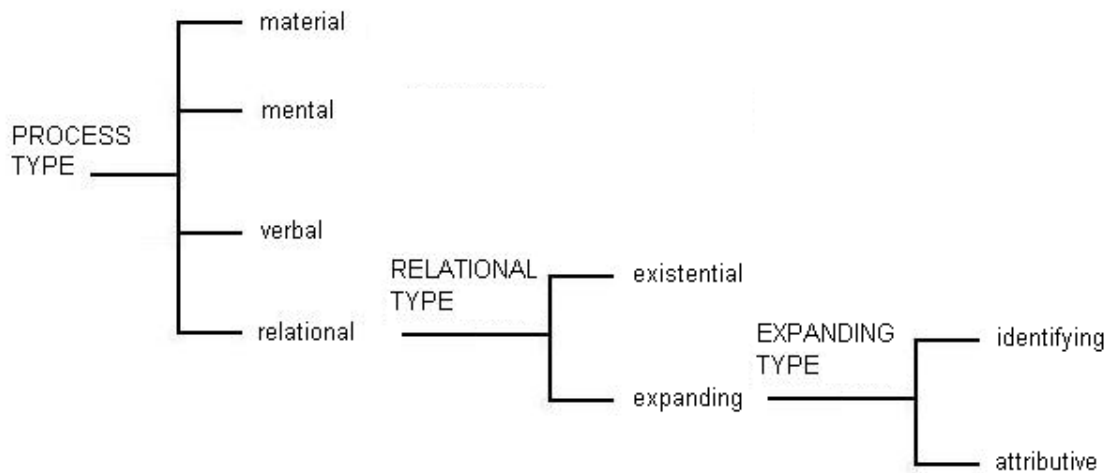


Figure 2.1.3.ii Lexicogrammatical ‘EXPANDING TYPE’ system as an example of an indirect delicacy dependency

The other form of dependency relationship, simultaneity, is the concurrent selection of features in a number of different systems which share the same entry condition. For example, the selection of 'verbal' in the PROCESS TYPE system leads to the entry of both VERBALISATION TYPE and ADDRESS TYPE systems, each requiring further selection:

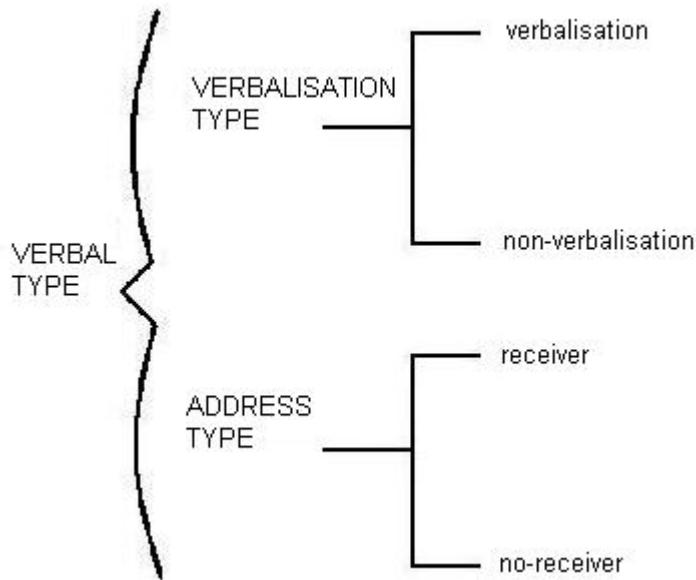


Figure 2.1.3.iii Lexicogrammatical 'VERBAL TYPE' system as an example of simultaneity dependency

In summary, the claim is that modelling a single stratum as systems networks should lead to representation like below, though on a far vaster scale:

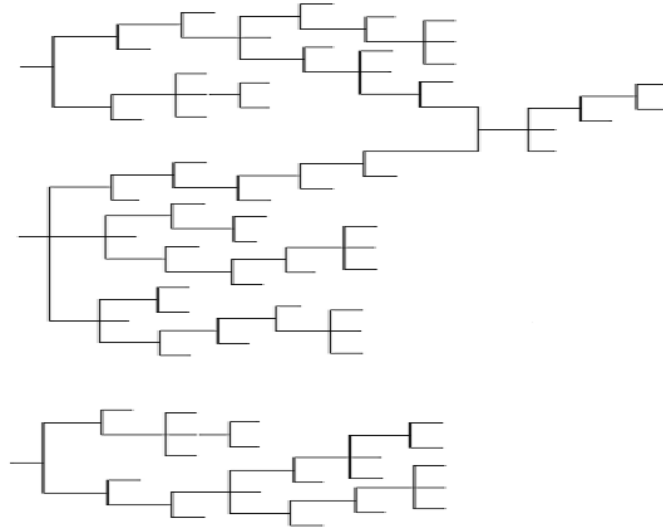


Figure 2.1.3.iv Systemic dependency indicating metafunctional diversity

That is, modelled on paradigmatic primacy in the form of the systems networks, there are three groupings such that there is sparse interdependence between the systems of any two groups and dense interdependence within the systems of each group. This grouping of systems into three similarly motivated sets is said to repeat at the semantic stratum, in principle. “In principle” because, as Matthiessen (1995: 40) notes, systemic modelling of options at the semantic stratum is far less developed and comprehensive than it is at the lexicogrammatical stratum. Despite this, there exist in the systemic functional literature provisional and partial attempts at such a task. Hasan (1983), Halliday (1973) and Turner (1973) are examples. Most of such work, it should be noted, is not freely available systemic functional literature. These problems acknowledged, the mainstream systemic functional claim is that modelled as systems networks, the relationships in language attest this tripartite grouping at the semantic stratum, just as at the lexicogrammatical stratum. The grouped clusters of systems networks of features is, then, the first of the two language-intrinsic criteria relevant to systemic functional linguistics’ theory of language functions.

The second is the differential nature of realisation of systemic options according to these paradigmatic grouping distinctions (Halliday, 1979). As was explained within section 2.1.1 and further elaborated in the last section, realisation has three different specific

manifestations in systemic functional linguistics according to the hierarchy along which it relates values. Here, the relevant sense of realisation is the interaxial type; the realisation of systemically-modelled paradigmatic relations into syntagmatic structure. Where ‘interstratal’ and ‘interrank’ types of realisation are formally modelled only as ‘pre-selection’ realisation statements, ‘interaxial’ realisation is multifaceted (Matthiessen & Bateman, 1991: 95-96; Hasan, 1992: 93; Hasan, 1996: 111). Systemic functional linguistics’ language functions theory claims that interaxial realisation’s multifacetedness is precisely motivated by the fact that the nature of realisation of the paradigm in the syntagm is differentiated according to which one of the three paradigmatic sets, as just mentioned above, is under consideration.

As has been implied in this sub-section so far, the semantic and lexicogrammatical strata of the language system are said to be metafunctionally diversified. The metafunctional claim is not applied in the same way to the other language-internal strata of ‘phonology’ and ‘phonetics’. Although, some systemic functional linguists argue that evidence of metafunctional diversification does exist at these strata (Halliday & Greaves, 2008; Hasan, 2011). However, the language external stratum of ‘context’ – which, as explained in section 2.1.1, is a stratum implicated in semantically-concerned approaches to language description – is claimed to reflect the same tripartite metafunctional diversity. It should be stressed, however, that, as a language-external stratum, the metafunctional diversification of context is of a different type to that in the language-internal strata of semantics and lexicogrammar, precisely because the phenomena under study are of a different and more abstract order to semantics and lexicogrammar. This exact discussion will be taken up much more fully in section 2.2 as the central issue under consideration in this project: the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis.

Both in summary of the asserted language-intrinsic justifications for systemic functional linguistics’ theory of language functions and considering this function typology in language-extrinsic terms, systemic functional linguistics theorises that language serves the following three functions for its users:

- The representation, deconstruction and abstracting out of phenomenological experience into discrete configurations, as well as the serial relations between such configurations of experience. This is labelled the IDEATIONAL metafunction

- in systemic functional linguistics, and is made up of the ‘experiential’ and ‘logical’ metafunctional sub-components;
- The interaction and exchange between speaker and listener, or the equivalent; the negotiation and enactment of inter-subjectivity. This is labelled the INTERPERSONAL metafunction in systemic functional linguistics; and
 - The resources for presenting the aforementioned experiential and interpersonal meanings as coherent and cohesive text given its context. This final metafunction is labelled the TEXTUAL metafunction in systemic functional linguistics.

2.1.4. Other theoretical abstractions and philosophical orientation:

At the outset of this chapter it was conceded that this presentation of systemic functional theory would be selective, condensed and limited by the restriction of available space. Still maintaining this concession, it is necessary to supplement the presentation given so far in two respects. Firstly, a small number of further theoretical abstractions of systemic functional linguistics are introduced and briefly explained. Secondly and to conclude this presentation of systemic functional theory, some remarks as to the wider philosophical tradition of the school of systemic functional linguistics will be made.

The remaining theoretical abstractions of systemic functional theory it is here relevant to put forward are: ‘rank’, ‘unit’ and ‘instantiation’.

Units are the pattern carriers of structure (Halliday, 1961: 247-248). That is, over certain stretches of language form there is the exhibition of regularity. All strata have their own inventory of units. The lexicogrammatical stratum of the English language system, for example, is composed of the following units: clause, group, word and morpheme. While there is significant correlation between the unit sets across strata within one language, the units seen between different languages are likely to vary. The units at all strata and in all languages are ordered along the **rank scale**. The relation of rank scale is one of hierarchy – highest to lowest – and one of the ‘consists of’ type. Thus, using the lexicogrammatical rank scale of units of English to exemplify again, the higher unit of the clause will consist of one or more of the lower units group.

Like 'rank', 'instantiation' is a theoretical abstraction of the relation rather than the category type – cf. 'system', 'structure', 'unit', etc. **Instantiation** is uni-directional movement from the language as a system of potential meanings to instances of this potential as language. For example, within the lexicogrammatical stratum is the system of transitivity setting out the choices in meaning available. Following these choices from left to right until there are no more options available will lead to the term that "instantiates" the combination of features chosen.

In closing the first half of this chapter, I will make some brief remarks about the wider philosophical orientation to language as the object of study in the systemic functional linguistic approach. These remarks are of three-fold, each related to the other two: (i) language as communication; (ii) language as resource and potential; and (iii) language as social semiotic.

The systemic functional interest in language is a socially-rooted one. Halliday (1978: 2) remarked of the dominance of the Chomskyan tradition on linguistics of the 1960s-1970s and the methodological approaches it privileged, "[I]anguage does not consist of sentences; it consists of text, or discourse – the exchange of meanings in interpersonal contexts of one kind or another". That said, systemic functional linguists do not dismiss psychological enquiries into language (Matthiessen, 1995: 65; Halliday, 1978: 38-39). Rather questions of the psychological kind do not inform the approach or theory of systemic functional linguistics. The enterprise for the systemic functional school is wholly social, with language considered from a fundamentally sociological perspective. As such, attested language use – i.e. text – is the privileged data type.

In line with this, language is not seen in Saussurian 'langue-parole' or Chomskyan 'competence-performance' terms. Rather, systemic functional linguists see the language system as a potential; a set of relations – modelled, as was discussed in section 2.1.2 above, on the basis of paradigmatic primacy in the form of systems networks – from which language users can make unconscious 'choices'. The systemic functional school would go no further in dichotomising potential than discussing instances of the 'actual'; what 'choices' from the potential were made in any instance. Halliday (1977) charts the 'resource' interpretation in conceptualising language as the main alternative to the 'rules' view in Western thinking on language.

Pulling these two themes together, language in the systemic functional approach is seen as a socially relevant meaning-making resource. For this reason, the paradigm is primary; intention by interlocutors is meaning- not form-driven. Language is not only seen as socially-relevant in the systemic functional approach. Further, it is viewed as an extension at the delicate end of social structure (Halliday, 1978: 3; Hasan, 1992b). Linguistic distinctions are both motivated by and themselves motivate social distinctions (ibid).

2.2. The 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis explained

The introduction to systemic functional theory presented in the first half of this chapter acts a necessary pre-cursor to the goals of the second half. Here, a full exposition of the hypothesis to be tested in this project is outlined in detail. As was said in the introductory chapter, this project tests the validity of systemic functional linguistics' long-assumed 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis (henceforth, CMHH), which, in theory at least, is one of systemic functional linguistics' testable assertions. The identification and enactment of scientifically testable claims in systemic functional theory is seriously under-charted territory, particularly with the kind of data and methodological design adopted here. To be fully spelled out in chapter 4, such data and methodology have to be the ultimate test for any functional theory. Work in the current remit is thus long overdue so as to either provide some support for systemic functional linguistics' claims, or provide some insight into where systemic functional theory need reconsider its claims and/or theoretical design.

The organisation of this second section of chapter 2 is as follows. Firstly, the internal organisation of each the metafunctionally-diversified strata is described separately. With this ground covered, the nature of the 'hook-up' relationship between them, as predicted by the CMHH, is detailed in more specific terms (2.2.3). This involves necessary discussions of the concepts of 'metaredundancy' and 'contextual configuration' in order to avoid a misleading and impoverished interpretation of the 'hook-up' relationship. Finally, before proceeding to descriptions of the phenomenon of ellipsis (chapter 3) and the methodology (chapter 4), an explicit statement of what results are required in this

project to either support or falsify the CMHH with respect to ellipsis and mode as case study phenomena by which the test the hypothesis is given (2.2.4).

2.2.1. Organisation at the lexicogrammatical and semantic strata

In this section the presentation of 'metafunction' goes beyond the discussion in section 2.1.3, where 'metafunction' was discussed as an abstraction of systemic functional theory, to consider how the semantic and lexicogrammatical strata are metafunctionally diversified. Accounts of both strata are necessarily brief. Starting with the lower and less abstract of the two, what of organisation at the lexicogrammatical stratum?

The lexicogrammar is the set of resources for construing semantic meanings as lexicogrammatical wordings. The label 'lexicogrammar' reflects Halliday's (1961; 1967) hypothesis that 'lexis' and 'grammar' modelled paradigmatically in the form of system networks are the same phenomenon differentiated only along the scale of delicacy. Lexis is thus theorised as 'the most delicate grammar' (Hasan, 1987; Tucker, 1996).

As it is the ellipsis of clause elements that is under focus in this project, the current discussion of the lexicogrammar is restricted to systems at clause rank¹.

The lexicogrammatical resources for representing experience are largely embodied in the system of TRANSITIVITY. The lexicogrammatical resources for the negotiating of inter-subjectivity are largely embodied in the systems MOOD, MODALITY, MODAL ASSESSMENT and POLARITY. The lexicogrammatical resources for organising the flow of information reflect the textual metafunction and are largely embodied in the systems THEME and INFORMATION/CULMINATION. All of these systems are given and discussed at length in Matthiessen (1995).

As already identified in section 2.1.1, the three specific senses in which realisation is used in systemic functional linguistics are: (i) 'interstratal', realisation between different strata; (ii) 'interaxial', realisation of paradigmatic relations into syntagmatic ones; and (iii)

¹ Matthiessen's (1995) account develops on Halliday's (1967-8) in revealing that this tripartite organisation applies to group rank systems as well as clause rank ones.

'interrank', realisation of an element of a unit at one rank by a lower unit on the rank scale. The lexicogrammatical stratum, as all others postulated in systemic functional linguistics, makes use of all these three senses of realisation. Interstratally, lexicogrammatical phenomena become encoded as phonological phenomena. This is formally managed in systemic functional linguistics as realisation statements of the 'pre-selection' type. That is, the selection of some certain features within lexicogrammatical systems will by consequence trigger the selection of some correlating features within phonological systems. Realisations of the interstratal type always take this form of pre-selection (Hasan, 1996: 111). Interaxially, lexicogrammatical paradigmatic relations are realised as lexicogrammatical structure. In formalisation as realisation statements, interaxial realisation can take any of the following forms: (i) insertion of some element; (ii) expanding of some element; or (iii) ordering of some element viz. another element. Finally, 'inter-rank' realisation is the selection of a feature in the systems at some given unit on the rank scale which results in entry to another unit's systems; "another unit" including the possibility of entry into systems at exactly the same unit on the rank scale. Like 'interaxial' realisation, it consistently takes the form of pre-selection in formalisation through realisation statements. To give an example still applied to the lexicogrammar stratum, the selection of 'mental' in the PROCESS TYPE transitivity system has the entry to nominal group systems as an inter-rank realisational consequence.

As the higher and more abstract of the two content strata, semantics comes into contact upwards with the stratum of context and downwards with the stratum of lexicogrammar. Facing the 'phenomenal' (Halliday, 1992a: 22-23) – or sens-ible (Hasan, 1991: 74) – stratum of context, semantics is "the way into language [...] the set of strategies for construing, enacting and presenting non-language as meaning" (Matthiessen et al., 2010: 236). Where there is relative agreement amongst systemic functional linguists as to the systemic organisation of the lexicogrammatical stratum, organisation at the higher content-stratum of the semantics is far more contested. In part, this is due to the nature of the more abstract phenomena at hand. Linguists of all schools have long struggled to get to terms with 'meaning', in all the many ways such a label has been applied to a number of quite different phenomena. Additionally, the feasibility of describing the semantic stratum **in its own terms** plays a significant role in the noted disagreement of modelling the semantic stratum in systemic functional linguistics.

The mainstream systemic functional position on this matter is, again, primarily subject to Firthian influence. Drawing on the influential work of his anthropologist teacher Malinowski (1923), Firth (1957b) always advocated a definition of semantics as meaning according to use. Halliday's attempts to model the semantic stratum have remained strictly faithful to Firth in this way. But as Cloran, Butt & Williams (1996: 7-8) document, there exist alternative positions in systemic functional linguistics where the semantics is modelled in independent terms, without reliance on the intervention of context. Notably, each the work of Fawcett (1980, 2008, and forthcoming), of Hasan (1983; 1996) and of Martin (1992a) argues for and attempts the description of semantics in such terms.

The presentation of organisation at the semantic stratum given here follows Hasan's (1983; 1996) account. As preliminary and work-in-progress as she stresses it to be, Hasan's (1983) generalised, 'context-open' systemic description of the semantic stratum strongly suggests that a presentation of the semantic choices with paradigmatic emphasis in the form of systems networks mirrors the metafunctional diversified organisation of the lexicogrammatical stratum immediately below it. That is, semantic systemic features cluster into three sets, with features within any one set highly interdependent, but with dependency between features of different sets very rare. As at the lexicogrammatical stratum, there are a set of semantic options for representing experience ; a set for negotiating inter-subjectivity as well as expressing attitudinal meanings; and a final set for structuring the flow of linguistic information as appropriate discourse in context. A further strength of Hasan's (1983) semantic systems network is its associated postulation of a theory of semantic units. Just as the relevant rank at the lexicogrammatical stratum for the present project was said to be the 'clause', so at the semantic stratum the relevant rank is the 'message'. There is a large correlation between the semantic unit of 'message' and the lexicogrammatical unit of 'clause', such that, in the unmarked case, a message, semantically, is realised, lexicogrammatically, as a clause.

Just as the above discussion of lexicogrammatical systems was focused on those at clause rank, so the focus in subsequent discussion of the semantic stratum is on systems at the rank of message. Though these are given in Hasan (1983), access to it is, regrettably, limited. Cloran, Butt & Williams (1996) have referred to Hasan (1983) as the most comprehensive context-open semantic networks in existence.

Semantic phenomena are interstratally realised as lexicogrammatical phenomena through pre-selection. Interaxially, semantic paradigmatic relation causes a semantic syntagmatic consequence. Again re-iterating from the discussion of realisation with respect the lexicogrammatical stratum, interaxial realisations take several different forms: (i) insertion of some element; (ii) expanding of some element; or (iii) ordering of some element viz. another element. Finally, as realisation in its interrank sense, the selection of some systemic semantic features causes entry into the systems of another unit on the rank scale, with one such possibly being iteration of entry to the current rank again. At the semantic stratum, however, the rank scale of units is different to that at the lexicogrammar stratum. Specifically, the units of the rank scale at semantic stratum, ordered highest to lowest, are: 'text', 'rhetorical unit', 'message' and 'text radical' (Hasan, 1996; 117-118). As at the lexicogrammar, semantic interrank realisation is formalised by realisation statements of the type 'pre-selection'.

Having explained the 'metafunctional' part of the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis, it is necessary to outline organisation at the context stratum. This will be done next (section 2.2.2) and hence will explain the 'contextual' part of the CMHH. It will then remain to explain the 'hook-up' relationship pertaining between 'context', on the one hand, and 'semantics' and 'lexicogrammar', on the other (section 2.2.3).

2.2.2. Organisation at the contextual stratum

It will be necessary in chapter 4 to offer a more thorough account of the contextual stratum than was given above for each the lexicogrammatical and semantic strata and to highlight contentious issues. That is so because a parameter of context is the independent variable in the analytical project here. In this sub-section, however, only an introductory sketch of the stratum of context is offered, one in line with the depth of descriptions afforded to the lexicogrammatical and semantic strata above.

As with much else in his orientation to theorising and describing language, Halliday owes a debt of gratitude to Firth. He does so in how he sees context as a phenomenon implicated in the description of language, but also in even seeing context as a phenomenon implicated in linguistic description in the first place. Building on his teacher

Malinowski's anthropological observations that some situational factors – rooted in the culture of which they were apart – both influenced and made sense of the language used, Firth abstracted Malinowski's notions of 'context of culture' and 'context of situation' as necessary descriptive levels within a more general semanticised theory of language. Firth (195a7: 182) offered a preliminary schematic construct for such a contextual level of description in linguistic theory thus:

- 1) The relevant features of participants: persons; personalities;
 - a. The verbal action of the participants
 - b. The non-verbal action of the participants
- 2) The relevant objects;
- 3) The effect of the verbal action.

Today, with the benefit of a great deal of research in the broad sociolinguistic tradition, it is fairly evident that Firth's schematic structure is under-developed. But 'relevant' was a key word in Firth's writings here. Halliday developed on Firth by stressing, fairly unastonishingly, that the 'relevant' aspects of context for language description were those implicated in the construal of linguistic meanings. Of course, until the linguistic meanings in question are known, it is impossible to state the nature of these aspects of context. And taking significant steps in just such a direction is one of Halliday's great contributions (as in, for example, Halliday, 1967-8). As has now been discussed, in theorising language, Halliday had shown three of the relevant global abstractions to be 'stratification', 'metafunction' and 'realisation'. Together these largely spelled out both the location and internal profile of a theory of linguistically-relevant context. As a phenomenon of a higher order of abstraction than semantics, context is placed as a stratum above the semantic one. As metafunctional diversification was theorised to be that central organising principle within any stratum context too was predicated to take largely a metafunctional shape. Similarly also, its relation to lower-order strata would be formalised through a bi-directional realisation relationship.

But, it is important to stress that such a stratum of context is unlike all others postulated in SF theory in linking extrinsically to non-linguistic phenomena. In these terms, the context is not in itself linguistic, but is made up of those situational features that are construed as relevant by linguistic means. The significant overlap between 'context' and

near-synonymous notions like 'situation' has the potential to cause ambiguity here. At least as far back as Gregory (1967), these concepts were drawn on to refer to similar but importantly distinct environmental factors within which occasions of talk take place. To distinguish environment semiotically-perceived from environment sensorially-perceived, Hasan (1981; 1984) introduced the term 'material situational setting' (henceforth MSS). MSS refers to environment sensorially-perceived which can but need not become semiotically-perceived environment as well. MSS factors are, for example, the physical distance two speakers are from each other. This has the potential to affect the communication, but it need not necessarily do. Such factors, Hasan (ibid) stresses, are a "dormant force" in language in use, open to the potential of activation as relevant to the discourse at any point in its evolution.

With these preliminary points stressed, a description of the internal organisation at the stratum of context can now be given. The tripartite division of 'context' into the parameters 'field of discourse', 'tenor of discourse' and 'mode of discourse', with bidirectional relationships to the experiential, interpersonal and textual metafunctions of language respectively, were introduced in Halliday, McIntosh & Strevens (1964) and have since been maintained in systemic functional linguistics, largely unchanged. **Field** relates to the social action: what is actually taking place (Halliday, 1985a: 12). That is, in a communicative event, what activity is it that the interlocutors are engaged in, in which language plays some part?

Defining field, Halliday writes:

[W]hat is happening [...] the nature of the social action that is taking place: what is it that the participants are engaged in, in which the language figures as some essential component?

Halliday (ibid)

Halliday (1977: 208) stresses that such 'activities' must be goings-on which are recognised as socially meaningful within the associated culture. Given the complexity of social existence, typically a number of such 'activities' are engaged in simultaneously, rather than occurring alone and discretely independent of each other (ibid). But the

combination of 'activities' are ordered configurations, rather than some anarchistic unrestricted compilation (ibid).

The term 'tenor', originally used by Spencer and Gregory (1964), replaced the earlier Hallidayan (Halliday et al., 1964) label of 'style' for the same concept. **Tenor** can be glossed as embodying issues of role structure: who is taking part in the communicative event and what is the nature of the relationships that pertain between those taking part (Halliday, 1985a: 12)? Halliday (ibid) elaborates these issues further as including at least:

- the statuses and roles obtaining among and between the participants, including both permanent and temporary relationships of all kinds;
- the types of speech role that they are taking on in the dialogue;
- and the whole cluster of socially significant relationships in which they are involved.

Halliday (ibid)

Hitherto, the most elaborate work on tenor in systemic functional literature has been Poynton's (e.g. Poynton, 1985; 1984; 1990). Drawing also on Brown & Gilman (1960), Poynton claims that, at the broadest level, the three relevant factors are: (i) 'power', whether relations between interlocutors are of a hierarchical nature or not; (ii) 'contact', the familiarity of interlocutors; and (iii) 'affect', the emotional involvement between interlocutors.

Finally, **mode** concerns the symbolic organisation: what role language is playing (Halliday, 1985: 12). That is, what part is language playing in the communicative event in question? Again, it is necessary to elaborate upon this. Halliday (ibid) explains that mode addresses "what is it that the participants are expecting the language to do for them in the situation", involving the following factors:

- the symbolic organisation of the text;
- the status assigned to the text in the situation;
- the text's function in the context, including its channel (is it spoken, written, or some combination of the two?);

- its rhetorical mode: what is being achieved by the text (is it persuasive, expository, didactic, etc.?).

Halliday (ibid)

As is the case for the semantic stratum, modelling of the contextual stratum has been far more controversial in systemic functional research than that of the lexicogrammatical stratum and there is a general lack of systemic descriptions (Hasan, 2009). These issues will be revisited and elaborated in chapter 4 where they become paramount to the matter of methodology for the project.

2.2.3. The nature of the 'hook-up' relationship

The last two sections have shown how both the language-internal strata of semantics and lexicogrammar and the extra-linguistic stratum of semiotic context are organised into a tripartite division. It has also been claimed that interstratally the realisation of one stratum by or in its neighbouring stratum follows the same tripartite division, so that for, example, aspects of interpersonal semantics will be realised by sections of the lexicogrammar that are relatively discrete and (generally) realise only interpersonal meaning. More controversially it has been claimed that the realisational relationship between context and semantics and by extension between context and lexicogrammar also follows this pattern.

This relationship between context and the language-internal semantic and lexicogrammatical strata can now be given in more specific terms. The relationship between language and society always has been and remains a paramount interest of systemic functional linguistics.

Systemic linguistics is interested in relating the internal organisation of language, the various kinds of patterning which language exhibits, to the functions of language and the social situations of language.

(Berry, 1977: 1)

[L]anguage not only serves to facilitate and support other modes of social action that constitute its environment, but also actively creates an environment of its

own [...] The context plays a part in determining what we say; and what we say plays a part in determining the context. As we learn how to mean, we learn to predict each from the other.

(Halliday, 1978: 3)

It is precisely because of this interest in, and observation of, the relationship between language and society that systemic functional linguists theorise context as a semiotic construct.

The question then comes one of characterising the context in appropriate terms, in terms which will reveal the systematic relationship between language and the environment. This involves some form of theoretical construction that relates the situation simultaneously to the text, to the linguistic system and to the social system. For this purpose we interpret the situation as a semiotic structure; it is an instance, or instantiation, of the meanings that make up the social system.

(Halliday, 1977: 197)

Generalising across the semantic and lexicogrammatical strata momentarily, the metafunctional meanings – ‘ideational’, ‘interpersonal’ and ‘textual’ – are said to stand in a realisation relationship with respect to the postulated parameters of context: ‘field’, ‘tenor’ and ‘mode’. It is the ‘bi-directional’, ‘natural association’ type of realisation relationship. That is, the relationship between contextual and metafunctional linguistic phenomena is motivated, not arbitrary. And, as such, contextual phenomena activate metafunctional linguistic phenomena but the latter also construe the former.

The ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis is a generalised claim that has three specific strands thus:

- (1) ‘ideational’ linguistic phenomena are activated and construe the phenomena embodied in the ‘field’ parameter of semiotic context;
- (2) ‘interpersonal’ linguistic phenomena likewise are activated and also construe the phenomena of the ‘tenor’ parameter of semiotic context; and
- (3) ‘textual’ linguistic phenomena stand in the same relationship to the ‘mode’ parameter of semiotic context.

But talking separately of the specific strands of the CMHH is also potentially mis-leading. Lemke's (1984) and Hasan's (1985b) respective theoretical conceptions of 'metaredundancy' and 'contextual configuration' are introduced in an attempt to clarify against this confusion potentially bought about by discussing any of the specific contextual parameter-metafunctional component 'hook-ups' individually. Lemke's (1984) 'metaredundancy' principle states that in a stratified semiotic of more than two strata, expression of one stratum's phenomena in another involves a resorting of the phenomena once the stratal boundary is crossed. That is, 'field' does not simply 'hook-up' with 'ideational semantics' and then, in turn, with 'ideational lexicogrammar'. Rather, 'field' is realised in 'ideational semantics'. But 'ideational semantics' is only realised in 'ideational lexicogrammar' in the context of appreciating 'interpersonal-' and 'textual semantics'

Hasan's (1985b; 2009) notion of 'contextual configuration' essentially encapsulates the same principle, only it is asserted with respect to the context stratum and its movement across the stratal boundary into the semantics specifically. Hasan (ibid) draws on the metaphor of the chemical equation to make sense of the 'resorting' as it is referred to in Lemke's (1985) 'metaredundancy'. That is, selection of values in instantiating the 'field' parameter of context will be made, but only once the values in the selection of 'tenor' and 'mode' parameters are known will the values in the parameter of 'field' be set finally, much like the effect of elements in the chemical equation. Hasan (1995), Butt (2010) and others assign to Martin (e.g. Martin, 1992a) a deterministic interpretation of the relation involved in the CMHH. That is, they argue Martin supports a one-to-one correspondence between contextual parameters and metafunctional linguistic phenomena. Hasan (1995), Thompson (1999) and others argue for what they see as the more conservative interpretation of this relation as 'probabilistic'. That is, most often some contextual parameter will be realised in its metafunctional correspondent. But this doesn't always happen.

In the final sub-section of the chapter that follows, reason will be put for agree with the probabilistic interpretation.

2.2.4. Operationalising the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis for falsification through analysis

In the discussion of stratification in sub-section 2.1.1, it was explained that evidence for stratification is based on recurring linguistic patternings. That is, the evidence for two phenomena claimed to be related through stratification must be the large correlation of the lower order of the pair as the realisation of the higher order of the pair. Yet, in the other direction, facts that are stratally-related cannot be conformal. That is, the lower-order of the pair must not always be the realisation of the higher-order of their pair. If this is the case, then according to Hjelmslev (1961: 112), the two phenomena under study are single fact at one and the same level of abstraction (see also Hasan, 1995: 220-221 for discussion).

This point gives support to the decision to take a probabilistic interpretation of the ‘hook-up’ relation that the CMHH claims to exist between parameters of context and metafunctional components of the lexicogrammatical and semantic strata, as was proposed in the last sub-section. But “probabilistic” unqualified is so broad it is hardly useful. The support of social scientific statistical theories can offer a very specific criterion for ‘probabilistic’; and as such affords a very precise way of interpreting the results of the analytical project to be conducted here in terms of their suggestion of either support or refutation of the CMHH. These will be discussed and the wider continued as relevant in the discussion of the results that is chapter 5.

The current chapter should have provided an account of systemic functional theory that makes the clarified the specifics of the CMHH and makes it relevant to what is to follow. In the next chapter, the linguistic phenomenon of ellipsis – the dependent variable in testing the CMHH – is discussed and defined. Following this, a much fuller statement of the methodology of the analytical project to be here conducted will be stated.

CHAPTER THREE

ELLIPSIS AS A DEPENDENT VARIABLE MEASURE

The broad aim of this third chapter is to offer a detailed exposition of ellipsis as the linguistic phenomenon used as the dependent variable in testing the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis in this project. Section 3.1 specifies and so narrows the types of ellipsis, syntactically, under focus in this project’s analysis. In section 3.2, the very detailed and largely atheoretically-posed definition of ellipsis given by Quirk, Greenbaum, Leech & Svartvik.(1985) is introduced. Their criterial and compositional explanation of ellipsis recognises the complex nature of the phenomenon with its inherently fuzzy boundaries. As such, reference to Quirk et al.’s (1985) account serves as the basis for developing the specific definition of ellipsis used in the current project. In section 3.3, the discussion of ellipsis moves from the earlier general to the systemic functional specific. Specifically, work previously carried out on ellipsis in the systemic functional tradition is discussed. The central concern there is to locate ellipsis stratally and metafunctionally in the overall model of language as envisaged in systemic functional terms.

3.1. The clause as the structural unit under focus in this project

This section narrows the focus of the type of ellipsis under consideration in this project along one particular dimension, that of the structural unit whose elements undergo ellipsis. In discussing ellipsis, it is important to distinguish two different types of relevant structure. On the one hand, there is the syntactic structure that has some part of itself removed by the process of ellipsis. On the other hand, is the syntactic structure removed from that bigger, first structure in which it plays some part. Here, we label the former **the elliptical structure**. The latter structure – that which has been taken away from ‘the elliptical structure’ – is termed here **the ellipted structure**. To illustrate with an example, in *Tom went to the shops and bought a cake*, the second, co-ordinated clause, *and bought a cake* is what we here term the elliptical structure, and *Tom* is the ellipted structure from that second clause. These are the labels adopted in this project as they are the ones most commonly used in the literature on ellipsis to refer to these two phenomena (Quirk et al., 1985; Biber, Johansson, Leech, Conrad & Finegan, 1999),

including in the most detailed account of ellipsis in systemic functional linguistics hitherto: Halliday & Hasan (1976: 143, 147, 167, etc.) – see section 3.3.

Fawcett (2000) offers a systemic functional model of syntax that elaborates on Halliday's (1961) early model of systemic grammar. The complementary relationships of 'filling' and 'componence' in Fawcett's (2000) model of syntax allow very explicit maintenance of the distinction between 'elliptical' and 'ellipted' structures. Following Fawcett (2000), any structural unit is made up, or **composed**, of functional elements. These functional elements are themselves **filled** by further structural units. This process repeats itself until the point at which functional elements are directly expounded by words or morphology. See Fig. 3.1.i which is from Fawcett (2008: 78), itself based on Fawcett (2000).

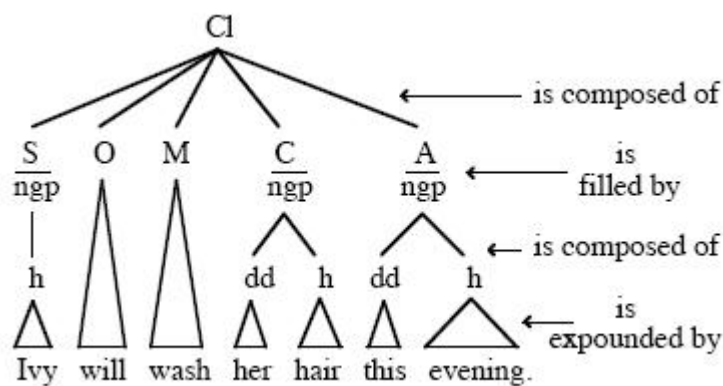


Figure 3.1.i Fawcett's basic relationships of syntax

Like Halliday & Hasan (1976), this project takes as its point of departure the 'elliptical' rather than the 'ellipted' structure. It differs from Halliday & Hasan (1976), however, in that where the latter considers a number of different structural units capable of becoming elliptical structures, this project focuses on the elliptical potential of just one particular unit. Halliday & Hasan's (1976) account of ellipsis – and, later, Halliday's (1994: 318) too – is typologically organised by three different structural units whose elements are capable of undergoing ellipsis: clause; verbal group; nominal group. In *Tom went to the corner shop for red wine **and to the supermarket for white***, for example, the second co-ordinated (emboldened) clause attests ellipsis of elements of both the units 'clause' and 'nominal group'. There is ellipsis of:

- (a) the clausal elements 'Subject' and 'Main Verb' (*Tom/he* and *went*); and
- (b) the nominal group element 'head' (*wine*).

In this project the focus is on the ellipsis of elements of the clause only. The types of syntactic structures filling those elements of the clause which are open to ellipsis are only of incidental interest here. And it is at this point, working down the syntax of the clause, where coverage in this project will end. A simple syntax diagram elaborating on Fig. 3.1.i visually illustrates this focus of remit.

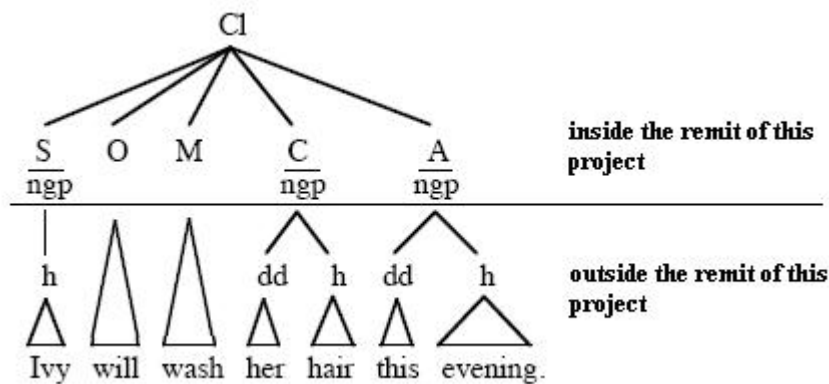


Figure 3.1.ii This project's limit of coverage of ellipsis, syntactically

In this contention, a further point needs to be made for the purposes of clarification. Having chosen to focus on the ellipsis of elements of the structural unit of the clause only, once any part of a structure filling a clause element is realised, it is here considered a fully-realised element, even if within its internal structure there are cases of ellipsis. Taking the previous example to illustrate, the nominal group *white* attests ellipsis of its internal element 'head'. But, *white* is still functioning to realise the clause element 'Adjunct' and so the case of nominal group 'head' ellipsis it attests is outside this project's concerns.

As Halliday & Hasan (1976) show with respect to the nominal (ibid: 147-166) and verbal (ibid: 167-195) groups, elements of structural units other than the clause are also open to ellipsis. It is hoped that future research on ellipsis with respect to these other syntactic

units will complement the picture of clause element ellipsis to be painted here by showing the tendencies for ellipsis of other units' elements.

3.2. The Quirk et al. grammar's atheoretical account of ellipsis as a fuzzy grammatical phenomenon

The remainder of this chapter takes up the goal of explaining the phenomenon of ellipsis first by developing a working definition of ellipsis with reference to Quirk et al.'s (1985) description of the phenomenon (section 3.2); and then through discussion of the treatment of ellipsis in systemic functional work (section 3.3). Before this, the first of those two aforementioned section, begins properly, it is necessary to make two brief initial sets of comments. Each such set is relative to one of the words of the title of this section.

Firstly, the Quirk et al. grammar (1985) is largely atheoretical. That is, it does not invoke a mass of theoretical abstractions on which to base its descriptions. In comparison, systemic functional linguistics, as was discussed in the last chapter, is quite theoretically-bound, which does not always endear it to outsiders (e.g. van Dijk, 2008). A quick consideration of Quirk et al. (1985) makes it reasonably evident that it does adopt a broadly functional philosophy. It therefore shares with systemic functional linguistics a view that language is a meaning making tool for the purposes of communication (see section 2.1.4). But, principally, the Quirk et al. (1985) account adopts very few theoretical abstractions. Even those few that are adopted are broad and generalised conceptions of the most long-established categories in linguistic thought (e.g. class labels, a very basic typology of units, etc.). The generalism consequent from the largely theory-neutral position of the Quirk et al. (1985) grammar is of inherent value in the applicability and adaptability of its descriptions to other approaches to linguistics regardless of their theoretical stance. Quirk et al.'s (1985) description of ellipsis is precisely a case in point in that it can largely serve as the basis for the account of ellipsis developed here in systemic functional terms, particularly given Quirk et al. take a broadly functional philosophical as their starting-point.

Secondly, with reference to the use of "fuzzy" in the section title, ellipsis was defined in the introductory chapter as a reduced form of a syntactic structure, such that one or

more of its fundamental elements has been omitted and is recoverable from some context (Quirk et al., 1985; Leech, 1992; Crystal, 1988). In the current section this definition ellipsis is deconstructed, following Quirk et al. (1985), into a number of more or less discrete criteria not all of which will be met in all instances such that there can be no single definition of “ellipsis” and there will be examples of the phenomenon that display more criterial properties than others (see section 3.2.2). As such ellipsis can be said to be a “fuzzy” phenomenon.

3.2.1. Five criteria for ellipsis

The criterial approach to explaining ellipsis which Quirk et al. (1985) adopt is a means of deconstructing the phenomenon into a number of divisible facets that all together comprise a strict interpretation of the linguistic behaviours involved in the process of ellipsis. The recognition of a ‘prototypicality-peripherality’ cline is the means of accounting for the inherent ‘fuzziness’ of ellipsis. Different points along the cline are identifiable by their non-/fulfilment of the criteria, engendering a set of correlating ‘types’ of ellipsis (see sub-section 3.2.2). The most prototypical cases of ellipsis will satisfy all five of Quirk et al.’s (1985) criteria (see sections 3.2.1.1 to 3.2.1.5); the most peripheral cases fulfilling just one or two of these criteria. Reflexively, the criteria become a descriptive tool that make it possible to draw an essentially artificial but methodologically helpful line around what does and doesn’t constitute ‘ellipsis’ in some given project and/or for some given purpose. That is done with reference to the current project in the final part (3.2.3 below) of this section.

A note on the order of presentation of Quirk et al.’s (1985) five criteria for ellipsis. The ordering of criteria here remains faithful to Quirk et al.’s (1985) original presentation with one exception: what is given as the first criterion in Quirk et al.’s (1985) presentation – the ‘precisely recoverable’ criterion – is presented second here; and the second (the ‘grammatically defective’ criterion) presented first. Henceforth, where criteria are referred to by numbering, the reference is to the system of this project and the one aforementioned relevant translation needs to be made in reading Quirk et al. (1985).

3.2.1.1. The ‘grammatically defective’ criterion

For the purposes of clarification, the full version of this first criterion reads: ***the elliptical structure is grammatically defective***. As per the distinction drawn between ‘elliptical’ and ‘ellipted’ in section 3.1 above, what remains of the structure following ellipsis is no longer a fully realised instance of the structural unit in question. That is, one or more of its obligatorily expected elements has been omitted against grammatical expectations.

As just said above, giving the current criterion before the ‘precisely recoverable’ criterion is the only adjustment of ordering from how Quirk et al. (1985: 884-888) originally present them. Were there not an omission from grammatical expectation, there would be little motivation for invoking – and consequently little descriptive use in – the notion of ellipsis, as Quirk et al. (1985: 885) themselves note. The use of “grammatical expectation” twice above in this section requires further comment. Reference was made in section 2.1.4 to the fact that the systemic functional school – as indeed most functional approaches – refutes the Chomskyan ‘grammatical-ungrammatical’ dichotomy. The grounds for its dismissal, however, are based on the priority and broadly determined criteria on which the Chomskyan conception of ‘grammaticality’ rests. If ‘grammaticality’ is to be a tenable notion for functional schools, it cannot be subject to the reductionist rule-based equation criteria Chomsky promotes. Further, a functional conception on ‘grammaticality’ refutes the linguist as ultimate arbiter. The social community – whoever that is and however that is defined – must be the ultimate source of answers regarding grammaticality. Putting these points together, and as Quirk et al. (1985: 885) argue, issues of ‘grammatical defectiveness/completeness’ need be determined on the basis of all available evidence, with a preference for such evidence to be as specific (in terms of the question or instance under study) and vast (simply in terms of numbers) as possible.

In the majority of occasions, it is relatively clear whether this criterion has been met or not. For example, applying the criterion to the syntax of the clause, the following – or emboldened parts within the following, as relevant – are fairly evidently ‘grammatically defective’ clauses:

- *You going?;*
- *He is probably one of the best teachers I've had **and she certainly the worst!**;*
- *They just walked straight past me **and didn't even say hello**;*
- *Time please?*

The first of the above examples is certainly missing a finite element (likely, given person categories in play here, 'are') given the main verb ('going') does not handle finite functions. Arguably, the first example is also missing a complement – or object² – of some sort, though this is a matter of debate regarding issues of transitivity. The second, co-ordinated clause of the second example above is an example of what is often called 'gaping' in that it is evidently missing its main verb (a form of 'be'; 'is' here, given the person categories of the example). The second, co-ordinated clause of the third example from the above attests a case of subject ellipsis ("(they) didn't even say hello"). The final example is certainly grammatical defective. The elements it is missing are a matter of debate. For this reason, we shall return to it in section 3.2.1.2 below.

In contrast, the following grammatically complete equivalent forms of the above examples, are not in any way 'grammatically defective' clauses, again in terms of the syntax of the structural unit 'clause':

- *Are you going to the pub tonight?;*
- *He is probably one of the best teachers I've had **and she is certainly the worst!**;*
- *They just walked straight past me **and they didn't even say hello**;*
- *Could you tell me the time please?*

The remarks above corresponding to the grammatical defective versions of these examples explain why these 'full form' versions are 'grammatically complete'. In yet many other cases, however, the matter of 'grammatical defectiveness' is not as clear

² The terms 'object' and 'complement' have subtly different uses in different theoretical schools. In systemic functional linguistics, the distinctions upon which the use of 'object' might be motivated in preference to 'complement' – i.e. the 'in/direct' distinction – are generalised across. 'Complement' is the preferred term. For this reason, 'complement' not 'object' is adopted for the remainder of the present chapter.

cut. One such remark was made with respect the matter of a complement in the *You going?* example from above. Further such instances follow:

- *Go on without me, if you wish;*
- [A] *Have a chocolate!*
[B] *I'll pass, thanks;*
- *Auntie Smith's glorious marmalade* (label on a jar of marmalade);
- *Prime minister's delight!* (newspaper headline)

The first and second examples here are like the *You going?* example. That is, there is a matter of debate as to whether such verbs ('wish' and 'pass') can occur freely without a complement and therefore in any intransitive structural pattern. This discussion won't be entered here. The point is to stress there is a degree of debate and uncertainty with such examples. The third and fourth examples above are different from the last two. Each of these do not appear to lend themselves to a clausal analysis and seem to be linguistic contributions of a different, noun-group sort. As such, they illustrate a final point it is important to make here. Much like formulaic expressions such as 'thanks', 'goodbye', etc., the aforementioned examples illustrate that the 'grammatically defective' criterion cannot really be applied in isolation of the 'precise recoverability' criterion (next section – 3.2.1.2). Without wanting to anticipate the discussion of the next section, such examples as those under discussion are clearly defective under a notion of sentence- or clause-hood but because they are not linguistic contributions of the clausal sort, in another sense they are not actually 'defective' with an evident 'full form'.

3.2.1.2. The 'precisely recoverable' criterion:

Having stressed in the last section that ellipsis is first and foremost a means of omitting elements of some given structure, Quirk et al. (1985: 884) argue that it is the fact that the omitted structure is recoverable which primarily distinguishes ellipsis from other types of linguistic omission. But there are different levels of "recoverable". At one end is determination only as far as what the functional structural element missing is. For example, in *I remember we bought crisps from a corner shop in town, but I can't remember which* it is evident that the 'head' element 'head' of the nominal group complement in the second, co-ordinated clause is omitted. But owing to ambiguity of

anaphora – i.e. whether ‘which’ relates to ‘crisps’ or ‘shop’ – it is not possible to determine anything more detailed. It is not possible to determine exactly which word is missing. In this instance there is a closed-set of two potential candidates. But other examples can be yet even more ambiguous having very many legible alternative full-form wordings:

- *Shearer’s strike! **Brilliant*** (sports commentary);
- [A] *Have a chocolate!*
[B] *I will try one, thanks. Mmmm. **Lovely***

Recoverability only as far as functional structural element is recovery of a category type. At the other end is determination of what has been omitted to the precise words; that is, precise lexical and grammatical items expounded. For example, in *John loves and Kate likewise John* it is evident the only possible candidate for the omitted main verb is ‘loves’. By their use of ‘precisely’, Quirk et al. (1985: 884) promote the latter interpretation on the level of determination in recoverability; the exact words omitted must be recoverable. As such, the following examples, in addition to those already given above, fail to meet this criterion:

- *Pub?* (said from one friend to another when both are sat at home);
- *Coffee?*

In all these cases there is no one set of expounded words that can be stated that are those missing in this instance in question. Instead, in each instance, what has been omitted is specifiable only to the extent of the category ‘functional structural element’. To take *Pub?* for example, it can very confidently be assumed that the missing structure is ‘finite+subject+main verb’. But there are numerous legible wordings that could fit this pattern and suit the example: *Do you fancy the pub?*; *Shall we go to the pub?*; etc. In contrast, however, all the follow examples satisfy the strict interpretation of the precise recoverability criterion:

- *Hill goes around the outside of Schumacher **and takes the lead!***;
- *Dave’s annoying **and not one for sharing***;
- *Kauto Star comes first **and Denman second***

In all these instances what has been omitted can be specified all the way to the lexical and grammatical items used. The first has 'he' as its ellipted structure, the second 'he is' and the third 'comes'. They thus satisfy the 'precisely recoverable' criterion.

As Quirk et al. (1985: 884) rightly identify, it is necessary to state a caveat to what has hitherto been said in this section. And it is this: 'precisely recoverable' does not preclude ambiguity of other sorts independent of the act of ellipsis. 'Precise recoverability' does not, therefore, entail 'unambiguously recoverable'. Two such "other sorts" are illustrated with the following examples, one of which is repeated from above:

- *If he works hard, I **won't have to**;*
- *I remember we bought crisps from a corner shop in town, **but I can't remember which***

In neither example is the ambiguity caused by violation of the 'precise recoverability' criterion under discussion in this section. In the first example, ambiguity is caused by a lack of relevant informing context. That is, it read differently with some prior co-text included, as below:

- [A] *You ought to speak to James about his laziness*
[B] *If he works hard, I **won't have to***

In the second example, the ambiguity is brought about by ambiguity of reference. Remarks to this effect were given when the example was introduced previously in this section. Rather, the 'precise recoverability' criterion is an attempt to exclude from one's definition of ellipsis cases where there is no clear choice in the omitted structure between one verbalisation and another as in the earlier *Coffee? Or Shearer's strike!*
Brilliant.

3.2.1.3. The 're-insertion of the missing element(s) gives a grammatical and synonymous structure' criterion:

It is worth recognising two parts to this third criterion: (i) the re-insertion of the omitted structure results in a grammatical structure; and (ii) the re-insertion of the omitted structure results in a structure synonymous with the elliptical version. Dealing with part (i), only once the omitted elements (i.e. the ellipted structure) are inserted back into the elliptical structure does the structure become a grammatical one. This point is illustrated with the second, 'resolved', in this way, set of examples given some of in section 3.2.1.1 above. Here are some further examples which satisfy this 're-insertion gives a grammatical structure' criterion with both the ellipted and full forms provided for illustration:

- *Tired?* → *Are you tired?*;
- *He got up from his chair **and just walked out!*** → *He got up from his chair **and he just walked out!***;
- *They are leaving tomorrow **and not coming back*** → *They are leaving tomorrow **and they are not coming back;***
- *sensational football!* → *that is sensational football*

But the 're-insertion of the omitted structure results in a grammatical structure' criterion is more problematical than the previous examples imply. There are some occasions where re-insertion of what is postulated as omitted does not actually resolve the 'grammatical defectivity' of the elliptical construction by making it 'grammatically complete' but rather results in 'grammatical defectivity' of a different sort. For example³:

- *She knows more **than me*** → *She knows more **than me know****;
- ***Knowing little of the material**, he struggled in his exams* → ***Since he was knowing little of the material**, he struggled in his exams**

With respect to (ii)'s relationship to the 'precise recoverability' criterion, 'synonymous' puts a further constraint on 'precise recoverability'. If ellipsis was equated with

³ The asterisk in the examples here explicitly indicate that these 'full forms' with missing structure re-inserted are not grammatical structures.

“understood but unsaid” then it would be so broadly applied, so general that it would be of little descriptive or grammatical use. To specify that the elliptical and full forms need be synonymous is to refrain from analysing as ‘ellipsis’ cases where something is simply “understood but unsaid”. Consider the following pairs of examples where the second has something inserted which is “understood but unsaid” and yet the meaning changes:

- *The poor need more help* → *The poor people need more help*;
- *He is sixty five and he is retired* → *He is sixty five and therefore he is retired*

Examples like these fail the fulfilment of the second, ‘synonymy’ part of this third criterion. That is, for example, there is a subtle but important distinction between ‘the poor’ and ‘the poor people’. Such nominal groups require some generalised ‘head’ like ‘people’ but to specify it by inserting something like ‘people’, it loses its generalised meaning and gains a specific one instead. Evidently, ‘poor’ is subtly polysemous in this way.

The criterion under discussion in this section has been discussed as if it had two separate criteria divisible parts. In summarising this section, it should be stressed, therefore, that the importance of the criterion lies in taking the two parts together: in inserting back the omitted elements, the change is grammatical – in the sense that it resolves a defective structure by making it a grammatical one – but not semantic. That is, in spite of grammatical remedying, there is no change in meaning at all.

3.2.1.4. The ‘textually recoverable’ criterion

Fulfilment of this fourth criterion requires that the ellipted structure be **textually** recoverable. Quirk et al. (1985: 887) argue that where that which is omitted is recovered in the extralinguistic environment there will always be a matter of debate as to exactly which lexical and grammatical expounded items have been omitted. That is, as implied in the discussions relative to the ‘precisely recoverable’ criterion (section 3.2.1.2), ellipsis that requires resolution by recourse to the situation can never be precise and so will always violate the precise recoverability criterion. It follows that only omission in cases of ellipsis which have their antecedent in the co-text can be determined to the precise

words. Note, however, that this is not that all cases of ellipsis that are textually recoverable are in this sense 'precisely' so.

In all of the following situational types of ellipsis, therefore, there is no determination of what is omitted to a single precise set of words:

- *How annoying* (said from one friend to another after one has dropped and broken a mug);
- *Biscuit?*;
- *What about that gig last night? **Brilliant***;
- [A] *Have a chocolate!*
[B] *I will try one, thanks. Mmmm. **Lovely***

Taking the first example above, there are numerous possible wordings: *how annoying that is*; *how annoying that you should drop a mug*; *how annoying you are mate for dropping that mate*; etc. The antecedent is recovered in the non-linguistic situation. As such, the limit on potential 'full forms' is very often going to be quite broad and numerous. There are a few cases of situational ellipsis where the alternative wordings form a fairly small set; normally where two and only two interlocutors are engaged in face-to-face conversation, the main verb is a form of 'be' and the subjects and/or complements are the interlocutors themselves. For example:

- *Going out? → Are you going out?*
- *Tired? → Are you tired?*

In contrast, 'precise recoverability' to one form is very much possible and indeed frequent with textually recoverable types, as the following examples demonstrate:

- *The colleagues got along well **and often went for a lunch-time pint***;
- *He is quitting his job **and possibly leaving the country***;
- *John gave them to Mary **and Mary in turn to Helen***

To take the first example, the possible wordings of the full form are only a closed set of two and one of these sounds slightly odd: *the colleagues got along well and the*

*colleagues often went for a lunch-time pint*². With textual ellipsis it is possible to satisfy the ‘precise recoverability’ criterion, certainly much more easily than with situational ellipsis.

In sum, the confident assertion that we have a definite ellipted form which can sometimes be made with textually recoverable types of ellipsis can never really be made in situationally recoverable types.

3.2.1.5. The ‘exact copy’ criterion

The fifth and final of Quirk et al.’s (1985: 887-888) criteria for ellipsis is a stricter version of the ‘textually recoverable’ criterion. It is as follows: not only are the omitted words recoverable from a co-textual antecedent but, further, the two are morphologically identical. Put another way, re-inserting the missing words so as to make a grammatically complete sentence (see sections 3.2.1.3 and 3.2.1.1) will result in no morphological adjustment to the co-textual antecedent.

The following examples satisfy this ‘exact copy’ criterion:

- *He might play today, but I don’t think **he will** → He might play today, but I don’t think **he will play**;*
- *I’m happy **if you are** → I’m happy **if you are happy***

That is, the textual antecedent in both cases (i.e. ‘play’ and ‘happy’) is required in the morphologically identical form in both the ellipted and full-form versions of each of these clauses. However, contrastingly, the examples that follow fail the ‘exact copy’ criterion:

- *I’ve always paid my way and **I always will** → I’ve always paid my way and I always will **pay my way**;*
- *She auditions **before I** → She auditions **before I audition***

Different from the previous versions, the textual antecedent needs to be morphologically adjusted in the full-form versions of the ellipted clauses (i.e. ‘paid’ → ‘pay’ and ‘audition’

to ‘auditions’) so as to account for tense and person number differences between the coordinated clauses in each instance.

Given the limited role of morphology in the grammar of English, this criterion isn’t as applicable as it is for many other languages. Morphology is only used in English to mark contrasts in ‘tense’, ‘aspect’ and ‘personal-number’ agreement in verb classes, and ‘countability’ in noun classes. Further, as Quirk et al. (1985: 887) stress, cases of ellipsis which only differ in the fulfilment of the ‘exact copy’ criterion are seen as largely one and the same type; theirs is a distinction of only minor degree. Given the last point, unsurprisingly Quirk et al. (1985: 887) argue for the recognition of a close relationship between the ‘textually recoverable’ and ‘exact copy’ criteria, such that the latter is dependent on – and a stricter version of – the former. While fulfilment of the ‘exact copy’ criterion entails the fulfilment of the ‘textually recoverable’ criterion, the reverse need not be true.

3.2.2. A gradience scale of ellipsis types based on the five criteria

A further benefit of Quirk et al.’s (1985) criteria for ellipsis is that they combine to offer a number of different definitions and associated types of ellipsis, related along a scale of prototypicality. Before the working definition of ellipsis adopted for the purposes of the current project is spelled out (section 3.2.3 below), it is appropriate to briefly introduce this gradience scale of ellipsis prototypicality and the points along which different sorts of ellipsis types might be recognised. Generalising slightly across the types Quirk et al. (1985) recognise for the purposes of simplification, six main types of ellipsis defined by different combinations of non-/fulfilment of the five criteria for ellipsis that Quirk et al. (1985) recognise can be identified. These are, in order of prototypicality – that is, prototypical in the sense of ‘strict’ adherence to all the criteria – from most to least: ‘strict ellipsis’, ‘standard ellipsis’, ‘quasi ellipsis’, ‘situational ellipsis’, ‘structural ellipsis’ and ‘semantic implication’. As just implied, within some of these types – namely, ‘situational’ and ‘structural’ – more delicate types can be distinguished from each other. But the distinction into the six aforementioned types serves the purposes of the present discussion.

At the most peripheral end of the scale, where ‘ellipsis’ is used in a very loose sense, is what Quirk et al. (1985: 889) term **semantic implication**. The only one of the five criteria it fulfils is the ‘re-insertion of the missing element(s) gives a grammatical and synonymous structure’. Thus, instances of this type are not recoverable textually; they do not have an omitted form which is evident to the identity of some one set of words; etc. Moreover, they display no sense of grammatical defectivity which thus means the application of all other criteria is essentially irrelevant. Quirk et al. (1985: 889) argue that to include ‘semantic implications’ into one’s definition of ellipsis is to make the concept so general that it is no longer of any real descriptive use. Some examples include:

- *John left **and it went quiet** → John left **and then it went quiet**,*
- *The door opened **and a man walked through it** → The door opened **and afterwards a man walked through it**;*

One step away from the ‘semantic implication’ type at the peripheral end of the scale is **structural ellipsis**. In addition to fulfilling the ‘re-insertion of the missing element(s) gives a grammatical and synonymous structure’ criterion, cases of structural ellipsis debatably meet the ‘grammatically defective’ and, even more debatably again, the ‘precisely recoverable’ criteria. That is, in:

- *I believe you are wrong → I believe that you are wrong;*
- *I think something ought be done about it → I think that something ought be done about it*

Whether the ‘grammatically defective’ and ‘precisely recoverable’ criteria are met is arguable. In other instances of the same ‘structural ellipsis’ type, the ‘precisely recoverable’ criterion certainly isn’t met:

- ***The person I miss most** is John;*
- ***Property owned by the royal family** totals in excess of £100 million*

That is in the embedded clause subject of the first of these examples, *The person I miss most is John*, there is no one word which can be identified as the undoubtedly omitted one. ‘Who’, ‘whom’ and ‘that’, at least, are all reasonable omitted forms. Like ‘semantic

implication' Quirk et al. (1985: 889) suggest that including a 'structural ellipsis' type into one's definition of ellipsis is to have a problematically broad interpretation of ellipsis.

Much like 'structural ellipsis' for its fulfilment of the Quirk et al. (1985) criteria is **situational ellipsis**. As with the last type, cases of 'situational ellipsis' fulfil the 're-insertion of the missing element(s) gives a grammatical and synonymous structure' criterion. Where the fulfilment of the 'grammatically defective' criterion was debatable in the 'structural ellipsis' type, it is certainly fulfilled in cases of 'situational ellipsis'.

- *Shearer's strike. **Brilliant!***;
- *Coffee?*;
- *How annoying* (said from one friend to another after one has dropped and broken a mug)

As the above cases of 'situational ellipsis' illustrate, 'situational ellipsis' entails grammatical defectivity, which the re-insertion of omitted elements resolves, producing a clause synonymous with the elliptical version. In all the above instances the 'precisely recoverable' criterion is violated. That is, there is no one identifiable set of words omitted from *Brilliant!*, for example. *That is brilliant, Brilliant strike that from Shearer, Shearer's strike is brilliant* and *Shearer is brilliant* are all eligible full forms of the elliptical variant. However, contrary to what was said above, some particular types of 'situational ellipsis' arguably do satisfy the 'precise recoverable' criterion:

- *Going out? → Are you going out?*
- *Tired? → Are you tired?*

Such cases normally occur where there are two and only two interlocutors who are engaged in face-to-face conversation, the main or finite verb is a form of 'be' and the subjects and/or complements are the interlocutors themselves. The above examples illustrate this. Certainly the alternative wordings form a fairly small set, if they do not actually satisfy the 'precisely recoverable' criterion.

Some comparative structures display a type of substitution that largely resembles ellipsis. Indeed, it arguably satisfies three of the criteria for ellipsis. Quirk et al. (1985:

888-889) term this **quasi ellipsis**. The label reflects that, strictly, instances of this type are a particular sort of substitution, rather than ellipsis.

To illustrate, consider:

She runs faster than him

A 'full form' could be postulated but only by adjusting the complement pronoun to *he* (*she runs faster than he (runs)*). The original version is not really 'grammatically defective'. But if we stretch the notion of 'full form' in this way then the 'full form' is precisely recoverable and is so from the co-text and with no morphological adjustment. The 're-insertion of the missing element(s) gives a grammatical and synonymous structure' criterion is not applicable specifically because of the pronoun adjustment noted is a prerequisite to make the clause a grammatical one. Despite its satisfying several of the criteria for ellipsis, however, it is best considered as a type of substitution that is closely related to ellipsis (Quirk et al., 1985: 889).

At the prototypical end are **standard ellipsis** and **strict ellipsis** types. These share the satisfaction of: the 'grammatically defective', 'precisely recoverable', 're-insertion of the missing element(s) gives a grammatical and synonymous structure' and 'textual recoverable' criteria. Only instances of 'strict ellipsis', however, satisfy the 'exact copy' criterion.

Some examples of 'standard ellipsis':

- *She runs faster **than I can** → She runs faster **than I can run***
- *I've always paid my way and **I always will** → I've always paid my way and I always will **pay my way**;*
- *She auditions **before I** → She auditions **before I audition***

*She runs faster **than I can***, to illustrate, is grammatically defective; has a single omitted form ('run'); when this omitted form is re-inserted to the elliptical variant in produces a grammatically complete sentence that is synonymous with the elliptical variant; and has its omitted structure recoverable from the text. In none of these examples, however, is the transferral of the antecedent possible without morphological adjustment. If the

morphological adjustment wasn't made, re-insertion wouldn't lead to a grammatical structure.

In the following examples of 'strict ellipsis', however, even this final criterion is fulfilled:

- *He walked in, **picked up his bag** and left → He walked in, **he picked up his bag** and left;*
- *He walked in, picked up his bag **and left** → He walked in, picked up his bag **and he left**;*
- *He might play today, but I don't think **he will** → He might play today, but I don't think **he will play**;*
- *I'm happy **if you are** → I'm happy **if you are happy***

To summarise and conclude this discussion of the different types of ellipsis that can be recognised given Quirk et al.'s (1985: 884-888) criteria for ellipsis and defined along a scale of prototypicality-peripherality, see Fig. 3.2.2.i below which contains all the information of this sub-section's discussion.

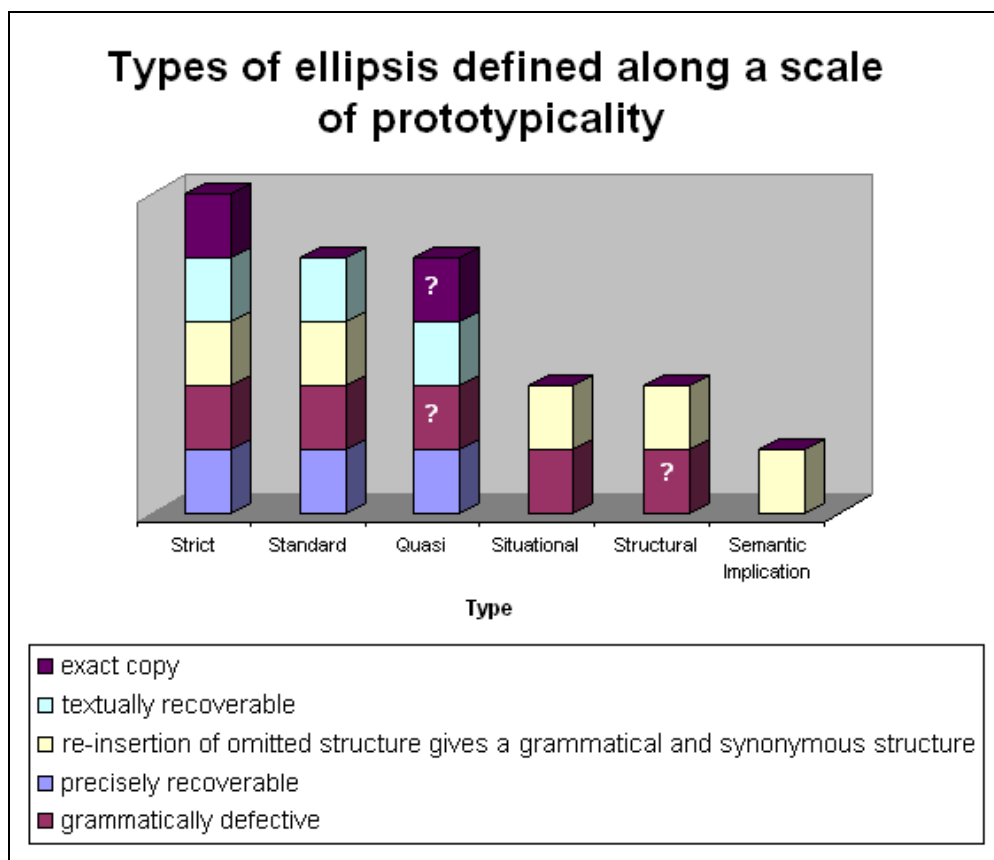


Figure 3.2.2.i: Types of ellipsis defined along a scale of prototypicality

3.2.3. A working definition of ellipsis for this project based on the five criteria

The value of basing the current project's working definition of ellipsis on a criterial approach to the phenomenon was explained at the outset of this section. Quirk et al. (1985) offer such a componential account of ellipsis; and one that benefits from being stated in atheoretical terms (again, see introductory discussion of section 3.2). Their criteria for ellipsis were given in sub-section 3.2.1. The different types of ellipsis associated with different combinations of non-/fulfillment of the five Quirk et al. (1985) criteria and their relationship to one another along a scale of prototypicality were given in sub-section 3.2.2. Bringing the aforementioned together, what remains in section 3.2 is a statement and motivation of the working definition of ellipsis for the current project.

First and quite simply, Quirk et al.'s (1985) 'grammatically defective' (see section 3.2.1.1) and 're-insertion of the missing element(s) gives a grammatical and synonymous structure' (see section 3.2.1.3) criteria are incorporated in the current definition. And they are so in a manner fully faithful to the original Quirk et al. (1985: 885-887) reading, without any modification. That is, for any clause – the structural unit under focus in this project (see section 3.1) – in the data of this project to be analysed as a case of ellipsis it must both: (i) it must be missing one or more of its obligatory elements; and (ii) re-insertion of the missing obligatory elements must result in a clause which is grammatically complete and synonymous with its elliptical equivalent. These two criteria are maintained because, as was said in section 3.2.1.1, little motivation for a notion of ellipsis would remain if it did not account for some otherwise unexplained absence. Additionally, with respect the 'synonymy' aspect of the latter criterion, as was said in section 3.2.1.3, it confines the concept of ellipsis to reasonable limits, rather than it becoming equated with simply anything and everything 'understood but not said' in which case it would be so broad to be of little descriptive worth.

Invoking the notions of "grammatical deficiency", "grammatical completeness" and "obligatoriness" entail the maintenance of some conception of 'grammaticality'. As was remarked in section 3.2.1.1 above, a functional conception of 'grammaticality' must have society at large as its source of reference. Additionally, as Quirk et al. (1985) argue, any case must be argued on the basis of as much evidence as is available. It is for these reasons that computerised corpora – in the manner envisaged by Sinclair (1991), for example – will become a crucial source of support in the process of analysis (see chapter 5).

Next, the 'textually recoverable' (see section 3.2.1.4) and 'exact copy' (see section 3.2.1.5) criteria are excluded from the current project's definition of ellipsis. The reason for their exclusion is based on the prediction that the distinction between 'textual' and 'situational' types of recoverability involved in process of ellipsis will be a valuable one in answering the central question of this project: do patterns of ellipsis in datasets of text varied for their contextual mode support systemic functional linguistics' 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis? Ellipsis, as the linguistic phenomenon, is the dependent variable measure and the parameter of semiotic context theorised in systemic functional linguistics as the 'mode of discourse' is the independent variable

measure. With ellipsis said to be a textual metafunctional phenomenon, the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis (henceforth CMHH) predicts that as the ‘mode of discourse’ varies so will the behaviour of textual metafunctional phenomena (and vice versa).

Two primary concerns subsumed under the parameter of context ‘mode of discourse’ are: (i) to what degree do aspects of the context of situation bear upon the language being used (Hasan, 1985b: 58; Halliday, 1985b: 34); and (ii) does language function appropriately within its context of situation (ibid). Moreover, once one considers language use – that is, ‘text’ – to be the data of linguistics, by nature language and semiotic context become inseparably intertwined (Halliday & Hasan, 1985). For three related reasons, then – one general; two specific – it is suspected that the ‘textual’ – ‘situational’ recoverability distinction involved in ellipsis will be a valuable measure in testing the validity of the CMHH. Furthermore, as Quirk et al. (1985: 862) themselves admit, ‘text’ is best considered a special and narrow sense of ‘situation’; that is, there is no problem in interpreting the two as related as types of recoverability. As such, Quirk et al.’s (1985) ‘textually recoverable’ and ‘exact copy’ criteria are excluded from the working definition of ellipsis taken in this project because they preclude the maintenance of the ‘textual’ – ‘situational’ recoverability distinction.

Finally, this leaves the ‘precisely recoverable’ criterion. As was said in section 3.2.1.2, ellipsis is in the first instance distinguished from other types of linguistic omission by its having omitted elements recoverable. That is, the fact that what is omitted is recoverable is that which characterises ellipsis from other types of linguistic omission. It would be odd, then, to not include a criterion of ‘recoverability’ within any definition of ellipsis. To do so would be to change the nature of the phenomenon from how it is understood by most linguists, regardless of their theoretical orientation. And thus a version of this criterion is included within the definition of ellipsis adopted for this project. However, that incorporated into the working definition here is a version of this criterion modified from that as given in Quirk et al. (1985). Specifically, two adjustments are made to Quirk et al.’s (1985) take on a ‘recoverability’ criterion for ellipsis.

Firstly, if ‘precisely recoverable’ is to mean ‘recoverable to one form; one set of words’ with the exception of morphological adjustments – as is the case for Quirk et al. (1985:

884-885) – then it needs to be recognised that where the ellipted structure (see section 3.1.) is a nominal unit ‘recoverable to one form’ must be replaced with ‘recoverable to one **referent**’. That is, strict nominal ellipsis requires identification back to one referent not one form, as is the case in non-nominal ellipsis. It has long been recognised that when applied to nominal ellipted structures the ‘recoverable to one form’ principle must be stretched to allow pro-forms to be eligible re-inserted structure alternatives (Halliday & Hasan, 1976: 153-154). But it hasn’t, however, been recognised that in fact any nominal form so long as it refers to – and only to – the same real-world referent as the antecedent is an entirely legible ellipted alternative. To illustrate, in *Crouch got on the end of the cross and beat Simonsen with his lobbed header* any and more of the following nominal structures are legible alternatives that could be reinserted and still abide the other two criteria of this project’s working definition of ellipsis: *Crouch, he, Peter James Crouch, the striker, Crouch, the ex. Liverpool forward*. What these alternatives have in common is that they all refer to the same real-world referent: Peter Crouch who currently plays Premier League football for Stoke City Football Club in the UK.

Secondly, even for non-nominal ellipted structures, ‘precisely recoverable’ as ‘recoverable to one form with the exception of relevant morphological adjustments’ – as it is for Quirk et al. (1985) – must be replaced with ‘recoverable to a small set of forms’. Specifically, the option for specific and pro-form versions of the ‘full-form’ must be allowed. That is, both *The manager came in and almost immediately he left* and *The manager came in and almost immediately the manager left* will be recognised as eligible full-form equivalent of what is therefore considered a case of ellipsis included under such a definition currently being promoted: *The manager came in and almost immediately left*. The alternation between specific and pro-form ‘re-insertion’ is tolerable by most accounts and definitions of ellipsis and even some of Quirk et al.’s (1985) illustrative examples imply as much.

The ‘recoverability’ criterion, then, is adjusted from the Quirk et al. (1985: 884-885) ‘precisely recoverable to one and only one form’ to ‘recoverable to a very small, closed-set of alternative forms, aside from where the elliptical structure in a nominal structure and then it is a matter of recoverability to one and only one referent’ for the current project. Good analytical judgment will be required in interpreting ‘a very small, closed-set

of alternative forms' and it is likely there is a cline which will have to be carefully negotiated here.

To summarise this sub-section, all and only the following criteria need be satisfied for any clause in the data to be analysed as attesting a case of ellipsis.

- the clause must be 'grammatically defective' by its having one or more obligatory elements omitted;
- the omitted elements must be recoverable to: (i) a small, closed-set of alternatives in cases of elliptical structures of the non-nominal sort; or (ii) one and only one reference in cases of elliptical structures of the nonnominal sort;
- re-inserting the omitted elements leads to a clause that is both grammatically complete and synonymous with its elliptical equivalent.

Together these constitute the current project's definition of ellipsis. The different types of ellipsis defined along a continuum of prototypicality as discussed in section 3.2.2 which are, following this project's definition for ellipsis, recognised as being cases of ellipsis are: 'strict', 'standard', and 'situational' types. 'Quasi', 'structural' and 'semantic implication' types are thus outside the remit of the current project, given its definition of ellipsis.

With a definition of ellipsis for the current project very clearly determined, the next section briefly documents systemic functional work on ellipsis. Chiefly, the section is concerned with how ellipsis has broadly been characterised in the theory.

3.3. Previous accounts of ellipsis in systemic functional linguistics

Much has been written about ellipsis in the systemic functional literature. In the majority of these instances, however, ellipsis is either raised as an aside in the discussion of some other topic or it is given in a work where the remit is some cartographical survey of a great many different phenomena simultaneously and ellipsis is thus likewise covered only very briefly. Halliday & Hasan's (1976) account of ellipsis, then, is an exception in the systemic functional literature because it is the only one to give a very detailed treatment of the phenomenon.

The goal of the current section dictates that a comprehensive review of all systemic functional discussion of ellipsis is unnecessary and a selective management of this material is required, specifically to answer the two following questions. Given the view of systemic functional theory that language is a stratified system, organised with primacy on paradigmatic relations which consequently reveal a metafunctional organisation of 'higher' strata (see section 2.1 and sections 2.2.1 and 2.2.2):

- 1) What is the assumed metafunctional membership of the phenomenon of ellipsis?

- 2) What is the assumed stratal location of the phenomenon of ellipsis?

Answers to these questions are the central concern of the current section because they largely determine the shape the analytical results of this project must take to answer the project's widest research question. Re-call from the introductory chapter that the primary question of the project is: is systemic functional linguistics 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis valid? Evidently, stated in these general and abstract terms, the question is an unanswerable one. To make that abstract question testable, ellipsis is taken as the dependent variable measure and datasets varied for context are the independent variable measure. The 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis predicts a relationship between a number of parameters of context and a number of metafunctions in language strata (see sections 2.2.1 to 2.2.3 and section 2.1.3). The metafunctional membership of ellipsis, therefore, will determine which – and only which – parameter of context must be varied across datasets as the independent variable measure of this analytical project (see the relevant brief remarks in chapter 1 and their elaboration in chapter 4). Given that it is only the semantic and lexicogrammatical strata of the language system that are said to be metafunctional diversified (see section 2.2.1 and section 2.1.2), the question of ellipsis's stratal location is also a highly relevant matter in providing an answer to the project's main question.

This section, then, is organised into two main sub-sections: the first regarding the metafunctional membership of ellipsis; the second, its stratal location. Of course, in

answering these questions, other issues become relevant and will be touched upon here and taken up in more detail in Chapter 6.

3.3.1. The metafunctional membership of ellipsis

In surveying the vast systemic functional literature with the question of ellipsis's metafunctional membership in mind, it is quite easy to gain the impression that ellipsis is unproblematically a textual metafunctional phenomenon. See, for example: Halliday & Hasan (1976: 29) and Halliday (1985b: 35-36). Consider also:

The selection of options in the **textual** systems, such as those of theme, information and voice and also the selection of cohesive patterns, those of reference, substitution and ellipsis, and conjunction [...] tend to be determined by the symbolic forms taken by the interaction, in particular the place that is assigned to the text in the total situation.

(Halliday, 1977: 202)

The textual metafunction is the means of presenting and organising experiential and interpersonal meanings as a coherent and cohesive flow of information – integrated within and appropriate to the text's context (see sections 2.1.3 and 2.2.1). Prototypical textual metafunctional resources are: 'theme' (e.g. Matthiessen, 1995: 531-599) and 'information' (e.g. Matthiessen, 1995: 603-606), 'voice' (e.g. Matthiessen, 1995: 590-599), conjunction (e.g. Matthiessen, 1995: 519-530), etc.

Other systemic functional linguists agree that ellipsis is a means for ensuring the flow of information as text is coherent and cohesive in its context. For example:

The clause complex is one environment in which the textual clause system ELLIPSIS/SUBSTITUTION operates

(Matthiessen, 1995: 158)

And:

In the description of particular languages, the textual metafunction includes a number of semantic and lexicogrammatical systems such as theme, information, conjunction, substitution-ellipsis, reference and lexical cohesion.

(Matthiessen, et al. 2010: 95)

An initial survey of the systemic functional literature, then, provides a seemingly confident assertion that ellipsis is uncomplicatedly a matter of the textual metafunction. Despite this, taken all together, the entire systemic functional comment on ellipsis is not divorced of relevance to other metafunctions. While no discussion of a relationship between ellipsis and ideationally-relevant matters is given, ellipsis is discussed in some systemic functional literature explicitly in connection with the interpersonal metafunction. Firstly, Halliday (1994: 318-321), Halliday & Matthiessen (2004: 565-567) and Matthiessen (1995: 402-409) all discuss ellipsis in terms of 'modal structure'; an interpersonally-defined functional structure. They talk of 'Mood ellipsis' and 'Residue ellipsis' types. Martin (1992a: 390) makes an even greater and more explicit claim of ellipsis's interpersonal relevance. And Poynton (1985: 79-81) argues that the use of ellipsis in text is an indicator of aspects of tenor relationships contextually. In that the 'tenor' parameter of context is said to interact with interpersonal resources linguistically (see section 2.2.3), Poynton's (ibid) discussion also suggests ellipsis might not be so straightforwardly a matter of – and only of – the textual metafunction.

This apparent lack of metafunctional discreteness in the case of ellipsis needn't necessarily be any contradiction to systemic functional theory, even despite the predictions of the CMHH (see section 2.2.3). The earlier introduction and discussion of the concepts of 'metaredundancy' and 'contextual configuration' (see section 2.2.3) should have stressed that, so long as the CMHH is interpreted in conservative (Thompson, 1999: 122) probabilistic terms, metafunctional distinctions are, at the strongest, only generalisations. When ellipsis is discussed as at one and the same time relevant to two metafunctions, the real problem is the absence of any clarifying discussion as to why it is being discussed in such cross-metafunctional terms. Matthiessen (1995: 402), for example, writes: *clausal ellipsis is a textual resource [...] [b]ut its environment is defined interpersonally*. In theory, despite not having any clarifying discussion on what thus appears to be the inconsistent treatment of ellipsis to metafunctional relevance, it should be possible to determine the true nature of ellipsis's

metafunctional membership anyway. The ultimate evidence for locating a linguistic phenomenon in metafunctional space is considering it across what Halliday (1996) calls the **trinocular principle**. That is, by asking:

- (i) what does ellipsis realise at the stratum above itself?;
- (ii) what realises ellipsis at the stratum below itself?;
- (iii) how does it relate to phenomena at its own stratum?; on which is it highly interdependent and which is it highly independent of?

Of course, a problem arises in proceeding in this way, given the aims of this section. The stratal location of ellipsis is also a matter of debate (see sub-section 3.3.2 next below). To take up the challenge of answering the above questions, therefore, is another example of the way in which progress in linguistic theorising and describing can be very difficult because, as Hasan (1995: 263) accurately but wearily reflects, “steps in neither direction of approach are self-evident”. Issues – here the determining of metafunctional membership of ellipsis on the one hand and, on the other, the stratal location of the same phenomenon – become entangled and answering either as a pre-requisite to the other becomes not a help, but a hindrance, given this state of affairs.

3.3.2. The stratal location of ellipsis

In systemic functional linguistics where language is conceived to demonstrate continuity of relation across language-internal strata, and extending into context (Hasan, 1995) and even society (Hasan, 1992b), it would be surprising were systemic functional linguists not to claim that there are semantic and contextual motivations for ellipsis. But if ellipsis is, generally speaking, the omission of structure (Quirk et al., 1985: 82; 858; 883-884), and if the lexicogrammar is the resource for construing meaning as wording (see sub-section 2.2.1), then even a roughly educated guess on current concerns would make ellipsis a lexicogrammatical concern, stratally. Indeed, the mainstream position in systemic functional linguistics is to see ellipsis as a phenomenon functioning at the lexicogrammatical stratum. For example:

In terms of the linguistic system, reference is a relation on the semantic level, whereas substitution is a relation on the lexicogrammatical level, the level of grammar and

vocabulary, or linguistic 'form'. Ellipsis, as we have already remarked, is in this respect simply a kind of substitution; it can be defined as substitution by zero. [...] substitution [and so ellipsis as one type of substitution] is a grammatical relation, a relation in the wording rather than in the meaning, [...] [and so needs to be] defined grammatically rather than semantically.

(Halliday & Hasan, 1976: 89-90)

[...] The grammar then makes available resources for tying an initiation to a response (ellipsis and substitution) [...]

(Quirk et al., 1985: 859)

[...] both systems are however associated with redundancy as opposed to relevance or reminding phoricity because of the way in which both message parts and moves may be realised through SUBSTITUTION and ELLIPSIS in the lexicogrammar.

(ibid)

Although reduction [ellipsis being a type of reduction] may in general be regarded in semantic or pragmatic terms as a means of avoiding redundancy of expression, what kinds of reduction are permitted is largely a matter of syntax.

(ibid)

The next chapter states the details of the methodology of the present project. These have already been given in some details in previous chapters, particularly the first introductory chapter. In the next chapter, however, the methodology is spelled out in full detail. As important as a methodology is to any research project, the methodology here is particularly significant and so chapter 4 covers much ground.

CHAPTER FOUR

DEVELOPING A METHODOLOGY FOR CODING CASES OF ELLIPSIS ACROSS CONTEXTUALLY-VARIED CORPORA

This chapter is organised into three sections, reflecting broad methodological matters arising from consideration of the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis (henceforth CMHH) as discussed in the previous two chapters. The first section (4.1) revisits and elaborates on the earlier discussion of context in order to determine a spectrum of contextual variation which can act as the project’s independent variable and so inform the design of the dataset. Section 4.2 then focuses on the design of the dataset itself within the parameters established. The final section of the chapter (4.3) introduces the annotation software used for coding the data of the analytical project. It is in section 4.3 too that the logic of the specific coding scheme developed here to achieve the aforementioned goal is explained.

4.1. The independent variable: A relevant spectrum of contextual⁴ variation

This section’s task of determining a spectrum of context variation which will act as the analytical project’s independent variable is handled in three stages. The first stage (4.1.1) is to elaborate on the earlier discussion of context (section 2.2.2 above) as it is theorised in systemic functional linguistics. This more detailed presentation results in a narrowing of the considerations of context to the parameter ‘mode of discourse’, a discussion of which forms the basis of Section 4.1.2. One of the contextual contrasts within mode identified in this section, the ‘ancillary-constitutive’ continuum, becomes the focus of Section 4.1.3 as this continuum is to be used as the basis for the current project’s dataset design, as will be described further in section 4.2.

4.1.1 Organisation at the contextual stratum revisited

To re-cap the key aspects of the systemic-functional approach to context as it was presented in section 2.2.2:

⁴ Unless otherwise stated, I shall use the term ‘contextual’ in this chapter specifically in the sense to which it is put in systemic functional linguistics. That is, as a semiotic construct in line with the brief presentation offered in section 2.2.2.

- (i) in the first instance, ‘context’ is a semiotic, not material, construct; that is, the ‘contextual phenomena’ relevant to a theory of language are those implicated in the construal of linguistic meanings with which they are therefore entwined **but** which are not of themselves linguistic phenomena;
- (ii) semiotic contextual phenomena constitute a stratum of a higher order of abstraction immediately above the semantic stratum (see Figure 2.1.1.i in section 2.1.1); as such and as implied under (i), phenomena of the contextual stratum are related to phenomena of the semantic stratum through bi-directional realisation: contextual phenomena activate semantic phenomena and semantic phenomena construe contextual phenomena as relevant to context;
- (iii) the stratum of context has a tripartite division mirroring the metafunctional organisation of the higher-order language strata thus: ‘field of discourse’ (the socially meaningful activities language is playing some part in), ‘tenor of discourse’ (the role relationships pertaining between interlocutors) and ‘mode of discourse’ (the role of language in the context of the communication).

In section 2.2.2 reference was made to a number of issues currently unresolved in systemic functional research. Arguably the most crucial of these issues is that present systemic functional descriptions of context are not systematised as the theory demands of descriptions at other strata. The chief means of validating descriptions at any stratum in systemic functional linguistics has always been considering and accounting for the realisation patternings both at neighbouring strata and within the stratum under study (Halliday, 1996); these being what Halliday (ibid) calls ‘trinocular principles’ of description. Brief remarks to this effect were made in section 2.2.2. Where relevant, this issue briefly punctuates the remainder of this section. A full elaboration of the matter, however, must wait until the discussion chapter (specifically section 6.1.2) for reasons that will there become clear. The current section will focus on two further issues relevant to the design of the current thesis. The first is that ellipsis, as the dependent variable of the project, is generally considered a textual phenomenon in systemic functional linguistics (see section 3.3.1). The second, following from this, is that within the

parameters of context, it is variation within the 'mode of discourse' that the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis predicts should be reflected in and reflect variation in the manifestation of ellipsis as a textual phenomenon (see section 2.2.3).

A much more specific statement of how context serves as this project's independent variable can now be given. It is only those aspects of context known in systemic functional linguistics as the 'mode of discourse' which are relevant to the independent variable of this analytical project. For it is only these which the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis predicts are relevant in explaining the occurrence of ellipsis.

4.1.2. The 'mode of discourse' parameter of context: Primary considerations and primary systems

Halliday (1985a: 12) defines 'mode of discourse' as the role language is playing in the communicative event in question. It addresses the question "what is it that the participants are expecting the language to do for them in the situation?" (ibid), and involves the following factors:

- the symbolic organisation of the text;
- the status assigned to the text in the situation;
- the text's function in the context, including its channel (is it spoken, written, or some combination of the two?);
- its rhetorical mode: what is being achieved by the text (is it persuasive, expository, didactic, etc.?).

Halliday (ibid)

However, in contrast to descriptions of language-internal strata, the systemic functional description of context has to date, according to Hasan (2009), been largely common-sense and unsystematised and therefore lacking theoretical and descriptive rigour. The chief reason for the lack of theoretical and descriptive development at this stratum is simply that comparatively little research has been carried out in this area (Hasan, 2010). Yet this "theoretically and descriptively under-developed" systemic-functional description of context is put to surprisingly frequent applied use in, for example, text analysis (e.g. Eggins & Slade, 1997), computational modelling including natural language generation

(e.g. Patten, 1988; Bateman & Paris, 1991, etc.), etc. Serious issues are at stake here. In the following sections those descriptions of mode that have been elaborated to date are sketched out.

4.1.2.1. Matthiessen's systematisation of Hasan's primary 'mode' considerations

Only two attempts to systematise options at the contextual parameter of 'mode' are readily available: Matthiessen (1995: 52) and Martin (1992a: 508-525)⁵. Taking the former first, Matthiessen (1995: 52) is replicated below as Figure 4.1.2.1.i.

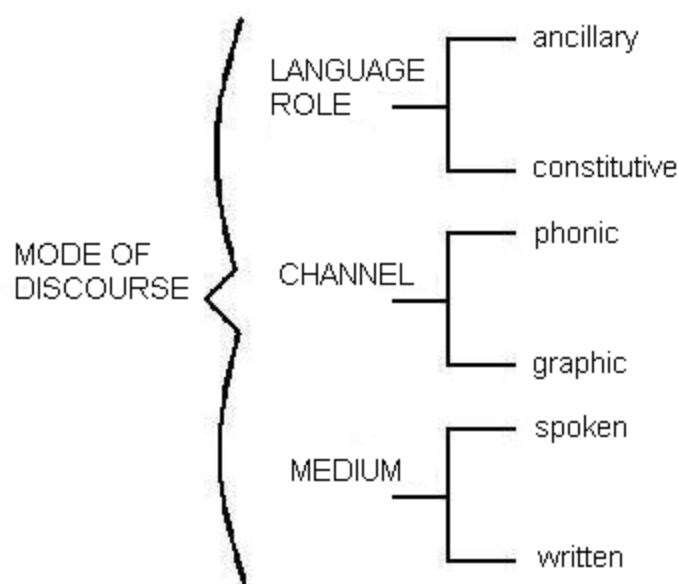


Figure 4.1.2.1.i: Hasan's primary MODE OF DISCOURSE systems at the contextual stratum according to Matthiessen

Matthiessen's systematisation of primary 'mode' considerations is evidently based on Hasan's (1985b: 57-59) description, in which she postulates three primary issues at stake within the considerations of the 'mode' parameter of context, from which all other

⁵ It is right to note one further such work. Butt (2008) has been described by Hasan (2009: 181) as a very detailed and systematised description of systemic-functional context. Butt (2008) is, however, currently under revision (Butt, 2010), only existing in mimeo form. It is not, therefore, publicly available which is regrettable in the opinion of the current author.

matters relative to 'mode' can be derived. Let us explain each issue – or each system, systemically interpreted as Matthiessen (1995: 52) – in turn.

LANGUAGE ROLE concerns the extent to which the language of a text comprises the entirety of the social action or communicative events of that text. That is, is the language of the text only a part of the social action or does it constitute all of the social action of the text? In the former case, language will be contextualised by the events of the social action of the text, whereas in the latter language is said to be self-contextualising in the sense that it creates the social action itself. Hasan (1985b: 57) terms cases of the former 'ancillary' in mode (for example, a television sports commentary) and cases of the latter 'constitutive' in mode (for example, a novel). It is important to stress, however, that LANGUAGE ROLE is a continuum with 'ancillary' and 'constitutive' as the respective end-points only (ibid: 58).

CHANNEL is a matter of the substance with which one expresses their linguistic meanings: in phonology and phonetics or in graphology. The question is: does the language of the text "travel on air as sound waves, or [...is it] apprehended as graven images, some form of writing?" (Hasan, 1985b: 58). In contrast to LANGUAGE ROLE, CHANNEL is a simple binary system with a choice between 'phonic' or 'graphic'. It is closely tied to matters of what Hasan (1985b: 58) terms 'process-sharing'; the degree to which the addressee is involved in the creation of the text, ranging from active participation in the production of the text (e.g. dialogic casual conversation) to arriving at a text for the first time when it is already a final product (e.g. reading a novel). 'Process-sharing' is related to CHANNEL in that texts produced in the 'phonic' channel tend to favour the addressee's active participation whereas texts having a 'graphic' channel tend to favour a passively participating addressee, as in the examples above. These are tendencies, however, and exceptions are not difficult to find (e.g. monologuing in casual conversation, as passive addressee participation in the phonic channel; the language of internet chatrooms, as active addressee participation in the graphic channel).

Finally and related to both CHANNEL and 'process sharing' is the MEDIUM system. It embodies the choice between the linguistic styles associated with the written and spoken modes. There is significant potential for confusion here, given the labels for features in this system. The MEDIUM system is not actually a matter of whether the text is

spoken or written. That issue is precisely the concern of the CHANNEL system which is hence a simple binary systemic choice between 'phonic' and 'graphic'. Rather, the MEDIUM system is concerned with whether or not the language used in a text is as that typically associated with the language of these channels. High lexical density and low grammatical intricacy, for example, are indicative of the written mode while low lexical density and high grammatical intricacy are typical of the spoken mode (see Halliday, 1989). Consequently MEDIUM is not a binary system but rather a continuum like the LANGUAGE ROLE system, with distinctions – and so features – mid-way between the language associated with 'spoken' and 'written' modes, as in. 'written-to-be-spoken' texts.

Fig. 4.1.2.1.i can therefore be more accurately re-presented as Fig. 4.1.2.1.ii. This presentation reflects the fact that of the three systems CHANNEL is the only true binary one while LANGUAGE ROLE and MEDIUM are systems more continuous in nature (Poynton, 1985: 76; Martin, 1987; 1992a: 512; Fawcett, 1988). It also makes the distinction between CHANNEL and MEDIUM systems clearer. It is important to stress that the LANGUAGE ROLE and MEDIUM systems as presented below are purely hypothetical systems. That is, the motivation for their features – the systemic contrasts involved – is not yet known. And this is reflected by the fact features – except 'ancillary' and 'constitutive' in the LANGUAGE ROLE system and 'spoken' and 'written' in the MEDIUM system – are not labelled⁶. What is known is that each system embodies a vast range of continuous phenomena rather than a few discrete phenomena (Poynton, 1985: 76; Martin, 1987; 1992a: 512; Fawcett, 1988). These are consequently not accounted for in any descriptively adequate way if they are treated as simple binary systems, 'ancillary' vs. 'constitutive' and 'spoken' vs. 'written' and a great deal of work, therefore, remains to be done.

⁶ And even these are prefaced with 'most' to add further acknowledgment to the fact that these systems are work-in-progress systems and their systemic contrasts – even these named ones – are not known in strict systemic terms.

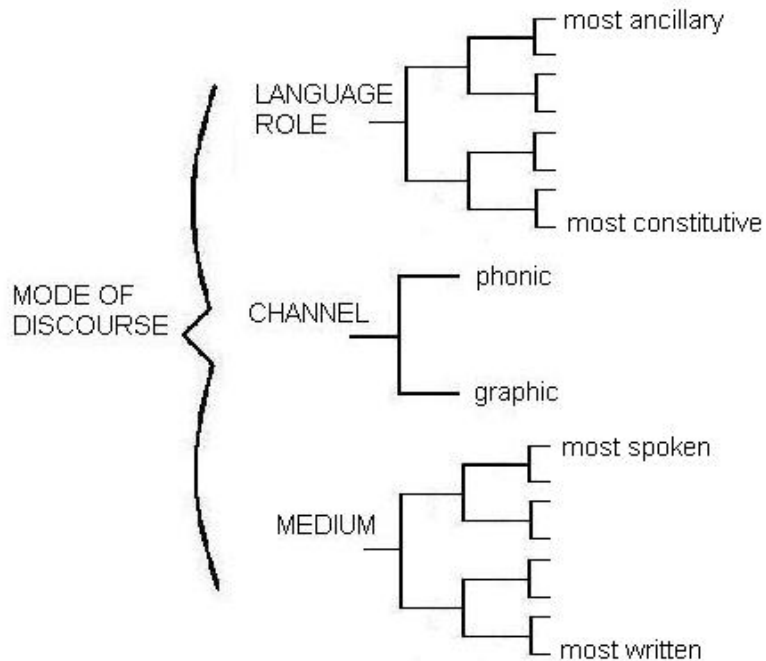


Figure 4.1.2.1.ii: A re-interpretation of Matthiessen’s systematisation of Hasan’s primary MODE OF DISCOURSE systems

4.1.2.2. Martin’s systematisation of his own primary ‘mode’ considerations

The only other account of the ‘mode’ parameter of context in the systemic functional literature which attempts to systemise its description is Martin (1992a: 508-525). Martin (ibid) proposes the following primary ‘mode’ systems, which are an elaboration of the Hasan-Matthiessen account (Fig. 4.3).

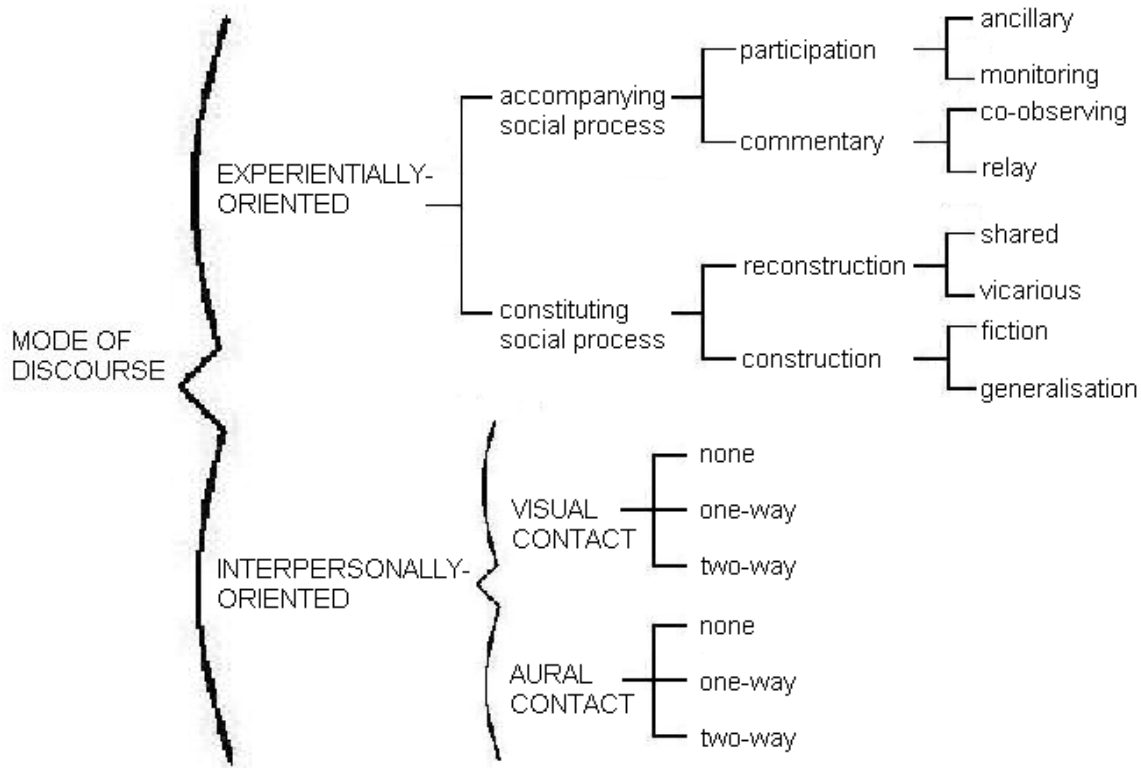


Figure 4.1.2.2.i: Primary MODE OF DISCOURSE systems at the contextual stratum, according to Martin

Fig 4.1.2.2.i substantiates the claim that Martin's (1992a: 508-525) systemic description of 'mode' is more elaborate than the Hasan-Matthiessen one. It is reasonable to talk of Martin's (ibid) description amounting to 'mode **networks**', given that his systematisation extends to a reasonable degree of delicacy.

According to Martin's (ibid) description there are two initial considerations at the 'mode' parameter, with all other matters of 'mode' derivable from these. What Martin (ibid) terms EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE is a matter of the relation between the language used and what it is being used to talk about – i.e. the 'field of discourse' of the text. Martin (1984; 1986) uses the metaphor of 'distance' to explain this relation. The question is: is the language a part of and therefore close to the social action of the text, or is it removed from and therefore far away from this social action? This 'distance' is in the first instance abstract but consequently also concrete spatial and temporal distance. Put in different terms, what is at stake is the text's 'contextual dependency' (Martin, 1992a: 509). That

is, does the language of the text construct its 'field of discourse', so it is in this sense contextually self-defining, or does it accompany its 'field of discourse', and therefore contextually dependent (ibid)? Martin (1984) glosses the phenomenon under discussion as a distinction between 'language in action' and 'language as reflection'. These, it should be stressed, are only opposed poles within what is in reality a continuum. As Martin (1992a: 517) puts it, the language involved in doing X and the language involved in describing doing X embody very different modes. The more delicate systemic contrasts in this part of Martin's 'mode' network and their motivations will be discussed below in section 4.1.3.

It should be noted that Martin's EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE out-classifies certain types of texts. Martin (1992a: 517-518) makes a distinction between 'field-structured' and 'genre-structured' texts. The former are organised around the sequence of activities (usually along either time or space) they take as their 'field' while the latter are organised in different terms (for example, on semantic grounds). Only 'field-structured' texts select in Martin's EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE system.

Martin's other primary distinction – the INTERPERSONALLY-ORIENTED MODE system – encompasses matters of what kind of interaction are made possible between addressee and addresser given the potentiality for feedback rendered possible by the communicative situation. This matter is defined by the interaction of aural and visual channels: can addressee and addresser hear each other, and can they see each other? Consequently, Martin's primary systems within the INTERPERSONALLY-ORIENTED MODE system are the parallel AURAL CONTACT and VISUAL CONTACT systems. In the case of both systems, there is a discrete choice between 'none', 'one-way' and 'two-way'. Applied to the aural channel, that is: can both addresser and addressee hear each other (e.g. casual conversation); can the addressee hear the addresser but not vice-versa (e.g. both radio and television programmes); or can neither hear each other (e.g. most written language)? Likewise, but in the visual channel: can both addresser and addressee see each other (e.g. face-to-face casual conversation); can only the addressee see the addresser (e.g. television programme); or can neither see the other (e.g. radio programme)?

From these parallel systems, Martin derives nine more delicate systemic environments. Martin (1992a) only offers a tentative description – though in explicitly systemic terms – of two of these; those at opposite ends of the ‘feedback potential’ continuum: (i) no aural or visual contact, and (ii) two-way aural and visual contact. Martin argues that the former is indicative of prototypical written language and the latter of prototypical spoken language. For reasons of space, further discussion of these systemic environment isn’t possible here.

4.1.2.3. The correlation between Hasan’s and Martin’s descriptions of primary matters at the ‘mode of discourse’ contextual parameter

It should now be apparent that while Hasan’s (1985b) and Martin’s (1992a) respective accounts of the primary ‘mode’ considerations differ in detail, they also overlap to a large degree. A more explicit and more detailed statement of this correspondence is the aim of the current section. Differences between these scholars’ respective ‘mode’ accounts are in the most part a consequence of their different approaches (Hasan, 1985a, b, c; 1995; 1999; 2009; Martin, 1984; 1992a; 1999) to the broader task of modelling context per se within a wider systemic functional model of language in society. As necessary, brief remarks to this end will punctuate the present discussion. That two otherwise different accounts of context share so much in terms of ‘mode’ is crucial support for the claim that primary ‘mode’ matters are largely as presented in the previous two sections. These accounts of ‘mode’ are brought together as one refined account in this section. In turn, this refined account of ‘mode’ is strategically important in informing a spectrum of contextual variation that will serve as the project’s independent variable (section 4.1.3) and so in large part the dataset design (section 4.3).

Arguably the most obvious correspondence between Hasan’s (1985b: 57-59) and Martin’s (1992a: 508-525) respective ‘mode’ accounts is that Hasan’s (1985b: 57-58) ‘language role’ is entirely equivalent to Martin’s (1992a: 516-525) ‘experiential-oriented mode’ (see Fig. 4.1.2.3.i).

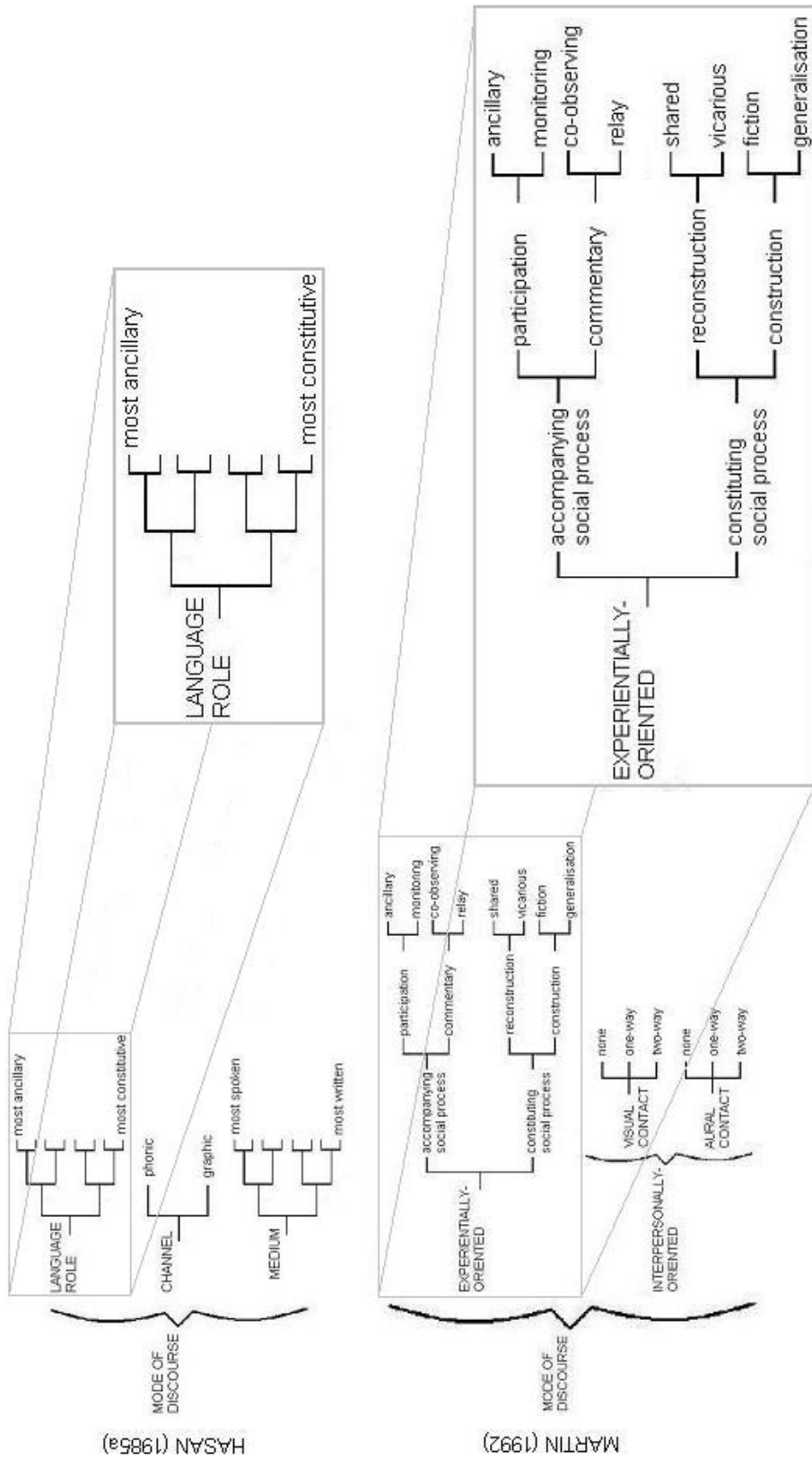


Figure 4.1.2.3.i: Comparing Hasan's LANGUAGE ROLE and Martin's EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE primary 'mode' systems

When Hasan's (1985b: 57-58) discussion of 'language role' is closely compared to Martin's (1992a: 516-525) discussion of 'experientially-oriented mode', the correspondence is evident. Both scholars talk of these respective considerations as a matter of the relationship between the language of the text and the social action of the communicative event. Generalising, that relationship embodies a distinction between contexts where language is constitutive of the social action and contexts where language is only a peripheral part of the social action. In the former instance, language is consequently self-defining, whereas in the latter it is dependent upon other aspects of the social action for its interpretation.

The overlap between [... context semiotically perceived and context materially perceived⁷] can vary according to the role that the language plays in the unfolding of the social process; when the process is defined by reference to language [...] the material situational setting in which the text actually gets produced may be largely irrelevant to the text [...] By contrast, if the role of language is subsidiary, the social process being defined without reference to language [...] then the elements of the material situational setting are likely to be actively picked up as the ingredients of the context of situation.

(Hasan, 1980: 108)

[Mode] affect[s] the relation between language and what it is talking about. This dimension grades language in action in relation to language as reflection. [...] What is happening along this scale is that language is becoming further and further removed from what it is actually talking about, not simply in terms of temporal distance, but eventually in terms of abstraction as well.

(Martin, 2010: 22-23)

Both scholars stress that this aspect of 'mode' is a continuum rather than a discrete distinction as just implied. Consequently, they both recognise that modelling the

⁷ See (i) of section 4.1.1 above.

phenomena involved in systemic terms would require a network of plentiful options extending into some reasonable degree of delicacy. A simple binary system opposing the ‘ancillary’ and ‘constitutive’ poles would be insufficient. Thus:

LANGUAGE ROLE [... is a matter of] whether it [i.e. the text’s context] is CONSTITUTIVE or ANCILLARY. These categories should not be seen as sharply distinct but rather as the two end-points of a continuum.

(Hasan, 1985b: 57-58)

Experientially mode mediates **the degree** to which language is a part of or constitutive of what is going on.

(Martin, 1992a: 516 – my emphasis)

Only Martin (1992a: 520-524) takes this step, however. But it would be possible to elaborate Matthiessen’s (1995: 52) systematisation of Hasan’s (1985b: 57-59) primary ‘mode’ considerations along exactly these grounds. Consider Fig. 4.1.2.1.ii above and the remarks accompanying it.

Both scholars also concur that one broad and fairly evident realisational consequence of the present contextual consideration is the degree to which the meanings in the communicative event are created in the modality of language as opposed other semiotic systems. That is, texts with a ‘constitutive’ mode will have all or the majority of their meanings made in the language semiotic, whereas texts with an ‘ancillary’ mode will have the great majority of their meanings made in semiotic systems other than language.

where several semiotic codes⁸ act convergently, the role of language is ancillary [... where the] role is constitutive [...] the language [...] is not responsive to factors of the material situational setting within which the creation or the recounting [...] of the text] takes place (Hasan, 1980: 108)

⁸ Hasan’s (1980: 108) use of ‘code’ here and the present author’s use of ‘system’ are entirely equivalent in the present discussion of communicative modalities.

how much of the social action is constructed by language[?] [...] is most of the social action [...] realised non-verbally [...] or] is most of the social action [...] realised linguistically[?]

(Martin, 1992a: 517-518)

Being able to determine which semiotic systems the majority of a communicative event's meanings are made in presupposes a systemic functional model of 'communication' or 'semiotics', rather than a theory of language only. The theoretical foundations for such an extension have been laid (e.g. Gregory, 2002), as illustrated Fig. 4.1.2.3.ii below. But the amount of text analytical work required to actually flesh out this theoretical model into a description of the broader phenomenon of 'communication' or 'semiotics' is enormous and this venture is presently in a nascent stage (e.g. Kress & van Leuween, 1996; Martinec, 1998; 2000; 2001; 2004; etc.).

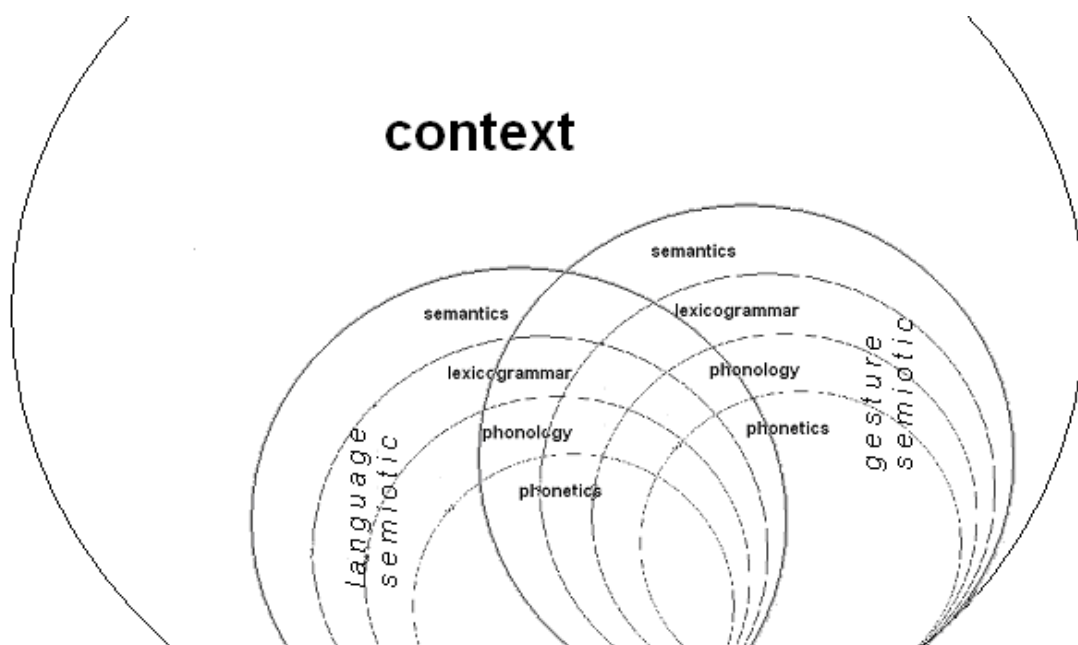


Figure 4.1.2.3.ii: A snapshot of multiple semiotic systems and their shared semiotic context

The second overlap between Hasan's (1985b: 57-59) and Martin's (1992a: 508-525) 'mode' accounts is that Hasan's (1985b: 58-59) 'process sharing' is largely equivalent to Martin's 'interpersonally-oriented mode' (1992a: 510-516). Where the last

correspondence between Hasan's (1985b) and Martin's (1992a) 'mode' accounts concerned the relationship pertaining between the language and social action of the text, the present correspondence concerns the relationship between addresser(s) and addressee(s) in the text. More specifically, the relationship between addresser(s) and addressee(s) that is of interest here is of a spatio-physical sort. What are at stake are both quantitative and qualitative matters of the contact between addresser(s) and addressee(s): is contact between them possible in the construction of the text; if so, how much and of what sort?

Is the addressee able to share the process of text creation as it unfolds, or does the addressee come to the text when it is a finished product?

(Hasan, 1985b: 58)

what is critical is [...] the kind of interaction that is possible between speaker and listener. This is conditioned by the kind of feedback that is possible, depending on whether or not the speaker and listener can see each other and at the same time whether or not they can hear each other.

(Martin, 1992a: 510)

Admittedly, Hasan (1985b) and Martin (1992a) talk about the matter at hand in slightly different terms: Hasan (1985b: 58) as differential conceptions of text ('product' vs. 'process') and Martin (1992a: 510) as feedback potentiality. But their respective conceptions of 'process sharing' and 'interpersonally-oriented mode' are still largely equivalent. Both scholars see the matter in hand as a concern with the level and kind of negotiation that it is possible for interlocutors to have in the communication event (Hasan, 1980: 117; Martin, 1992a: 509-510). Generalising significantly, the matter under discussion is the embodiment of a distinction between monologue and dialogue.

Both scholars also privilege an addressee-oriented perspective on the matter, seeing it as an issue of the degree to which the addressee is privy to – and so able to influence – the addresser's text production in real-time. This can be seen in the quotes just given, and it is elaborated in the following quote from Hasan:

even on [...] occasions when the addressee appears least active, he or she can influence the production of the text by providing feedback through extra-verbal modalities, such as eye-contact, facial expression, a yawn, or body posture. [...] the physical presence of the addressee impinges on the textual processes in a way that the writer's own awareness of the needs of the addressee can hardly ever do.

(Hasan, 1985b: 58)

Despite identifying this second correspondence between Hasan's (1985b) and Martin's (1992a) 'mode' accounts, Matthiessen's (1995: 52) systematised interpretation of the former shows he does not believe 'process sharing' to be a primary consideration of her account (see Fig. 4.1.2.1.ii above). Instead Matthiessen (*ibid*) appears to judge Hasan's (1985b: 58-59) 'channel' to be the consideration ultimately relevant to matters currently under discussion.

As just discussed, 'process sharing' concerns the addressee's involvement in the creation of the text. And re-call that 'channel' is a matter of the substance used to encode linguistic meanings: a discrete choice between phonology and phonetics or graphology. Hasan (1985b: 58) herself notes the interdependence between the two considerations: phonic channels create favourable environments for active process sharing (i.e. most dialogic) and graphic channels likewise for passive process sharing (i.e. most monologic). As Martin (1992a: 514-516) argues, the contextual consideration **most** semiotically important here is not the channel itself, but rather the nature of the communication that channel only in part makes possible. While this latter matter is likely to in part be influenced by the channel of the text, it won't be entirely so such that it is dependent on or subsumed within it (*ibid*). Thus, matters of 'process sharing' – not matters of 'channel' – are likely to be the ones most heavily involved in the activation of relevant linguistic meanings. And while Hasan may disagree with Martin that 'the nature of the communication that is made possible' is to be defined in terms of aural and visual contact between addresser and addressee, there is nothing in Hasan's writings (e.g., Hasan, 1985b; 1995; 1996; 1999; 2009) to contradict Martin (1992a: 514-516) on this more general point.

Returning to Matthiessen (1995: 52), his reading of Hasan's (1985b: 57-59) primary 'mode' considerations is an argument that either: (i) matters of 'process-sharing' can be derived from matters of 'channel' with the latter therefore the more primary system; or (ii) 'process-sharing' distinctions are a generalisation across 'channel' distinctions with the latter therefore the more descriptively powerful system. Given the prior discussion, the present author believes Matthiessen's (1995: 52) interpretation to be a misreading of Hasan (1985b: 57-59). The reading of Hasan (1985b: 57-59) that is preferred here is, in a sense, a reverse of Matthiessen's (1995: 52). That is, Hasan's (1985b: 58-59) 'channel' be seen as a generalisation across her 'process-sharing'. The latter is therefore a more descriptively powerful system of which the former is a generalisation with less descriptive adequacy. That is, options within 'process sharing' are the ones that most influence the activation of relevant linguistic meanings.

If the logic of interpreting Hasan (1985b) as set out above stands, Matthiessen's (1995: 52) systemic interpretation of Hasan (1985b) – given in section 4.1.2.1 above as Fig. 4.1.2.1.ii – can be re-interpreted⁹ as Fig 4.1.2.3.iii.

⁹ Note that this systemic presentation includes other adjustments made to Matthiessen's (1995: 52) original presentation of Hasan (1985b: 57-59), as explained in section 4.1.2.1 and as has been adopted since then (e.g. as in Fig. 4.1.2.3.i above).

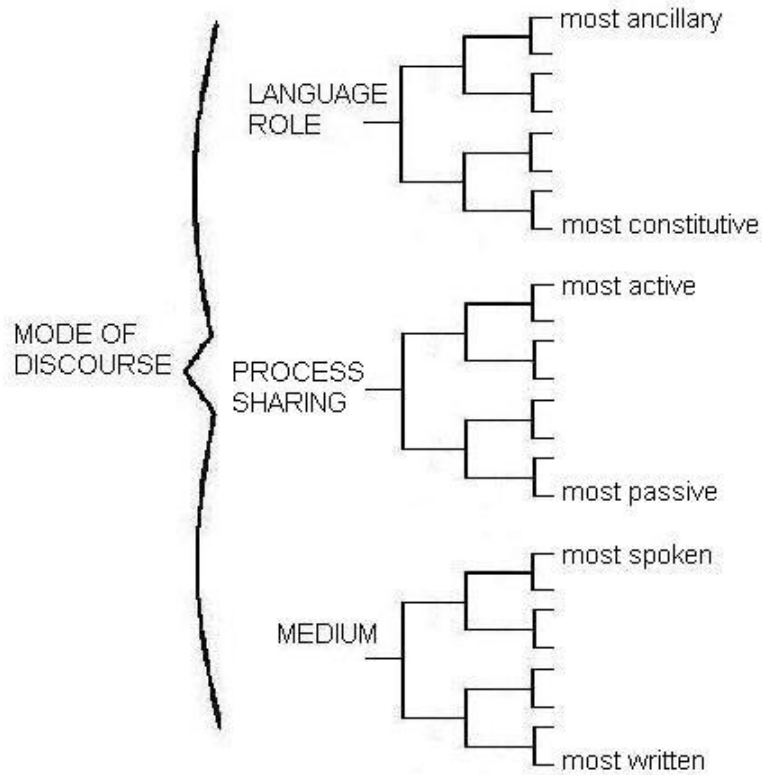


Figure 4.1.2.3.iii: A re-interpretation of Matthiessen systematisation of Hasan's primary MODE OF DISCOURSE systems

Subsequently, the identified correspondence between Hasan's (1985b: 57) 'process sharing' and Martin's (1992a: 510-516) 'interpersonally-oriented mode' is fairly evident and can be represented diagrammatically (Fig.4.1.2.3.iv).

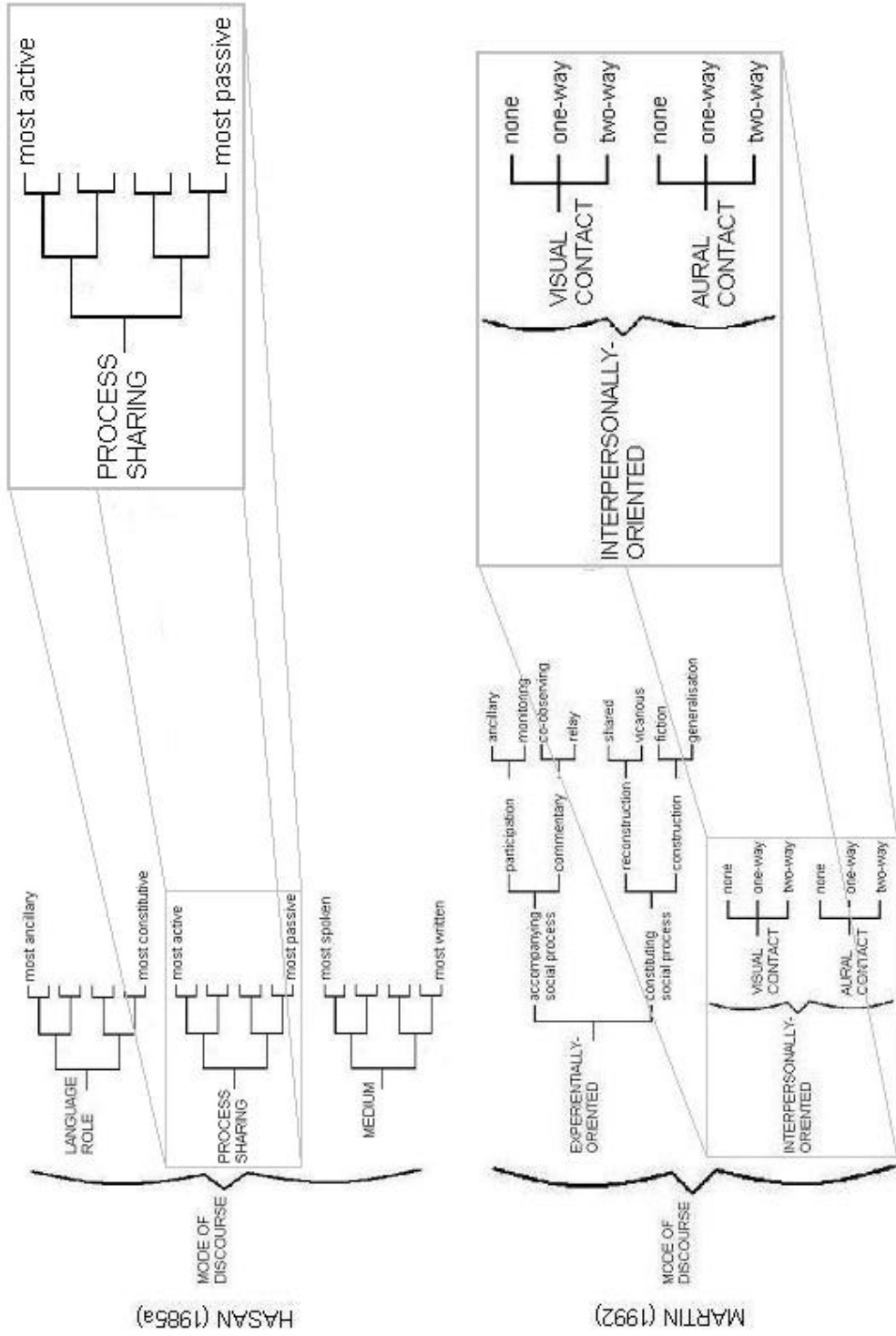


Figure 4.1.2.3.iv Comparing Hasan's PROCESS SHARING and Martin's INTERPERSONALLY-ORIENTED MODE primary 'mode' systems

As with 'language role'-'experientially-oriented mode', so too both scholars stress that those matters presently under discussion need be interpreted as a continuum. And so the same consequences for their systemic description apply as they did for 'language role'-'experientially-oriented mode' as discussed above. That is, a network of plentiful options extending into some reasonable degree of delicacy is required, rather than a simple binary system opposing the 'dialogue' and 'monologue' poles which would be descriptively weak.

Here again, there are **degrees** of process sharing from the most active – as in dialogue – to the most passive – as in a formal lecture.

(Hasan, 1985b: 58 – my emphasis)

it is possible to set up **a scale ranging** from face-to-face dialogue to stream of consciousness writing or thinking aloud at the other. At one end, speaker and listener are as close to each other as possible; at the other, the question of audience disappears completely.

(Martin, 2010: 22 – my emphasis)

In examining their respective accounts of the primary systems within 'mode of discourse', Hasan's (1985b) 'language role' and 'process-sharing' have now been shown to correlate with Martin's (1992a) 'experientially-oriented mode' and 'interpersonally-oriented mode' and vice-versa. But what considerations remain in either of the two 'mode' accounts that haven't been equated with matters in the other?

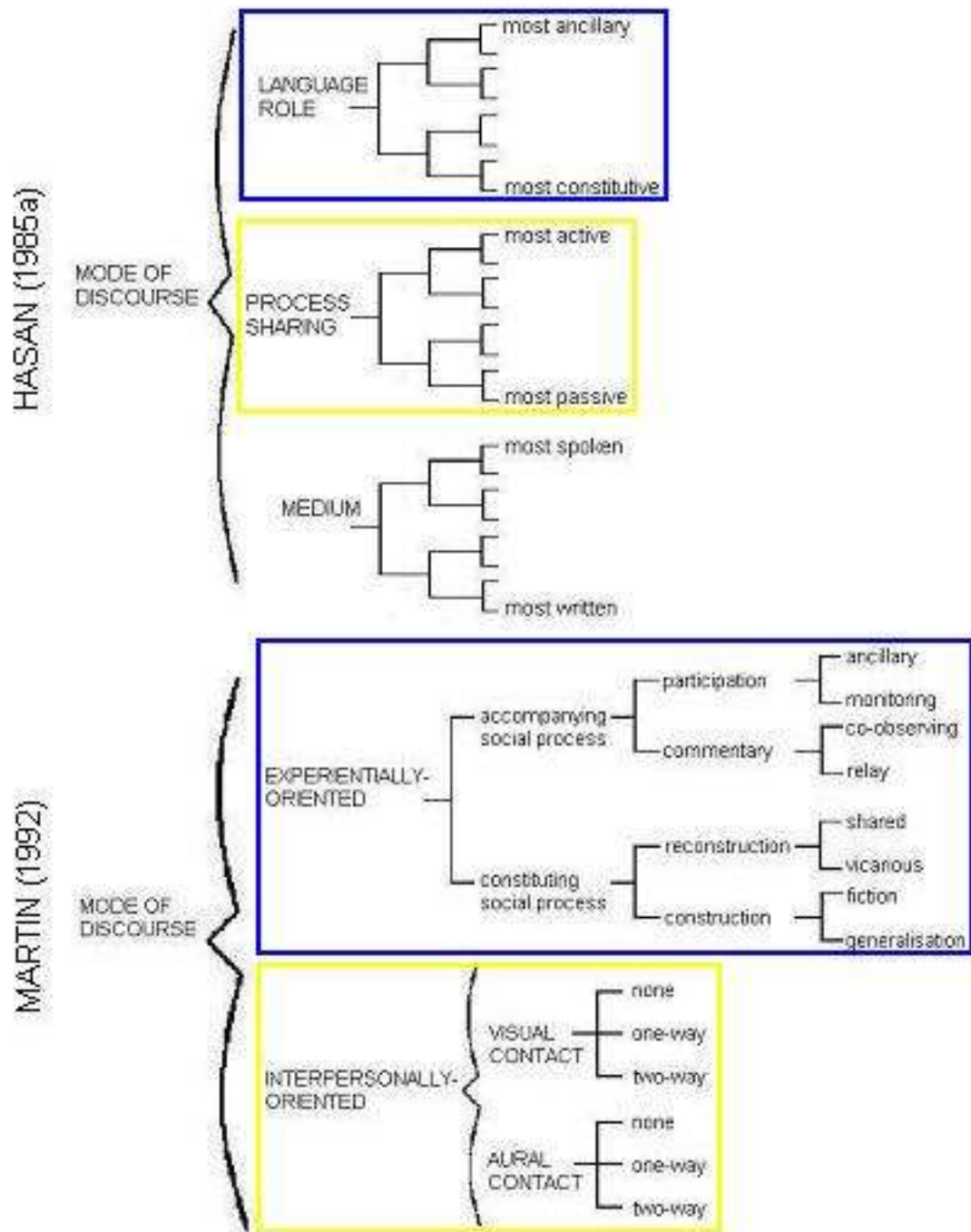


Figure 4.1.2.3.v: Comparing Hasan's and Martin's primary systems at the 'mode of discourse' contextual parameter

As diagrammatically represented in Fig 4.1.2.3.v, the answer is what Hasan (1985b) labels 'medium'. It is difficult to see this as a contextual consideration at all. As presented above, 'medium' is a matter of the linguistic styles associated with the written and spoken channels. Hasan (ibid: 58) herself remarks that "medium refers to the patterning [of] the wordings themselves". As such, rather than embodying contextual phenomena, 'medium' should be considered the linguistic consequence of selections in the genuine contextual system of CHANNEL. Indeed, Hasan (ibid: 58-59) acknowledges the interdependence of the MEDIUM and CHANNEL systems. But she apparently fails to recognise that the nature of their interdependence is that the former is the linguistic consequence of the latter, not that both are related contextual considerations. At best, the aforementioned is an unfair criticism of Hasan (1985b) and it is actually the case that in including 'medium' within the discussion of other contextual factors at the parameter of 'mode' she does not clearly explain the relationship she intends to suggest holds between 'medium' and 'channel'¹⁰. That some consideration equivalent to Hasan's (1985b) 'medium' isn't found in Martin's (1992a) primary 'mode' considerations suggests Martin concurs with the conclusion drawn here. That is, that 'medium' matters are the linguistic consequence of some system such as 'channel'¹¹. Similarly, Bowcher (1999; 2001) omits 'medium' as a relevant consideration in interpreting Hasan's (1985b) 'mode' model. Although Bowcher (1999; 2001) doesn't give reason for doing so, this omission suggests her agreement that matters of 'medium' are not a contextual concern.

Interpreting Hasan's (1985b) inclusion of 'medium' within her primary 'mode' considerations as either an error or a mis-presentation, the aforementioned apparent difference between Hasan's (1985b) and Martin's (1992a) respective 'mode' accounts is no longer a difference at all. This is indicated in Fig.4.1.2.3.vi below which thus is simultaneously a revision of Fig. 4.1.2.3.v and also a summary of this section comparing Hasan's (1985b) and Martin's (1992a) respective 'mode' accounts:

¹⁰ The current author's criticism of Hasan's theorising of 'medium' as a contextual matter is based on the relevant discussion in Hasan (1985b: 57-59). Unfortunately, Hasan hasn't since in her work elaborated on the matter of 'medium'.

¹¹ With the proviso that a system of 'channel' is a generalisation of a more descriptively powerful system along the lines of Hasan's (1985b) 'process sharing' or Martin's (1992a) 'interpersonally-oriented mode' as just argued for above.

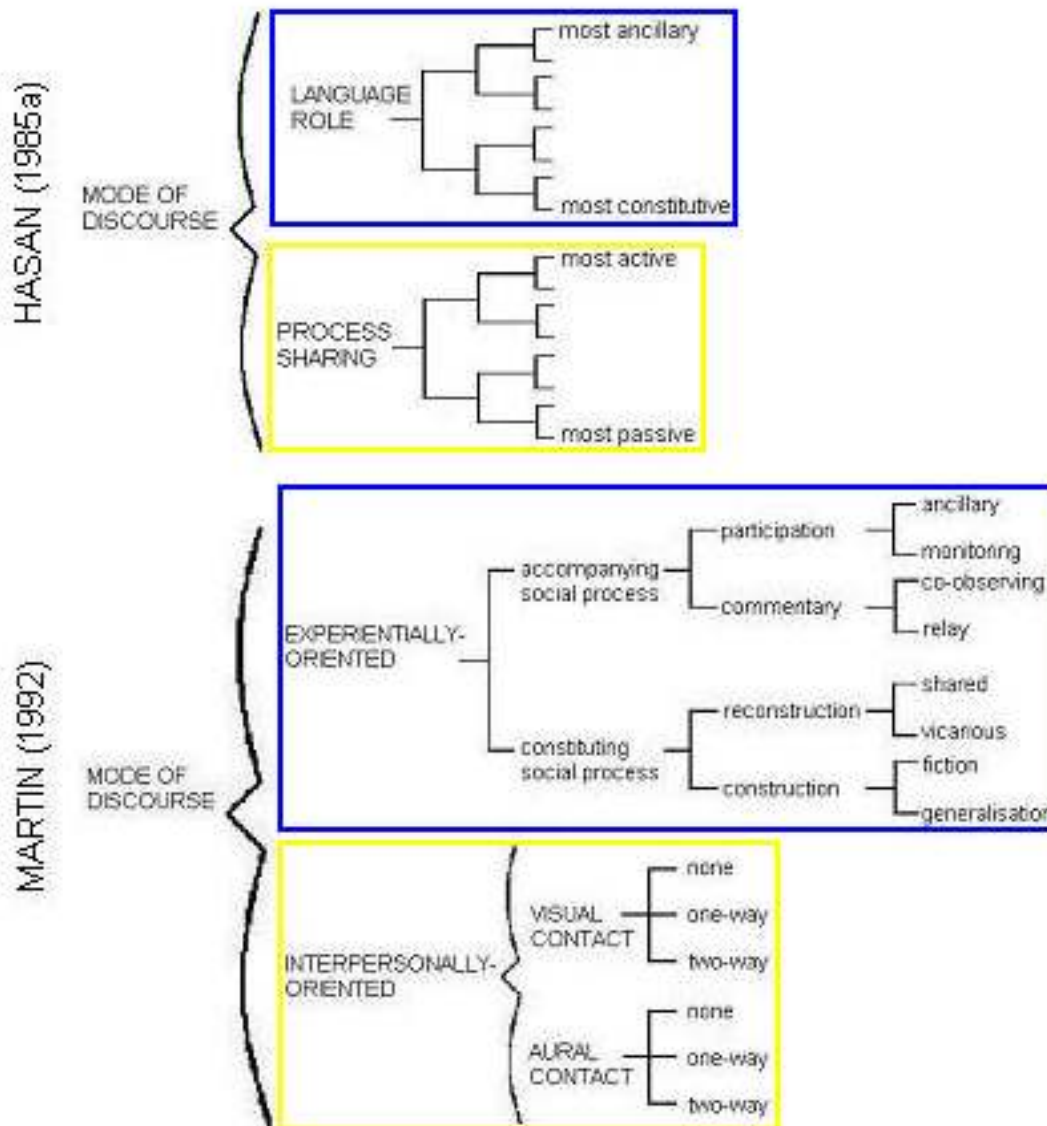


Figure 4.1.2.3.vi: Comparing Hasan’s and Martin’s primary ‘mode’ systems having omitted Hasan’s MEDIUM system

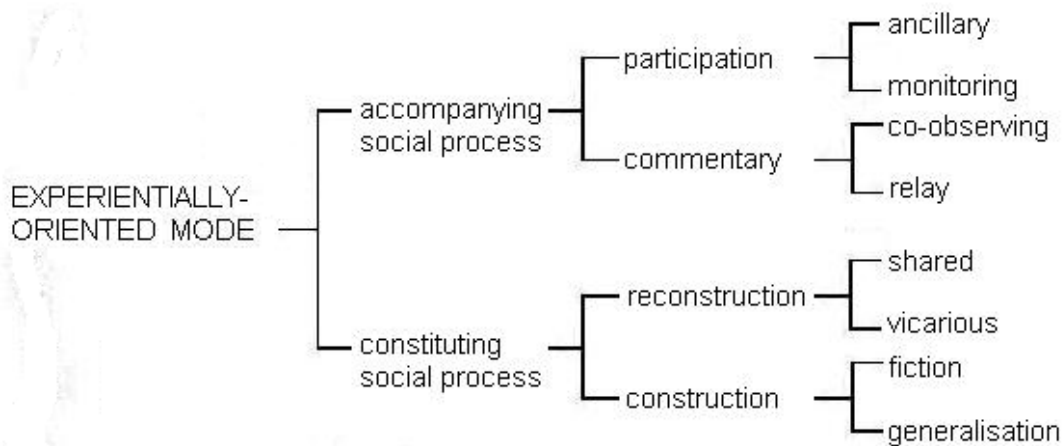
4.1.3. The EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE primary ‘mode’ system

As established across the course of the last section, the work of both Hasan (1985b) and Martin (1992a) suggests that two relationships are the relevant primary considerations at

the 'mode' parameter of context. These are the relationship pertaining between the language and social action of the text and the spatio-physical relationship between the addresser and addressee in the communicative event. Given the predictions of the 'context-metafunciton hook-up' hypothesis (see section 2.2.3), these then would appear to be the primary contextual considerations in the activation of textual metafunctional phenomena.

In order to submit such intuitions to the rigorous testing of the kind proposed in this project, the former relationship seems particularly relevant in the case of ellipsis. If ellipsis is a linguistic omission defined by its having omitted elements recoverable from some context (Quirk et al., 1985; Leech, 1992; Crystal, 1988 – see also chapter 3) and if the relationship between language and social action can be glossed as a text's 'contextual dependency', "the extent to which [...it] accompanies or constitutes its field" (Martin, 1992a: 509), then ellipsis is one linguistic matter likely to be 'at risk' in moving across the 'ancillary-constitutive' continuum embodied by this relationship. Also likely to be particularly relevant in this way is the distinction between 'textually-' and 'situationally-recoverable' types of ellipsis (see section 3.2.1.4). Re-call that the latter are admitted to the current project given its definition of ellipsis (see section 3.2.3).

The main purpose of the present sub-section is to explore this relationship between the language and social action of a text in greater detail so that variation across this spectrum will be sufficiently described for it to constitute the independent variable of the analytical project and so in large part inform the dataset design. Fig. 4.1.3.i below is a replication of the part of Fig. 4.1.2.3.vi relevant to the present discussion – Martin's (1992a: 520) EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE network:



**Figure 4.1.3.i Martin's EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE primary
MODE OF DISCOURSE system**

As explained above, this network is Martin's (1992a) attempt to systematise the options relative to the relationship between the language and social action of the text. Where the discussion of this network in the last section was very brief and general, the discussion of it in this section is much more detailed. Specifically, it is this section's remit to discuss each of the systemic contrasts of Martin's (1992a: 520) network in turn, moving in delicacy from least to most delicate.

Let us begin with the most general systemic contrast then: the distinction between 'constituting social process' and 'accompanying social process'. It is replicated here as Fig. 4.1.3.ii:

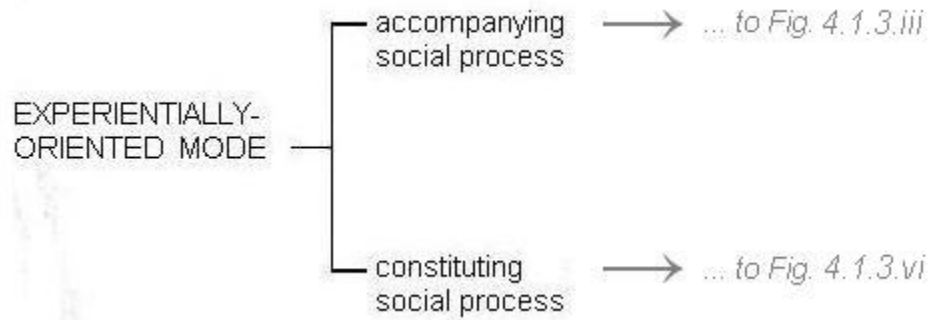


Figure 4.1.3.ii: Martin’s systemic distinction between ‘accompanying social process’ and ‘constituting social process’ experientially-oriented modes

The difference between the two features is that language in modes of the former type is the entirety of the social process whereas language in modes of the latter is only a part of the social process. The former are self-contextualising in a way the latter by their very definition are not. By means of illustration, a discussion of a game of football is an example of a text with an experientially-oriented mode that constitutes the social process. This discussion is the totality of the social action and is consequently played out entirely in the semiotic of language; other semiotics are not required for its enactment. In contrast, the football game itself is an example of a text with an experientially-oriented mode that only accompanies the social process. That is, meanings in the social action of the text are made in several semiotic systems, of which language is only one.

Moving on a step in delicacy, within ‘accompanying social process’ modes the subsequent systemic contrast is between ‘participation’ and ‘commentary’. The basis of this distinction is the answer to the question: who produces the language of the text under study? Remembering that for texts with an experientially-oriented mode ‘accompanying the social process’ the conception of ‘social process’ is now broader than simply a verbal exchange and the question is now who produce the text? Those participating in the enactment of the social process of the text, or some observers overlooking those enacting the social process? See Fig. 4.1.3.iii below for this distinction:

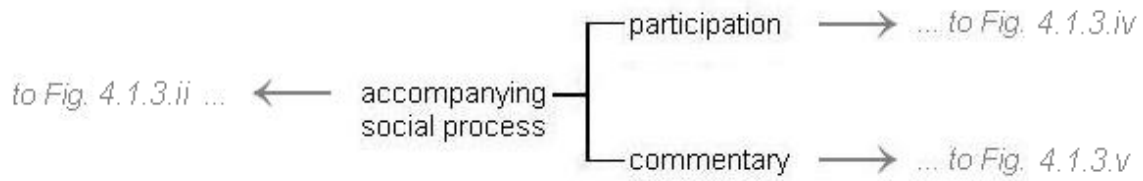


Figure 4.1.3.iii: Martin’s systemic distinction between ‘participation’ and ‘commentary’ accompanying social process modes

Moving on yet a further step in delicacy, within ‘participation’ accompanying social process modes the subsequent systemic distinction is between ‘ancillary’ and ‘monitoring’ (Fig 4.1.3.iv).



Figure 4.1.3.iv: Martin’s systemic distinction between ‘ancillary’ and ‘monitoring’ participation modes

In the former instance language is only used to punctuate the social process which is almost entirely played out in modalities other than language. Such use of language does little except facilitate the enactment of other modalities. An example would be an umpire’s scoring and line-calling during a match of tennis. In contrast, ‘monitoring’ types of ‘participation’ mode provide some running commentary to one’s enactment of the social process which is otherwise realised entirely by modalities other than language. An example is a chef’s explanation of the procedures he or she is carrying out while conducting said cooking.

Staying at the same degree of delicacy but this time within the feature ‘commentary’, the systemic contrast is one between ‘co-observing’ and ‘relay’. This distinguishes texts

where both addresser and addressee are observers of the social process from texts where only the addresser has that privilege. This distinction is neatly illustrated in the difference between television ('co-observing') and radio ('relay') commentaries of, for example, some sporting event.



Figure 4.1.3.v: Martin's systemic distinction between 'co-observing' and 'relay' commentary modes

Returning to the second degree of delicacy in Martin's (1992a: 520) overall EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE network but this time within the 'constituting social process' as opposed to 'accompanying social process' mode type, there is a distinction between 'reconstruction' and 'construction'. Remembering that for texts with an experientially-oriented mode 'constituting the social process' the conception of 'social process' is equivalent to 'the verbal exchange', 'reconstruction' modes are the re-interpreting and repackaging of a social process that has existed previously and independently of the text currently under study. In a sense, then, 'reconstruction' modes represent new social processes. In contrast are 'construction' modes where the social process of the text under study has genuinely never existed in any previous text (Fig. 4.1.3.vi).

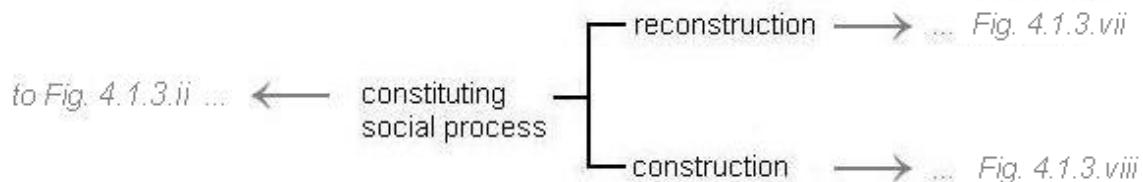


Figure 4.1.3.vi: Martin's systemic distinction between 'reconstruction' and 'construction' constituting social process modes

Again moving on a further step in delicacy, within 'reconstruction' first, the subsequent systemic contrast is between 'shared' and 'vicarious' (Fig 4.1.3.vii).

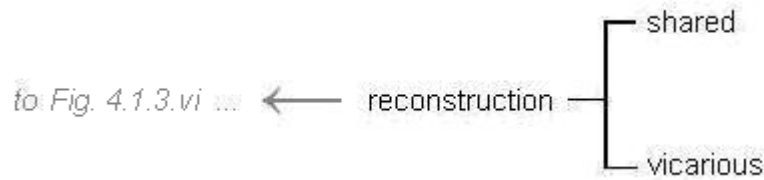


Figure 4.1.3.vii: Martin's systemic distinction between 'shared' and 'vicarious' reconstruction modes

As the labels suggest, the former applies to texts where the addresser and addressee were both privy to the 'original' occurrence of the social process that is being repackaged in the text under study. In contrast, 'vicarious' modes account for texts where either the addresser or the addressee were not party to the 'original' occasion of the social process.

The final systemic distinction of Martin's (1992a: 520) EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE network is at the same degree of delicacy as the last but distinguishes sub-types of 'construction'. The basis for the distinction is as follows. 'Fiction' texts construct their linguistically-defined social process in particularised terms. Texts with 'generalisation' modes, on the other hand, "construct social processes as potentials underlying and cutting across particular manifestations" (Martin, 1992a: 512). That is, whereas texts with 'fiction' modes are concerned with one particular story, texts with 'generalised' modes are concerned with the narrative gained from combining a large number of such particularised stories. Whereas a Mills and Boon romance novel is an example of a text with a 'fiction' mode, a book about romance novels is an example of a text with a 'generalisation' mode. Fig. 4.1.3.viii documents this last systemic distinction:

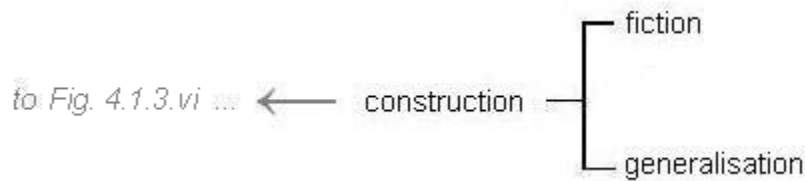


Figure 4.1.3.viii: Martin’s systemic distinction between ‘fiction’ and ‘generalisation’ construction modes

The above discussion of the systemic contrasts embodied in Martin’s (1992a: 516-525) EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE network has been given largely in notional terms: that is, on the theory-external criterion of apparent self-evidence. But it is vitally important to stress that, theoretically at least, Martin’s (ibid) systemic distinctions are based on the necessary evidence. That is, they are more than just self-evident observations. They are distinctions drawn on the basis of their realisational consequence into language systems: semantic ones in the first instance and lexicogrammatical ones in the second. Such demands are precisely those systemic functional linguists have always argued are required for descriptive adequacy (Halliday, 1996). The use of ‘theoretically at least’ reflects reservation in forcefully asserting the above point in the case of Martin’s (1992a) context networks. Most importantly, Martin offers very little discussion in any of his writings of the realisational support for the contextual systemic distinctions he (ibid: 520) draws, though he does stress such support exists (ibid: 514). Here is not the relevant place to continue this discussion. But these issues will be returned to and discussed in more detail in chapter 6.

The last point concludes the more detailed discussion of Martin’s (1992a: 520) EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE network. Yet it is necessary to make two further sets of comments before closing this section and moving on to section 4.2’s more explicit discussion of dataset design. The first such set of comments explain why Martin’s EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE network, not Hasan’s LANGUAGE ROLE network, was used as the basis for this sub-section’s discussion of the relationship between the language and the social action of the text. The second set of comments answer why it is the relationship between the language and social action of the text that has formed the

basis of this project's independent variable, not the relationship between the spatio-physical relationship between the addresser and addressee in the communicative event.

Martin's (1992a) 'experientially-oriented mode' rather than Hasan's (1985b) 'language role' has been taken as the basis for this sub-section's more detailed discussion of the relationship between the language and social action of the text. To take Martin's (1992a) 'experientially-oriented mode' as the baseline wasn't to suggest it accounts for the relationship more accurately than does Hasan's (1985b) 'language role'. The previous section showed that there is little to no qualitative difference between these and that they overlap very significantly. But there are two different reasons why Martin's (1992a) 'experientially-oriented mode' was adopted as the basis of this sub-section's elaboration of relevant contextual matters. Firstly, though there is no qualitative difference between Hasan's (1985b) 'language role' and Martin's (1992a) 'experientially-oriented mode', there is a very evident quantitative one. This was referred to in the last section where it was noted that Hasan (1985b) and Martin (1992a) agree that the present contextual consideration is not sufficiently accounted for as a discrete distinction between 'ancillary' and 'constitutive'. Rather, the relationship between the language and social action of the text comprises a continuum with 'ancillary' and 'constitutive' as opposed end points. The consequence of this for the systemic description of this continuum is the requirement of a network of plentiful options extending into a reasonable degree of delicacy. Only Martin's (1992a) 'experientially-oriented mode' provides a systemic description of this kind; one with systemic contrasts in between the 'ancillary' and 'constitutive' end points and therefore one accounting for this vast intermediate range. This is not so say that Martin's (1992a) EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE network is in any way final or fully worked out. Indeed, Martin (ibid: 508) himself concedes it as a tentative systemic approximation of the relevant contextual matters. But neither are his network and the systemic contrasts it contains without basis (ibid: 514). And given that the amount of work required to substantiate systemic contrasts and so formalise system networks is immense (Hasan, 2009: 182; Martin, 1992a: 508), it seems right to adopt Martin's (1992a) EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE as the basis for this more detailed discussion of the relationship between the language and social action of the text. The alternative is to flesh out Hasan's (1985b) LANGUAGE ROLE system by determining the relevant intermediate contrasts between the 'ancillary' and 'constitutive' poles she identifies. But to do so would be to carry out a project of at least the same size as the present one.

Therefore, adopting Martin's (1992a) tentative EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE network doesn't only save the current project enormous amounts of preliminary work, it makes it possible in the first place.

There is a second reason for choosing to adopt Martin's (1985b) EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE. Since Hasan (1985b) and its systematisation by Matthiessen (1995: 52), Hasan (1999; 2009) has proposed that matters of 'language role' be incorporated into the 'field of discourse' parameter of context. Although this revision and the discussions surrounding it are made at the 'field' parameter, it is almost certainly also a revision at the 'mode' parameter. That is, it can only be assumed that 'language role' is no longer a consideration at the 'mode' parameter for Hasan. Unfortunately neither an explicit statement with respect this presumed abolition of 'language role' from the 'mode' parameter nor a motivation for its inclusion at the 'field' parameter is offered by Hasan in her relevant writings (i.e. Hasan, 1999; 2009). Given the recency of these proposals, it must be assumed that the view that 'language role' is relevant to the 'field' and not 'mode' parameter remains Hasan's current position on the issue. What is certain is that Hasan did once believe these issues to be a matter of 'mode' (for example, Hasan, 1985b: 57-59). Martin clearly still does (for example, Martin, 2010). In the absence of a convincing argument against considering 'language role' a matter of 'mode', this project takes the view that the relationship between the language and social action of a text is still likely to be a consideration relevant at the 'mode' parameter. Because the same view has remained consistent in Martin's (1984; 1992a; 2010) writings, this is a further reason for adopting his EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE system as the basis of this subsection more detailed discussion of relevant matters.

This section's promotion of a focus on the relationship between the language and the social action of the text is no reason to suggest that the spatio-physical relationship between the addresser and addressee are contextual concerns irrelevant to the activation of textual metafunctional phenomena like ellipsis. On the contrary, systemic functional linguists have often argued the likely relevance of this relationship in the activation of ellipsis. And they have done so far more frequently than they have remarked on the likely relevance of the relationship between the language and the social action of the text (Poynton, 1985: 79-81; Martin, 1992a: 390; 516; Halliday & Matthiessen, 2004: 565-567). That discussions of the contextual significance of ellipsis

have hitherto mostly been concerned with the spatio-physical relationship between addresser and addressee is only a further reason to focus on the relationship between the language and social action of the text here.

4.2 The data and dataset design: Corpora of contextually-varied texts

The discussion of context in the last section evolved through a continual narrowing of that subject matter. In the first instance context was narrowed from a semiotic construct per se to the ‘mode of discourse’ parameter (section 4.1.2), which was then narrowed further to the ‘experientially-oriented mode’ (section 4.1.3). This narrowing was intended to establish a spectrum of contextual variation which would serve as this project’s independent of ‘test’ variable. In the first half of the current section the two remaining features of context, field and tenor, will be discussed as those aspects of context which are kept constant, the control variables. This is necessary to give confidence that it really is only variation in mode which is being tested by the accumulation of different corpora of datasets. The second half of this section then introduces the data which constitute the four contextually varied corpora. There, the contextual values each dataset is intended to represent are re-iterated and an argument offered in support of each corpus in these terms. With this ground covered, the next and final section of the present chapter – section 4.3 – introduces the annotation software used to analyse the data. The logic of the annotation software is explained there and as the final part of that section, the specific annotation scheme developed for the purposes of the present analytical project is introduced and explained at length.

4.2.1 Controlled contextual variables

As with ‘mode’, so too at the ‘field of discourse’ and ‘tenor of discourse’ parameters, the current status of descriptions at the contextual stratum in systemic functional linguistics can be criticised for its being little more than common-sense (Hasan, 2009). That is, descriptions and explanations of these parameters in the systemic functional literature are largely impressionistic, non-rigorous and ultimately unsystemic (ibid), as this is defined in the theory’s own terms (e.g. Halliday, 1996). This criticism will be given fuller consideration in chapter 6.

For the present, this shortcoming makes it difficult to offer a detailed description of the 'field of discourse' and 'tenor of discourse' parameters of context, just as the same was true for the 'mode' parameter in section 4.1. A few exceptional sources of research have started to push systemic functional descriptions at the contextual stratum, however, and the work of both Hasan (1985b; 1995; 1999; 2009) and of Martin (1992a; 2010) figures prominently here, and these are supplemented by the work of Poynton (1984; 1985; 1990), and Benson & Greaves (1981; 1992). Where there is contradiction in this literature on the matter of 'field of discourse' and 'tenor of discourse', the present work will follow Martin (1992a). The relevant parts of Martin's (1992a) account of context largely informed section 4.1's discussion of 'mode' and particularly the more specific matter of the relationship between the language and social action of the text (sub-section 4.1.3). For reasons of consistency, therefore, Martin (1992a) will be the ultimate authority with respect to 'field of discourse' and 'tenor of discourse' too.

4.2.1.1. The 'field of discourse' parameter of context: Primary considerations and primary systems

The contextual parameter 'field of discourse' (henceforth 'field') was introduced in sub-section 2.2.2 adopting Halliday's (1985: 12) definition:

[W]hat is happening [...] the nature of the social action that is taking place: what is it that the participants are engaged in, in which the language figures as some essential component?

(ibid)

Martin (1992a: 536) characterises 'field' as "the semiotic interpretation of what counts as an answer to the question [...] *What do you do* [...] as put to strangers". Martin's (ibid: 536-546) theorisation of 'mode' is based on Barthes's (1977) work on 'sequence' and Brown & Yule's (1983) discussion of 'frames', 'scripts' and 'schemas'. Taking on board the work of his peers, Martin (1992a) uses the notion of what he terms the 'activity sequence' – the order and relation between acts of some sort – as a starting point to make sense of what is meant by 'field'. There is not the space here to cover theoretical precursors necessary to give a full explanation of Martin's (ibid) 'activity sequence'. It suffices to say that by invoking the concept of the 'activity sequence' Martin (ibid) intends

roughly the same thing Halliday (1977: 208) does when he writes that ‘field’, as social action, is “typically a complex of acts in some ordered configuration, and in which the text is playing some part”. It is important to stress that Martin’s (1992a) ‘activity sequence’ is invoked to make sense of ‘field’, not vice-versa. Given that it is ‘field’, not ‘activity sequence’, which is under consideration here, the omission of a full explanation of ‘activity sequence’ is not significant.

Martin (ibid: 544) provides a tentative network of options for ‘field’. This is given as Fig. 4.2.1.1.i below.

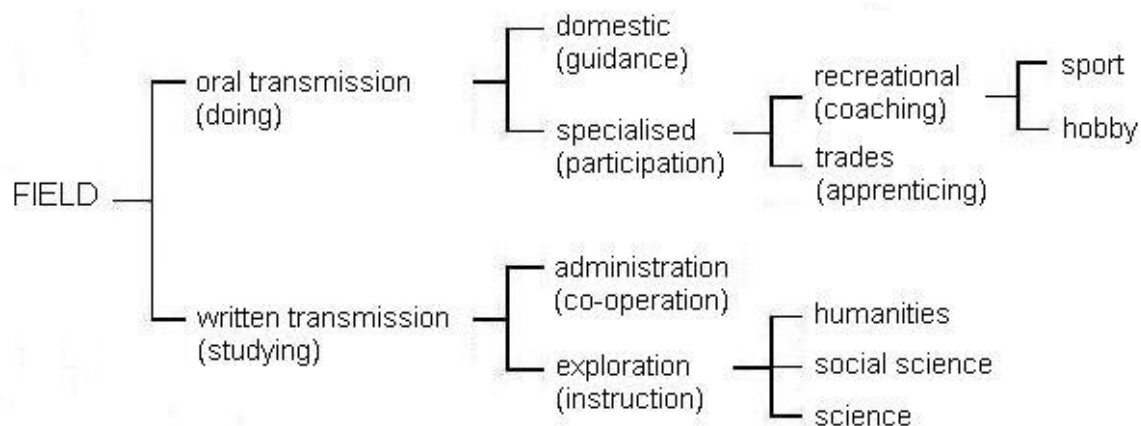


Figure 4.2.1.1.i: Primary FIELD OF DISCOURSE systems according to Martin¹²

The fundamental distinction is that between those fields that depend on and are disseminated by oral traditions (e.g. domestic pursuits) and those dependent on and transmitted by literate means (e.g. education). As this fundamental distinction implies the notion of institutionalisation and, therein, particularly of education is fore-grounded in the systemic functional conception of ‘field’. At a more delicate level, orally transmitted field can be distinguished into ‘domestic’ and ‘specialised’ and the latter into ‘recreational’ and ‘trades’. The basis for such distinctions is reflected in the fields’ linguistics realisation (see below this section). Literate transmitted fields, which dependent require institutionalised learning (Martin, 1992a: 543), can be more delicately classified into ‘administration’ and ‘exploration’. Martin (ibid) claims this distinction to in part be based

¹² Note that bracketed material on terms function as glosses. They have no theoretical status in the systemic description.

on different educational systems: the mass education, the product of 19th century industry and administration, ('administration') and 20th century science and technology ('exploration').

Martin (1992a) summarises that the systemic distinctions here relate to differing degrees of specialisation. Put another way, the network given in Fig. 4.2.1.1.I embodies a continuum of 'common sense', at one extreme, to 'technical', at the other. That is, while the most 'common' or 'lay' fields (e.g. sports) are engaged in by most if not all members of a culture, the most 'technical' are only engaged in by a small minority (e.g. tertiary education). Bernstein's (1971, 1973, 1975) work on 'codes' is evidently relevant here. To return briefly to the 'activity sequence', fields of common sense tend not to have their activity sequences recorded in writing, whereas technical fields rely on such recording.

It is pertinent here to offer a brief remark or two in respect of Martin's (1992a) terminology so as to avoid potential confusion. Martin's (ibid: 536-546) choice of terms 'written-transmitted' and 'oral-transmitted' are not intended to imply a distinction comparable to 'spoken'-'written' or 'phonic'-'graphic', as it may at first appear. For Martin (ibid), these latter two pairs of distinctions are considerations at the mode parameter of context. In talking about the 'field' parameter of semiotic context in terms of written-transmission and oral-transmission, Martin (ibid) intends to capture a primary semiotic distinction between social actions. The distinction in question is that some social actions are institutionalised by nature and have to be codified in writing if they are social actions which can be 'languaged'; that is, have their meanings instantiated wholly or partially in the language modality. Other social actions, however, do not **need** to be codified in writing to be 'languaged'. In sum, 'transmitted in X' is simply Martin's way of talking about the contextual 'field' parameter as 'institutionalisation' or 'technicality'.

Realisationally, field puts 'at risk' several linguistic phenomena. Martin's (1992a) account is not as specific as to state the characteristic realisational differences of specific systemic contrasts but does stress the following as realisational consequences of field. Firstly, the nature of the vocabulary; is it 'core' or 'specialised'? Secondly, the use of congruent grammar (Halliday & Matthiessen, 1999) typifies oral transmission fields, whereas a much greater use of grammatical metaphor (ibid) is made in literate transmission fields (e.g. Halliday & Martin, 1993). Additionally, Benson and Greaves

(1981; 1992) have shown that collocational aspects of lexis and phraseology are particularly sensitive to matters of field, though in subtle ways (1981).

4.2.1.2. The 'tenor of discourse' parameter of context: Primary considerations and primary systems

The 'tenor of discourse' (henceforth 'tenor') was introduced in sub-section 2.2.2 where following Halliday (1985: 12) it was defined as:

a matter of who is taking part in the communicative event and what is the nature of the relationships that pertain between those taking part, involving the further, elaborated matters thus:

- the statuses and roles obtaining among and between the participants, including both permanent and temporary relationships of all kinds;
- the types of speech role that they are taking on in the dialogue;
- and the whole cluster of socially significant relationships in which they are involved.

Poynton (1985: 76-78) argues that all contextual variables within 'tenor' are derivable from the following three primary systems: 'status', 'contact' and 'affect' (Fig. 4.2.1.2.i).

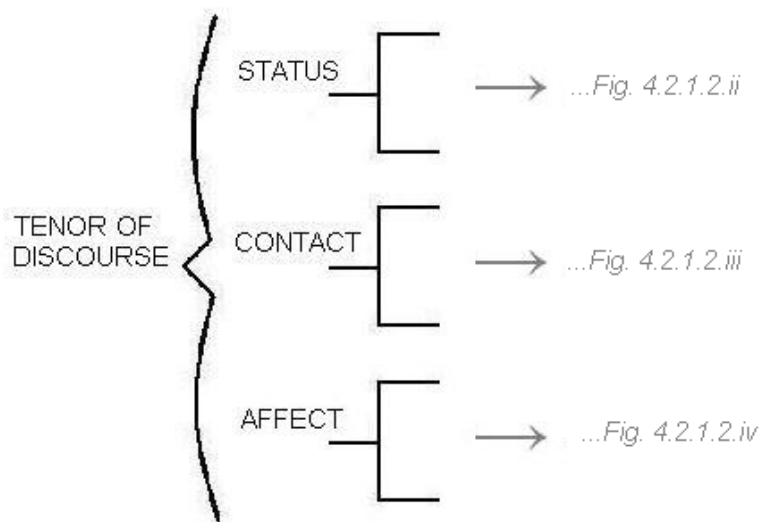


Figure 4.2.1.2.i: Primary TENOR OF DISCOURSE systems according to Poynton

Each ‘status’, ‘contact’ and ‘affect’ are now briefly described in turn.

‘**Status**’¹³, With respect to ‘status’, the specific consideration is a matter of whether the relationships between interlocutors are of a hierarchic sort or not. That is, do the interlocutors share the same or different social standing and so do they have the same right of access to linguistic choices? The basic distinction is therefore between ‘equal’ and ‘unequal’. Where the relationship between interlocutors is of unequal status, there is a distinction between ‘dominance’ and ‘deference’ to be defined at the level of the individual speaker. But from the perspective of the communicative event and the text, this latter distinction is irrelevant since the existence of dominance implies the existence of deference and vice-versa. Equality is here to be understood in socially-defined terms; “the relative position of interlocutors in a culture’s social hierarchy” (Martin, 1992a: 525). Although the phenomena of tenor systems are in general said to be of a continuous and cline-line sort¹⁴ (Poynton, 1985: 76; Martin, 1992a: 527; Martin, 1992b), in the first instance the distinction involved with respect to the present phenomenon is a discrete, categorical one. That is, the relationship pertaining between two interlocutors cannot at once be equal and unequal in any interpretation of any of these concepts. Fig. 4.2.1.2.ii acts as a summary of the fore-going discussion of ‘status’.

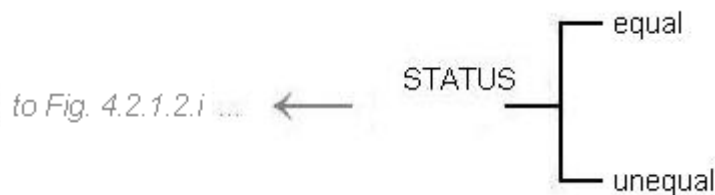


Figure 4.2.1.2.ii: The STATUS primary tenor system according to Poynton

¹³ Poynton (1984; 1985; 1990) uses the term ‘power’ for the phenomenon currently under discussion. ‘Status’ is Martin’s (1992a; 2010) term for the same concept. Martin prefers this term for reasons he sets out in Martin (1992a: 523-528). Without digressing to that discussion, the present work follows Martin (ibid) for reasons of compatibility as mentioned at the outset of the present sub-section.

¹⁴ And in terms of systemic description, handling such continuous, cline-like phenomena requires extension into at least several degrees of systemic delicacy and/or systems with multiple – i.e. non-binary – choices.

Whereas 'status' concerns that aspect of the relationship between interlocutors which is to do with their comparative social standing, 'contact' specifically concerns the familiarity between interlocutors in the communicative event. 'Familiarity' is defined here in quantitative terms; i.e. as frequency of communicative interaction. In turn, 'frequency' is to be understood in both episodic and biographical senses of time, including and yet broader than: how many times the interlocutors have previously interacted; how long any such prior interactions tend to be; how frequently such interactions occur; etc. Generalising across all of these distinctions of familiarity as frequency, the fundamental distinction within 'contact' is between 'involved' and 'distant'. In the former case the communicative engagement between interlocutors is regular and recurrent and in the latter it is rare and occasional. Again, as typical for considerations of 'tenor', distinctions within 'contact' are cline-like and continuous in nature. That is, there is clearly a gradient between 'involved' and 'distant' such that interlocutors can be 'very distant' or 'reasonably involved', etc. The realisational consequence of variation along these parameters is that the more distant the interlocutors are, the fewer linguistic choices they will have open to them and therefore the more predictable the text. Conversely, the more familiar the interlocutors are, the more choices will be open to them and therefore the less predictable the text. Fig.4.2.1.2.iii summarises the prior discussion of 'contact'.

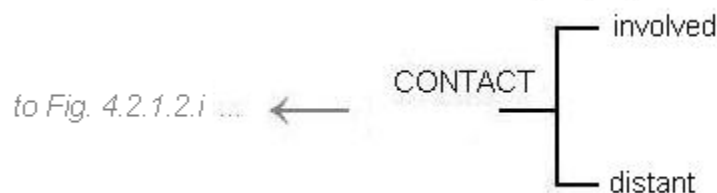


Figure 4.2.1.2.iii: The CONTACT primary tenor system according to Poynton

Finally for primary tenor considerations, 'affect' is that aspect of the relationship between interlocutors which has to do with the level of emotional involvement between them. That is, do interlocutors feel neutral and passive towards each other or are there strong emotional feelings between them? If the former is the case, the 'affect' between interlocutors is said to be 'unmarked', as in typical communicative interactions between work colleagues. If the latter is the case, 'affect' is said to be 'marked', as in the

communication between partners. But within ‘marked’ there is a fairly evident further choice. A ‘marked’ ‘affect’ can be so either positively (for example, partners again) or negatively (for example, rivals). A further relevant consideration for ‘marked’ ‘affect’ is whether it is ‘permanent’ or ‘transient’. Many partners do, for example, have heated rows. But one hopes these are at least brief if not infrequent. If relationships are unmarked in terms of ‘affect’, there is no realisational consequence in the language system (Poynton, 1985: 78; Martin, 1992a: 533); however, in cases of ‘marked’ ‘affect’, the realisational consequence is iteration and amplification in relevant language systems, particularly interpersonal ones as predicted by the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis. An example of such tendencies at work is the use of modifiers in the nominal group: “he’s a god-damn bloody annoying pain in the arse!”; “what a sweet lovely kind caring man!”. Again, the ‘affect’ system is continuous rather than discrete in nature. Fig. 4.2.1.2.iv summarises this discussion of ‘affect’.

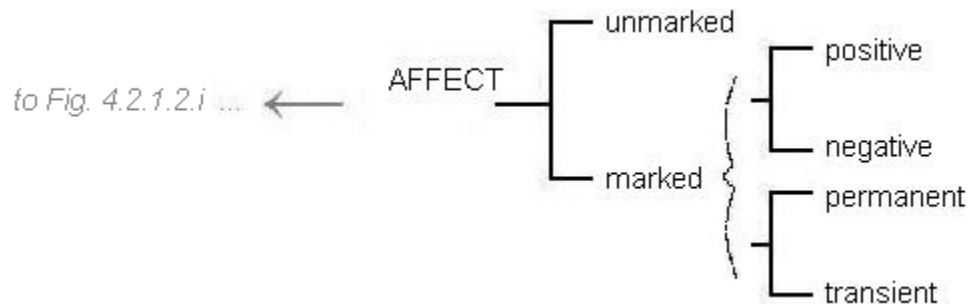


Figure 4.2.1.2.iv: The AFFECT primary tenor system according to Poynton

It might appear *prima facie* that what have here been presented as three distinct networks for ‘tenor’ at the primary degree of delicacy embody phenomena which are actually interdependent. Specifically, when ‘status’ is ‘unequal’, ‘contact’ is likely to be ‘distant’ and ‘affect’ ‘unmarked’. Likewise, when ‘status’ is ‘equal’, ‘contact’ is likely to be ‘involved’ and ‘affect’ likely to be ‘marked’. And following such a line of reason, it could be argued that the systemic description of ‘tenor’ requires only one primary system with complex independence between its parts rather than three separate systems. But a principal reason for postulating distinct systems is relatively free interaction between the sets of distinctions each contains (Halliday, 1967-8; 1996). Thus, while the aforementioned tendencies account for many communicative scenarios we might

imagine (for example, the regular communicative interactions between work colleagues on the one hand and partners on the other), examples of their uncoupling are not rare (for example, the manager of a business and his PA, where 'status' is 'unequal', 'affect' is 'unmarked' but 'contact' is 'involved'). To postulate that all the phenomena discussed in this section derive from one system would be to neglect the semiotic diversity and potential of our culture's communicative practices.

The discussion of systemic functional parameters of context as the basis for the dataset design is now complete as relevant for the present purposes. In moving to the next section, the shift is one from the theoretical to the descriptive-practical. That is, the next section discusses systemic functional context in concrete terms with reference to the actual data of the present project, rather than in abstract terms as has been the case in chapter 4 up until now.

4.2.2. The corpus

In this section the four sub-corpora which together constitute the entire dataset are introduced and discussed in turn. The key feature of the dataset is that 'mode' as the independent variable of the project is held constant within each sub-corpus but is also principally varied between them. 'Field' and 'tenor' as controlled variables of the project remain constant across all sub-corpora. An example of the data of each corpus is given in its relevant section.

4.2.2.1. Newspaper reports sub-corpus

This first corpus is a collection of fifty-thousand words of match reports on Premiership football games in the UK. The games occurred across eight different weekends of Premier League fixtures during the 2009-2010 season. The reports themselves are taken from ten British newspapers and were all published on their respective websites the day following the game in question. Each set of weekend fixtures amounts to ten matches and these corresponded to the ten British newspapers. The newspapers were a mix of broadsheets and tabloids, and best efforts were made to randomise the combination of paper with fixture and team, so as to minimise the risk of any potential confounding factors. The reports are, in the average case, 500 – 750 words in length.

The dataset reflects the following attributes of context as theorised in systemic functional linguistics. The contextual values refer to the systemic distinctions of context networks discussed across sections 4.1.2 through to 4.2.1.2. Brief arguments in support of why these texts represent these contextual values is given simultaneously here.

- ‘mode’: constituting: reconstruction: vicarious:

A newspaper report on a football game is not the construction of some therefore new and invented social action. Nor is it produced concurrently with some social action taking place (see sections 4.2.2.3 and 4.2.2.4 below). Rather, these texts take as their topic genuinely occurring events (i.e. football games). They are produced subsequent to the enactment of such events they take as their topic and are therefore some recount of these. In all these ways they are like the ‘joy of six editorial’ texts (see section 4.2.2.2). They differ from the latter, however, in the fact that there is no assumption between interlocutors – best considered as addresser and addressee in these texts – of having been equally privy to the original events as they occurred. The well founded assumption is the addresser will have had such access to the original unfolding of events. But this assumption is not applied to the addressee in the same way. Many readers of newspaper reports of a game arrive at the text wishing to be informed of what they missed if they didn’t attend the game or it wasn’t on TV to watch. Of course, some readers will have been privy to the original events, just as the addresser. They will perhaps be arriving to the texts for different reasons to the aforementioned group. The important point is that there is no assumption made of the addressee by the addresser that the former would have had access to the original communicative event. This is what differentiates the mode in this corpus, from that in the ‘joy of six editorial’ corpus.

- ‘field’: oral transmission: specialised: recreational:

Martin (1992a: 544) classifies recreational activities such as sports as transmitted by oral means because their activity sequences have not tended to be, and do not require, recording in writing. That is, they are deemed culturally to be largely ‘common sense’. The newspaper reports, though a written text, take as their field an orally transmitted type. Recreational sports, and so the field of the newspaper reports, are ‘specialised’ in


they require more technical lexis than do 'domestic' fields. But they are less specialised than 'trades' which defy 'common sense' classification in more ways.

- 'tenor': STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked:

By virtue of their being a text within the wider compilation of texts known as 'the newspaper', newspaper reports are an evident example of mass mediated texts. The newspaper they are within is produced in huge circulation numbers to supply a national demand well into the tens, if not hundreds, of thousands. Given that tenor focuses on the relationship between interlocutors – or 'addressee' and 'addresser' might be more appropriate here – in its many of its facets, it need be asked what is the relationship between 'reader' and 'writer' here. Clearly, there is a hierarchical relation between the two, given the author's authority of institutional position and adjudged knowledge to suit. The contact is even more evidently distant. Such reports are produced on a weekly basis at most and the readership needn't necessarily be recurrently the same. The affect between reader and writer is likely, consequently, to be a passive one and so unmarked.

Figs. 4.2.2.1.i shows one of the newspaper reports from the corpus. Given that web pages are such complex and multimodal of texts, it is important to here be clear that only the main body of the report has been included (that is, the two paragraphs of text beneath the picture on the lower left). The headline, the adverts, the author, date and other details, etc. are not included.

Sign in Register Mobile version Text larger | smaller Go to: guardian.co.uk home Go

Together we can sort it  Act now >> Be Humankind Oxfam

guardian.co.uk | TheObserver Search guardian.co.uk Search

News Sport Comment Culture Business Money Life & style Travel Environment TV Blogs Video Community Jobs

Sport > Football > Premier League

Steven Fletcher and André Bikey maintain Burnley's winning home start


Observer report Match facts

Premier League

Burnley 2
Birmingham City 1

Fletcher, S 53, Bikey 62
Larsson 90

Mike Stafford at Turf Moor
guardian.co.uk, Saturday 3 October 2009 17:09 BST
Article history



Burnley's Steven Fletcher fires home to put his side ahead against Birmingham at Turf Moor. Photograph: Nick Potts/PA

Forget victories over the champions of England and the FA Cup finalists, this – Burnley's fourth victory in as many home matches – was "without doubt" the newly promoted club's biggest win of the season, according to Owen Coyle. The Burnley manager paid a roundabout tribute to his former Motherwell boss Alex McLeish by ranking this win over his Birmingham side above the shock results against Manchester United and Everton.

Goals from Steven Fletcher and André Bikey in nine pulsating second-half minutes were enough to take all three points and condemn a soporific first half to distant memory. "I believe today was our biggest result of the season, not your Manchester Uniteds, Evertons or Sunderlands," said Coyle. "A lot of people would have perceived 'Burnley at home [to Birmingham], I would fancy them to win that' and sometimes that is the game you trip up on."

64 up! Dig it

larger | smaller

Football
Premier League - Burnley - Birmingham City
Sport

More match reports

More on this story

Arsenal 6-2 Blackburn
Rovers
Premier League:
Arsenal run out winners in a thrilling game as Arsène Wenger celebrated 13 years at Arsenal

Chelsea 2-0 Liverpool

West Ham United 2-2 Fulham

Bertha 1-1 Stoke City

Latest from football

Most viewed Latest Most commented

Last 24 hours

1. Carling Cup fourth round: Arsenal 2-1 Liverpool
2. Carling Cup: Arsenal vs Liverpool - as it happened | Rob Smyth
3. Carlo Ancelotti gets fourth translation | Marka Hyde
4. Marika Hög will appeal against jail term and Wigan sacking says agent
5. Manuel Pellegrini is on the ropes after Real Madrid's greatest humiliation

More top stories

Figure 4.2.2.1.i: An example text from the 'newspaper reports' sub-corpus

4.2.2.2. 'Joy of six' editorial sub-corpus

The second of the four corpora comprises fifty-thousand words of an editorial feature in the British broadsheet newspaper 'The Guardian', drawn from its web-edition. The editorial is named 'The Joy of Six'. Its purpose is to re-count and relive famous moments from football's past which group around a particular theme (e.g. 'greatest volleys of all time'; 'what we miss most in modern football'; etc.), with the theme changing weekly. As the authors of the editorial themselves frequently put it at the start of 'The Joy of Six' articles, "the point of the Joy of Six is not to rank things, only to enjoy them". 'The Joy of Six' articles are usually 1,500 – 2,000 words in length. The corpus comprises the texts from twenty consecutive weeks of the feature in 2008-9.

The dataset represents attributes of the systemic functional theorisation of context as follows.

- 'mode': constituting: reconstruction: shared:

The 'joy of six' editorial is in many ways similar to the newspaper reports. Both consider real social action that has taken place and is now in the past. That is, they both recount past events. But they do so in subtly different ways. Whereas the 'newspaper reports' corpus (section 4.2.2.1) makes no assumption of the audience's access to the original events being discussed, the 'joy of six' editorials make exactly this assumption. The editorial webpage declares its love of sharing in the reminiscence of events past. The editors assume of their readership precisely that they will have been privy to the original events under discussion.

- 'field': oral transmission: specialised: recreational:

Much like the newspaper reports corpus data, though the language of the Guardian's 'joy of six' editorial is written, recreational activities are judged to be transmitted by oral means in that their 'activity sequences' tend to go uncodified as if 'common sense'. Recreational sports, and so the field of the 'joy of six' editorial, are 'specialised' in they require more technical lexis than 'domestic' fields, though on similar grounds they are less specialised than 'trades' (Martin, 1992a: 544).

- 'tenor': STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked:

Again, as a text within a newspaper – the latter a mass mediated text produced daily in tens or hundred of thousands – the 'joy of six' editorial displays similar contextual values as the 'newspaper reports' corpus and for similar reasons (see above this section for elaboration). The status is unequal. The author is deemed an authority figure on the topic and in control of the communicative flow. The editorial is weekly and the readership not necessarily consistent. The contact is therefore distant. And the affect between reader and writer is a passive, unmarked one.

Fig. 4.2.2.2.i is an example from this sub-corpus. Again, the text of interest is the main body of the article. The headlines, sub-headlines, adverts, the author, date and other details, and so on are not included in the corpus.

theguardian Sport Search

News Sport Comment Culture Business Money Life & style Travel Environment TV Data Video Mobile Offers Jobs

Sport > The Joy of Six

THESPORTBLOG
OPINION. CONJECTURE. OTHER STUFF.



Previous Blog home Next

The Joy of Six: great football matches from the past decade

From the 2005 Champions League final to a Prenton Park classic, here are half a dozen of the best games of the noughties



Liverpool celebrate their 2005 Champions League final win in Istanbul. Photograph: Tom Jenkins/Guardian

1) Milan 3-3 Liverpool, 2005 Champions League final

In 2001 a prankster named Karl Power crept into the Manchester United team photo ahead of their quarter-final second leg at Bayern Munich. But the Champions League final four years later featured, according to some observers, even more brazen impostors. The folks who insisted Liverpool's progress out of their group and past Juventus and Chelsea had been scandalous or fortuitous rejoiced after a mere 52 seconds, when Paolo Maldini scored the fastest ever goal in the final. Soon Milan swaggered into a 3-0 lead with the sort of class Rafael Benitez's Premier League strugglers manifestly lacked. So one-sided was the first half that Benitez was even accused of compounding his players' imitations with wrong-headed tactics. But at half-time the Spaniard made an adjustment, introducing Dietmar Hamann in place of the injured Steve Finnan to at least give Liverpool a meaningful presence in midfield. The decision changed everything.

In the 54th minute, moments after Jerzy Dudek had tipped Andriy Shevchenko's free-kick around the post, Steven Gerrard met a John Arne Riise cross and headed into the net. Two minutes later Vladimir Smicer marked his last appearance for Liverpool by making it 3-2 from 25 yards. Then, to complete the 'six minutes of madness' that Milan would mourn forever more, Gerrard collapsed in the box and the referee awarded a penalty. After seeing his weak spot-kick saved by Dida, Xabi Alonso slammed in the rebound. Milan soon regained control but their best chance – a Shevchenko blaster from two yards out in extra-time – was miraculously repelled by Dudek, who would also be the hero of the shoot-out, his wobbly-legged tribute to Bruce Grobbelaar helping Liverpool to prevail 3-2 on penalties.

2) Holland 2-0 Czech Republic, Euro 2004

Posted by Paul Doyle
Friday 20 November 2008 11:34 GMT
guardian.co.uk
Article history

[Twitter](#) |
 [Facebook](#) |
 [LinkedIn](#) |
 [Print](#) |
 [RSS](#)

[larger](#) |
 [smaller](#)

Football
Sport
Series
 The Joy of Six: 2000 to 2009: Reviews of the decade

[More from Sportblog on](#)
Series
 The Joy of Six 2000 to 2009: Reviews of the decade
[More blogposts](#)

Related
10 Dec 2009
 The Joy of Six: footballers of the decade
12 Mar 2010
 The Joy of Six: Shodh falls from grace
19 Feb 2010
 The Joy of Six: Inspired substitutions
1 Jul 2011
 The Joy of Six: Copa América moments

On Sport Most viewed | **Latest** | Latest

Last 24 hours



1. Marcos Baghdatis smashes four rackets during Australian Open tantrum

2. England's blood, sweat, toil and tears keep Pakistan in check

3. Low record threatened but Pakistan discipline frustrates England

4. David Halbandian attacks 'stupid' umpire after Australian Open defeat

5. Australian Open 2012: Fortune smiles on resurgent Roger Federer

[More most viewed](#)

Bestsellers from the Guardian shop



Thermal-lined trousers
Our best-selling fleece-lined outdoor trousers - buy one pair and get a second pair free. From £28.99

Visit the Guardian reader offers shop. See all offers and services from the Guardian.

Buy tickets for top sport events

Compare and buy tickets for thousands of events



Six Nations Championship
Saturday, 4 Feb, 2012
Murrayfield - Edinburgh
[Book](#)



England v Ireland
Saturday, 17 Mar, 2012
Twickenham Stadium - London
[Book](#)



England v Wales
Saturday, 25 Feb, 2012
Twickenham Stadium - London
[Book](#)

[Tickets to more sport events](#)

Figure 4.2.2.2.i: An example text from the 'joy of six' sub-corpus

4.2.2.3. Radio commentary sub-corpus

The third sub-corpus is a collection of twelve-thousand words of live radio commentary accompanying football games, broadcast on BBC Radio Five Live between 2006 and 2008. In all cases, there are two present, active and contributing commentators. Bowcher's (2001) ethnographic field notes offer a description of the prototypical make-up of sports commentary teams and the procedures they follow in producing a professional commentary. The data of both this and the next sub-corpus largely conform to the model Bowcher (ibid) describes. Some differences between the overall approach taken here and that of Bowcher (ibid) are identified in chapter 6. Although the radio commentary accompanying a single game would offer data far in excess of twelve-thousand words, this corpus is made up of a small number of sections within such commentaries, sampling ten to twenty minute continuous spells from different games and different commentary teams in order to minimise the risk of idiosyncrasies or other factors confounding the analysis.

The attributes of the corpus are:

- 'mode': accompanying: commentary: relay:

Unlike the 'newspaper reports' and 'joy of six editorial' corpora, the 'radio commentary' corpus is produced concurrently with the social action it describes. That is, it accompanies its social action. The producers of the text are not themselves immediately engaged in the fundamental social action. Rather, they commentate on that social action. The present dataset is distinguished from the 'TV commentary' corpus (see section 4.2.2.4) on the basis of the positioning of the respective audiences in each text type. In radio commentaries, members of the audience do not have visual access to the social action. They are entirely reliant on the verbal description of the commentators.

- 'field': oral transmission: specialised: recreational:

The field of the radio commentary corpora is as above because its focus is on the recreational activity of a particular sport (football) whose activity sequences are judged 'common sense' by the culture such that they do not necessarily need to be recorded in writing. Recreational sports, and so the field of the radio commentaries,

are 'specialised' in they engender language which is more sophisticated and more technical language than 'domestic' fields but less so than 'trades' fields.

- 'tenor': STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked:

The radio commentaries of this dataset are a multi-mediated sort, different in detail but broadly resembling the 'newspaper reports' and 'joy of six editorial' corpora. Again, tenor being a matter of the relationship between interlocutors – best thought of in terms of addresser and addressee in these commentaries – it need be asked what sort of status, contact and affect hold between them. The status is obviously hierarchical. The commentator(s) is/are judged experts in their topic with the knowledge to grant them such esteem. They have all rights of access to production in the communicative event. Commentaries happen with varying frequency and certainly a single commentator might commentate less regularly than a weekly basis. There is no certainty of an assured, consistent listenership. The contact between them is therefore distant. And there is, in all likelihood, going to be a passive and therefore unmarked affectual relationship between them.

The entire sub-corpus was transcribed according to the conventions of conversation analysis as set out in Sacks, Schegloff & Jefferson (1978). A sample is given in Fig. 4.2.2.3.i. There was far less stripping of the text here than with the previous two sub-corpora. Within the stretches of commentary selected, most of the text was included. The only significant exclusions were when the language was defied any sort of clausal analysis.

- C right footed uh (.) didn't beat the first defender that was Frank Lampard and Lampard (.) uh (.) clatters it away out of play for a throw in (.) I'm just worried that Lampard is so deep we're not getting any attacking play from Frank Lampard tonight (.) defending so much (1.0) Terry heads the ball away Iniesta picks it up (.) er to Ronaldinho Ronaldinho tried to chip the goalkeeper fantastic strike by the Brazilian (.) fantastic (1.0) Cech just didn't see it until it was passed him (.) and from three nil up Chelsea on the night they're now pegged back to three two it's four four on aggregate and at the moment it's Barcelona who are going through Ronaldinho's second goal=
- B =well this is absolutely incredible and that goal (.) was world class I tell you what when he picked that up (.) he controlled the ball and I don't think (.) anyone else on the park could see what he saw there he just saw the gap and it was brilliant from standing no backlift how he got it in I do not know I mean you can say (.) about Chelsea players getting out to close him down but I don't think anyone else could have seen that except Ronaldinho (1.0)
- C blue isn't the colour at the moment (.) and I'm telling you yes I'm feeling pretty blue having taken over the commentary from Jonathan (.) because at three nil (.) everybody's happy (.) everybody's happy and what do I do (.) my commentary and Ronaldinho [scores] twice=

Figure 4.2.2.3.i: An example text transcribed from the 'radio-commentary' sub-corpus

4.2.2.4. TV commentary sub-corpus

The fourth sub-corpus is similar in very many respects to the third. The distinction between the two becomes evident once when the 'mode' parameters are compared. This sub-corpus consists of ten-thousand words of the commentary accompanying the television coverage of live football games. All these games were broadcast on either Sky Sports or the BBC between 2006 and 2008. As with the last sub-corpus, Bowcher's (2001) description of the constitution and functioning of professional sports commentary teams applies. Again, in all the data there are two commentators contributing to the evolving text. As with the radio commentary sub-corpus, small sections of a number of TV commentaries were selected, so as to sample five to twenty minute continuous spells in both different games and different commentary teams.

The contextual attributes of the final corpus and the supporting arguments are as follows:

- 'mode': accompanying: commentary: co-observing:

The majority of the remarks made with respect 'mode' for the 'radio commentary' corpus (see section 4.2.2.3) apply equally well here. The 'TV commentaries' are also texts produced in the same real time as the social action they take as their topic. Again, the producers of the texts are commentators on the social action, not focally engaged with it. 'TV commentaries' are distinguished from 'radio commentaries', however, on the basis that the audience of the former have visually access – albeit mediated in nature – to the social action being described in the commentary. The audience for 'radio commentaries' do not have this same access.

- 'field': oral transmission: specialised: recreational:

As with all previous corpora, the classification of sport, as an example of recreational activity, is 'transmitted by oral methods'. And, again, this is centrally a matter of the lack of need for the activity sequences of sports to be codified in writing. Recreational activities are more 'specialised' than 'domestic' fields, but less specialised than 'trades'.

- 'tenor': STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked:

The tenor values of the present 'TV commentaries' corpus attest significant overlap with the same values in the 'radio commentaries' dataset, and for similar reasons (see above for elaboration). The relationship between commentator and listener, then, will be unequal in status (the commentator is perceived to hold expertise and/or knowledge in the current context), distant for contact (the communicative event might happen weekly, if as frequent) and unmarked in terms of affect (a passive relationship is likely to pertain between commentator and listener).

The TV commentaries of this dataset are a multi-mediated sort, different in detail but broadly resembling the 'newspaper reports' and 'joy of six editorial' corpora. Again, tenor being a matter of the relationship between interlocutors – best thought of in terms of addresser and addressee in these commentaries – it need be asked what

sort of status, contact and affect hold between them. The status is obviously hierarchical. The commentator(s) is/are judged experts in their topic with the knowledge to grant them such esteem. They have all rights of access to production in the communicative event. Commentaries happen with varying frequency and certainly a single commentator might commentate less regularly than a weekly basis. There is no certainty of an assured, consistent listenership. The contact between them is therefore distant. And there is, in all likelihood, going to be a passive and therefore unmarked affectual relationship between them.

Fig. 4.2.2.4.i is the transcription of a part of the data (for the transcription conventions, see the front material).

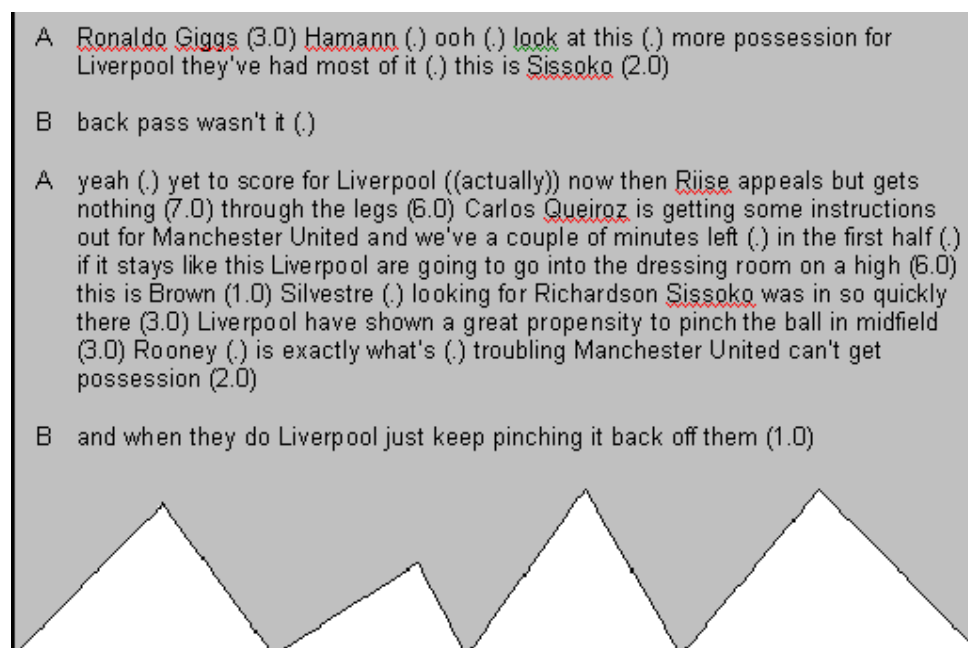


Figure 4.2.2.4.i: An example text transcribed from the 'TV commentary' sub-corpus

In sum of section 4.2.2 and its parts, Table 4.2.2.4.i demonstrates the differences and similarities between the four corpora in the dataset in terms of the contextual variables of field, tenor and mode. The order of presentation reflects the ordering from most to least ancillary, in anticipation of the discussion following.

It was noted at the start of the section that the dataset was designed to hold the 'field' and 'tenor' parameters constant. Remarks to this affect have been given in the above sections to further explain this in the context of each particular dataset. The 'mode' is

the independent (test) variable (table 4.2.2.4.i), with the four sub-corpora representing different values in mode as follows:

- ‘accompanying: commentary: co-observing’ (TV commentary)
- ‘accompanying: commentary: relay’ (radio commentary)
- ‘constituting: reconstruction: shared’ (‘Joy of Six’ newspaper editorials)
- ‘constituting: reconstruction: vicarious’ (newspaper reports)

The dataset is designed in this way so as to allow the testing of the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis with ellipsis as the dependent variable and variation across the contextual mode parameter the independent variable.

| | CORPUS | FIELD | TENOR | MODE |
|--|---------------------------------|--|---|---|
| constitutive ↑ ----- ↓ ancillary | TV football commentary | oral transmission: specialised: recreational | STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked | accompanying: commentary: co-observing |
| | Radio football commentary | oral transmission: specialised: recreational | STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked | accompanying: commentary: relay |
| | Guardian ‘joy of six’ editorial | oral transmission: specialised: recreational | STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked | constituting: reconstruction: shared |
| | Football newspaper reports | oral transmission: specialised: recreational | STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked | constituting: reconstruction: vicarious |

Table 4.2.2.4.i: The contextual design attributes of the dataset

4.3. The coding software and the associated annotation scheme

This final section of the methodology chapter deals with methodological matters that shade into the territory of analysis. It is divided into four. The first section (4.3.1) explains the software used for analysing the data. The final section (4.3.4) describes the specific coding scheme developed for the analysis here and is by far the longest of the four sections. In between, sections 4.3.2 and 4.3.3 deal with two sets of related issues: the first, a matter of recognising the difference between the organisation of linguistic information per se and the specific type of organisation of linguistic information which amounts to linguistic description; the second, a matter of the need

to operationalise the identification of the phenomena under study, given its inherent nature, so as to ensure its transparent and so scientific analysis in the data.

4.3.1. The coding software: UAM CorpusTool

The analysis of data in the present project is achieved with the use of UAM CorpusTool, a piece of software designed with the express purpose of analysing – or ‘coding’ – linguistic data. UAM CorpusTool (henceforth simply ‘CorpusTool’) is a product of the work of systemic functional and computational linguist Mick O’Donnell. The specific release version of CorpusTool used in the analytical project here is version 2.4.2. Details specific to this version are given as O’Donnell (2008a) and more general overviews of the software are provided by O’Donnell (2008b) and O’Donnell (2009). UAM Corpus Tool is friendly to projects of both the corpus linguistic and, particularly, systemic functional linguistic traditions; more on this towards the end of the present section.

The majority of this section, an explanatory discussion of CorpusTool, is given from the perspective of functionality – what the software does; what it can do; what it does best; etc. – and with a particular emphasis on the potential user. There are, of course, other ways of organising the same discussion. One obvious such alternative would be to follow the organisation internal to the software itself. And, very briefly, the inward design of CorpusTool is as follows. Upon opening the software, CorpusTool requires the creation a new or opening of an existing ‘project’. Fig. 4.3.1.i demonstrates this prompt.



Figure 4.3.1.i: The prompt command give upon opening UAM CorpusTool

A 'project' is the chief means by which the software is both engaged with and organised by. On the former, different projects tend to be based on different data and/or different analyses and so imply different (sets of) research questions. On the latter, a project collects together all the information – data, schemes, results, statistics, etc. – in one electronic folder. Once a project is opened or created, the software is organised such that its features occur across a number of simultaneous 'panes'. The CorpusTool 'pane' is much like a display of the Microsoft Windows sort and switching between CorpusTool panes is much like a Microsoft Windows 'tab' menu. There are six main panes: 'project', 'search', 'autocode', 'statistics', 'keywords' and 'options' as highlighted in the Figure below.

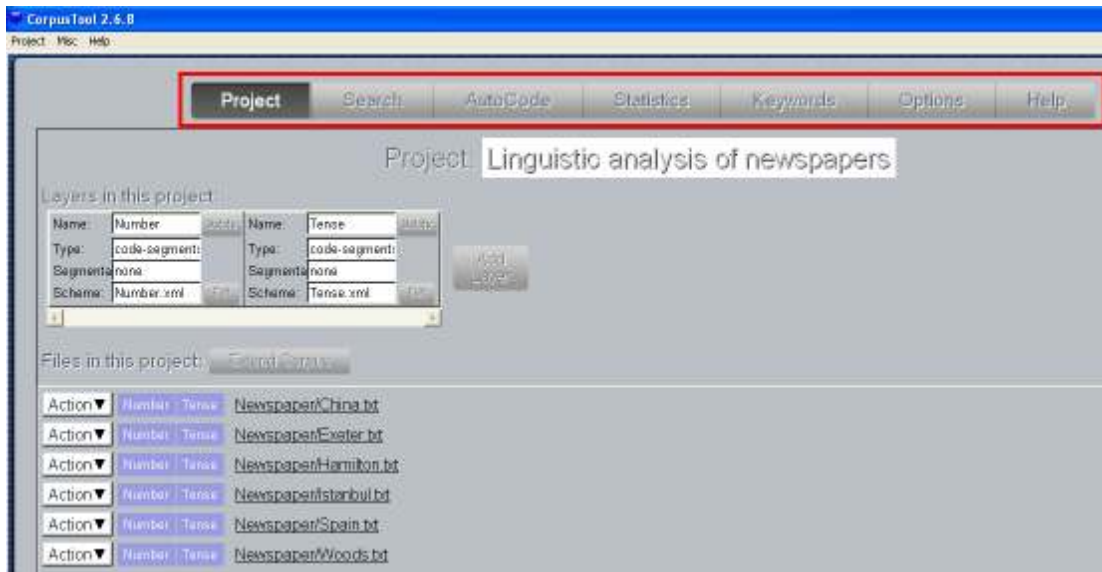


Figure 4.3.1.ii: The macro organisation of UAM CorpusTool into ‘panes’

Unsurprisingly, features in different panes differ. Since the below discussion is organised with an emphasis on the functional potential of such features, no more will be said here in terms of the aforementioned ‘panes’. Because of the user-friendliness of the software, it should be evident in the discussion to follow which ‘pane’ is being referred to at any time.

Having opened or created a project, users incorporate linguistic text to the CorpusTool as their primary object of study. The software’s platform can handle significant amounts of text for quantitative-based projects. This is in line with the corpus tradition of linguistic analysis (see below). The matter of encoding text accordingly for use is a comparatively easy process in CorpusTool when compared to the same process in many similar tools. The reason for this is the software’s project wizard normally detects and automates any required encoding adjustments at the point at which texts are included to the project.

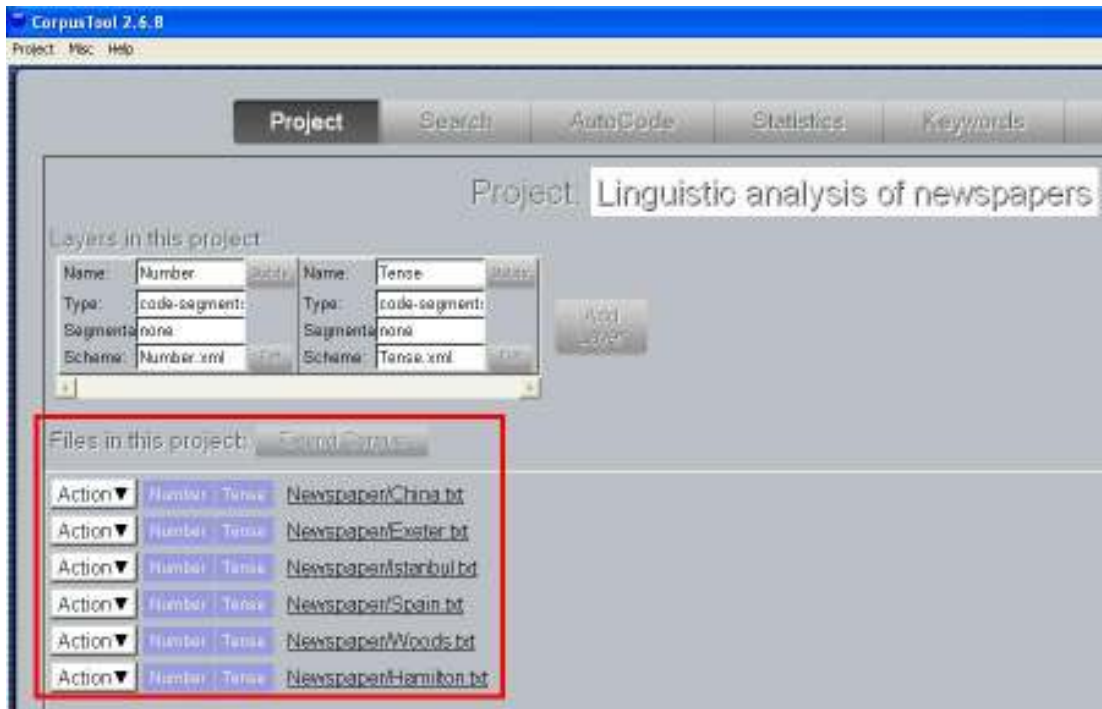


Figure 4.3.1.iii: The incorporation of text to the project in preparation for analysis

Once the desired text is incorporated into the project – as highlighted in Fig. 4.3.1.iii just above – a user’s likely next step is to design one or a number of coding schemes. Coding schemes are referred to as ‘layers’ in CorpusTool terminology. The number and detail of such ‘layers’ will depend on the analysis the user wants to conduct on their data. CorpusTool does offer a number of pre-designed coding schemes. A systemic functional transitivity coding scheme and a coding scheme based on Martin & White’s (2005) appraisal framework, for example, are available to users. The software also incorporates the Stanford Parser (see, for example, Klein & Manning, 2003 and de Marneffe, MacCartney & Manning, 2006) and a functionally based derivative parsing system informed by the Quirk et al. (1985) grammar (O’Donnell, 2010). These parsers offer the user an automatic grammatical analysis of their data in terms corresponding to the theoretical descriptions upon which the aforementioned parsers are based. The tool also allows users to develop their own autocode rules. Most users working with CorpusTool are, however, likely to have research questions which will require them to design their own coding schemes relative to these personal interests. Indeed, this encouraged independence and the flexibility in the software it requires are real strengths of CorpusTool. The software’s coding scheme functionality (see below) is relatively simple and yet still allows for

sufficient complexity so as to make possible very detailed analytical tasks. Users are likely to include as categories in their coding scheme some or all of the variables of their analytical research questions. Of course, this has as its prerequisite the operationalisation of such questions in such terms. No more will be said in the present discussion about the narrower matter of coding schemes as they will be the focus of a lot of sections 4.3.2 through to 4.3.4. But the coding scheme comprises the central part of the software as it is likely to be used by most users.

A user's next step is to determine and define the units of analysis in their analytical data. What these will be is again obviously determined by the research questions of the project and the linguistic phenomena they entail. Whatever these may be, procedurally, the units of analysis are incorporated to the project by being added directly to the texts of the project. Specifically, this is done by opening a text file and using a simple drag-and-drop function. This is highlighted in the Figure below.

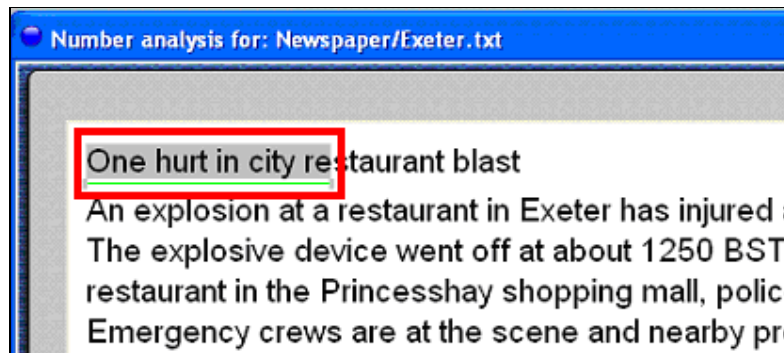


Figure 4.3.1.iv: UAM CorpusTool's 'drag-and-drop' function for assigning units of analysis to texts

If a project has multiple coding schemes, a version of each text file in the project is given for each coding scheme as highlighted in the Figure below.

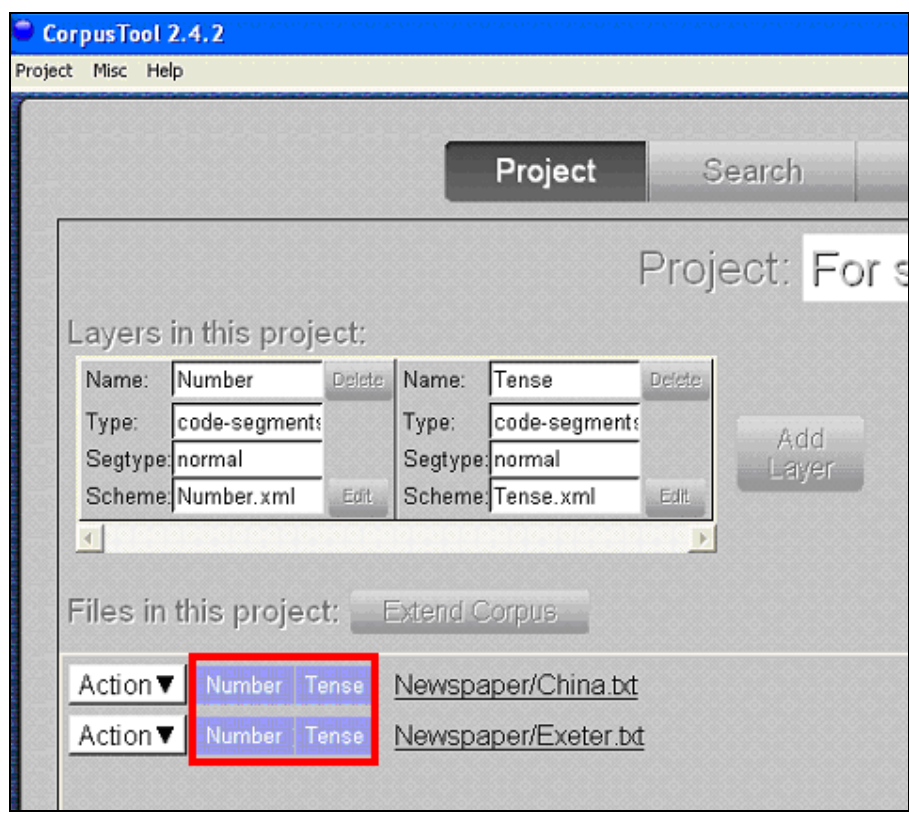


Figure 4.3.1.v: UAM CorpusTool's allowance for different units of analysis corresponding to different coding schemes

This implies and caters for an expectation that the analyses of different coding schemes might have different units of analysis, though this needn't be the case. Because the mark up of the units of analysis is a user-determined enterprise, they may be so frequent that they become multi-layered. That is, if one is interested in, say, nominal groups because they want to see if selections in the nominal group NUMBER system vary across the logogenetic history of texts of register X, for example, then the units of analysis in the project are almost certain to be so frequent that some will occur within others and so the units of analysis will be multi-layered. Figure 4.3.1.vi demonstrates this point with respect to the aforementioned invented example.



Figure 4.3.1.vi: Units of analysis of the frequent, over-lapping type

Alternatively, the units of analysis may be so sparing that they do not even occur in all texts of the corpus and even where they do they may occur only once or twice in a text. The mark-up of stages in a narrative, in the Labovian sense, might be an example of such a project with infrequent units of analysis. Where on such a continuum any project's units of analysis lie will depend on the research questions, the phenomena under study and the goals of the project in question. Once the units of analysis are marked-up, users can subject them to analysis as defined in terms of the categories of their coding scheme. Taking again the aforementioned example of investigating selections in the nominal group system of NUMBER, having identified all nominal groups in the texts of the project one can assign to each of them the categories of the coding scheme; in this case 'count' (as opposed 'mass') and 'plural' (as opposed 'singular'). See Fig. 4.3.1.vii below.

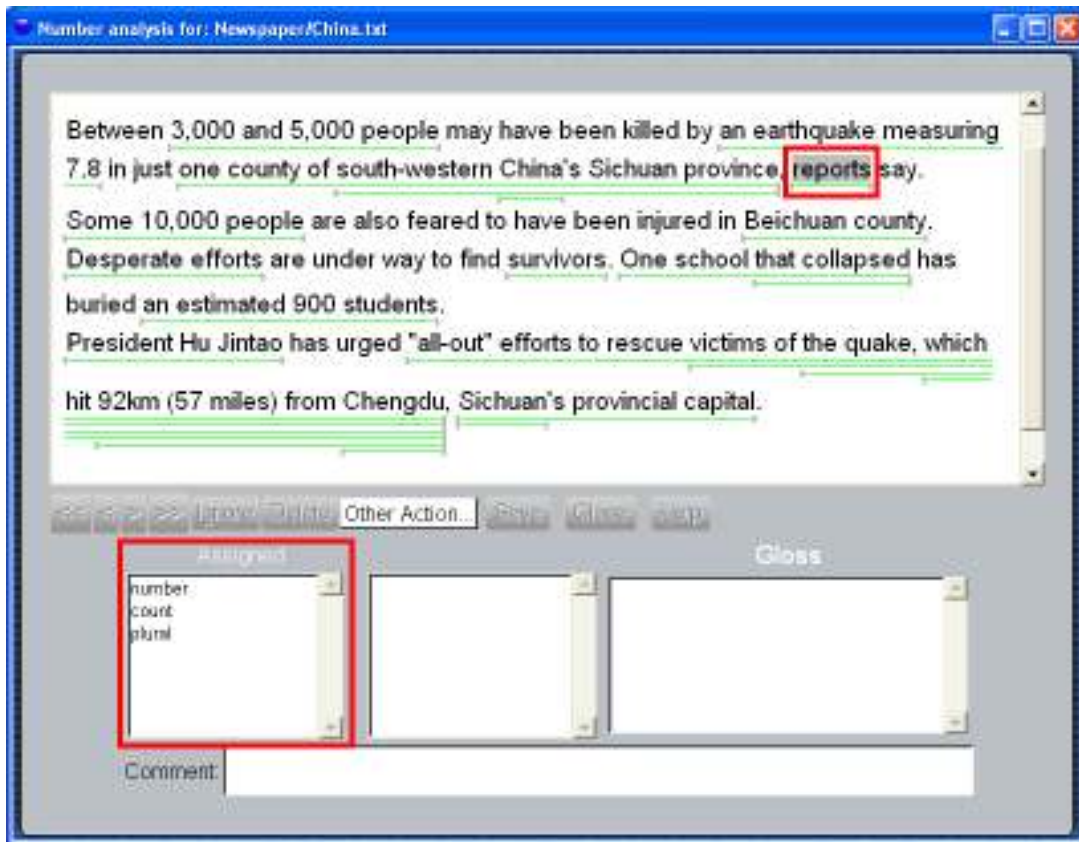


Figure 4.3.1.vii: Assigning categories of the coding scheme to the identified units of analysis

While the above remarks explain the basic functionality of the software, CorpusTool also offers a whole host of additional features. Statistical measurements of both the basic descriptive (for example, the number of words and sentences in a text or a whole corpus, the average word length of sentence in a text or a whole corpus, etc.) and the more sophisticated (for example, the lexical density of a text, the reference density of a text, etc.) types are included for the automated calculation on datasets satisfying the prior requirement of analysed text. There is also a basic concordancer which, while it does not calculate collocational information per se (though see remarks regarding 'keywords' analysis just below), does allow users to search not only by words and phrases. Valuably, it also allows users to search by any of the categories of the coding scheme. Such input strings can be combined to allow for quite sophisticated search queries. These concordancer searches offer the user further, very accessible and immediate ways to interpret their data. Brief remarks have already been made above about the possibilities to parse and autocode data in CorpusTool. For reasons of space no more will be added to that here except to offer

this reminder of that feature. Finally, the software allows the user to compare different sub-corpora, or different defined parts of one sub-corpus, with each other for their 'keywords'. This follows Scott's (1997) lead in being the comparison of two datasets in terms of which words characterise those datasets to a statistically significant degree. CorpusTool extends the principle of this 'keyword' analysis to the phrase by drawing on Biber's (1997) concept of lexical bundles.

Putting to one side the characterisation of CorpusTool in descriptive terms, its adoption in a methodology – as in the present project – may be situated within the broader discipline of corpus linguistics research. Two broad traditions within corpus linguistics have emerged: 'corpus-driven' and 'corpus-based'. Tognini-Bonelli (2001) offers a comparative discussion and builds a philosophical argument in favour of the corpus-driven tradition. Corpus-driven research prides itself on only negotiating linguistic data in theory- and description-neutral terms; that is, in using only the most general categories like the 'word' to inform the data observation and data collection stages of linguistic research so as not to influence subsequent analyses and conclusions. Corpus-based research, on the other hand, is open to making significant use of the very elaborate categories of 'pre-existing' theories and descriptions to inform the navigation of linguistic data and to enhance the sorts of questions that may be asked of it. As a piece of annotation software, UAM CorpusTool sits within the corpus-based tradition by the above dichotomy. And, by extension, so does the methodology of the current project. That is, with the navigation of the software's functionality centrally a matter of its coding scheme design, CorpusTool facilitates the assigning of analytical categories to natural language data. Trends observed in the data are only considered subsequently. Of course, the distinction between these two types of corpus research, like most dichotomies, simplifies the picture somewhat. Clarke (2007) attempted to produce a corpus-driven methodology for the study of ellipsis. The remit was complex and in many senses a contradiction. Ellipsis is defined by its absence (see chapter 3). And yet corpus-driven methods are the search of some dataset initiated by some input string, something that is defined by having a presence! Clarke (ibid) concluded that an automated corpus-driven approach to the study of ellipsis was unfeasible given the current state of knowledge and technology. As well as thinking about how these two broad types of corpus research differ, the significant amount they share should also be remembered. Both place huge value on naturalistic language data and are concerned with discovering patterns in that data so as to make useful generalisations about the language

system. And for both traditions, such patterns determined by such procedures must be the primary basis of language description.

As well as sitting in the aforementioned position within the corpus linguistics tradition, it was said above that CorpusTool is “friendly to [...] the [...] systemic functional linguistic tradition”. This is so because the design of the coding scheme – a central component of the software, remember – is based on the same theoretical concepts which are used in systemic functional linguistic descriptions. This will be outlined in more detail in the subsequent sections of 4.3, particularly in the next one.

Having briefly introduced the CorpusTool software, it is possible to give a much more detailed discussion of the specific coding scheme developed therein for the purposes of the present project. Though O’Donnell alone should be lauded for developing the software itself, CorpusTool allows users to design and develop their own coding schemes suitable for the needs of their specific project, as was said above. The present author is responsible for the scheme to be outlined in section 4.3.4 below¹⁵. But before this discussion can usefully take place, space must first be given to discuss the two sets of comments identified at the outset of this section. These two sets of comments follow as sub-sections 4.3.2 and 4.3.3.

4.3.2. The organisation of linguistic information and its theoretical status

Linguistic description is a very specific organisation of linguistic information. It amounts to a claim about the internal characteristics of language and its details are determined by some wider theoretical tradition. Although the organisation of linguistic information includes linguistic description, it also includes other ways of organising linguistic information which make no such claim of a descriptive statement about language and so do not have the same theoretical status. As described in section 2.1.2, in systemic functional linguistics, linguistic description is modelled as sets of distinctions – as features, combinations of features into systems and combinations of systems into systems networks – and a small number of relations between these distinctions: ‘either-or’, ‘both-and’, dependency, delicacy that dependency implies and simultaneity. By means of an example, the following is a descriptive statement

¹⁵ It should be stressed, however, that O’Donnell (2009) is creditable for engendering this functionality of coding scheme design to his wider software. This point will hopefully become clear as a result of the remaining sections of this chapter.

for the phenomenon of Mood as it is in English. It is given in terms relevant to the descriptive practices of systemic functional theory as just described:

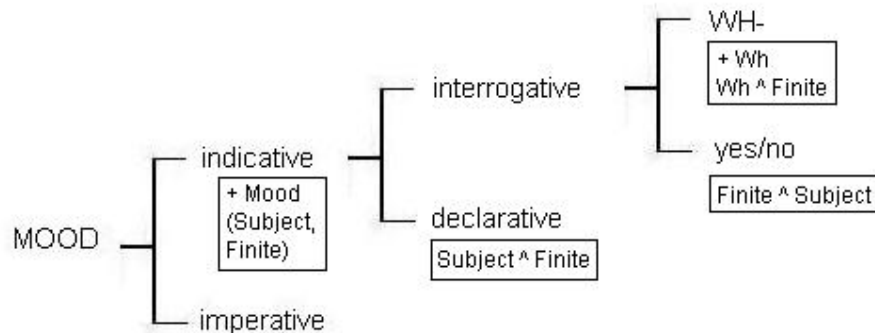


Figure 4.3.2.i: A snapshot of the MOOD system as an example of a linguistic phenomenon that amounts to a descriptive linguistic statement

In contrast, the Figure below organises word classes into open (roughly lexical categories, admitting new instances to the language freely) and closed (roughly grammatical categories, rarely allowing new instances into the language) sets.

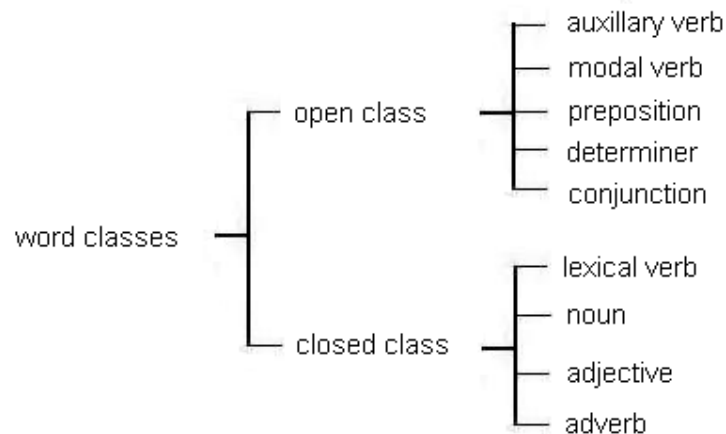


Figure 4.3.2.ii: Word classes as an example of a linguistic phenomenon that does not amount to a descriptive linguistic statement

Though the same systemic functional concepts are used in Fig. 4.3.2.ii as in Fig. 4.3.2.i, their use in Fig 4.3.2.ii is as a convenient way to arrange information relevant to word classes. That is, Fig. 4.3.2.ii does not amount to a descriptive statement about English. It might be said, therefore, that in Fig 4.3.2.ii, the systemic functional

theoretical concepts ‘feature’, ‘system’, ‘either-or’ relation’, etc. are applied – and to be understood – by analogy, rather than in their true descriptive sense according to systemic functional theory.

It is very important in the present discussion to be clear about the difference between linguistic organisation which amounts to descriptive statement and linguistic organisation which is subject to other classificatory criteria and principles and hence makes no such descriptive claim on language. CorpusTool is designed such that coding schemes in the software are created using these same systemic functional concepts and their associated relations. As was said in the last section, CorpusTool allows its users to code information of their own choosing and so design coding schemes to suit. Coding schemes designed in CorpusTool are not, therefore, necessarily descriptive statements about language. Of course, they can be if, for example, one is interested in asking which transitivity processes are most common in register X. But CorpusTool coding schemes needn’t be descriptive statements about language. In the first instance, they are simply a means of organising linguistic, or at least linguistically-relevant, information which happens to be the object of study.

In the current analytical project, the distinctions being incorporated into the scheme relate to the occurrence of ellipsis. As shall be seen when discussing the coding scheme of the present analytical project in the following two sections, there are parts within it which amount to distinctions of the descriptive linguistic statement kind. But other parts of the scheme are simply a way of organising other sorts of linguistic information which have no descriptive status but are nonetheless relevant in the analysis of the present study. Consequently, the overall coding scheme developed here is not a descriptive statement about language but a means of organising information relevant to the object of study, i.e. the occurrence of ellipsis. It is for this reason that in the succeeding presentation of the scheme in sections 4.3.3 and 4.3.4 concepts which have theoretical status in systemic functional theory – for example, feature, system, entry condition, etc. – are given in scare quotes (for example, ‘feature’, ‘system’, ‘entry condition’, etc.). This is because, again, they are not applied, nor to be understood, in their full systemic functional theoretical sense but rather by analogy to this ‘theoretical’ sense.

4.3.3. Operationalising textual metafunctional phenomena for objective study

The last section emphasised the distinction between the organisation of linguistic information and linguistic description. The latter is a very specific type of the former. As it was stressed in the last section, the scheme adopted for the purposes of the present analytical project (see section 4.3.4) is not itself a descriptive statement about language. Consequently, it should not be interpreted as having such a status. The scheme here is simply a means of organising information relevant to the present object of study. Recall from chapter 3 that the dependent variable under study in this project is ellipsis; specifically, ellipsis of elements of the unit of clause (section 3.1). The 'relevant information' presently, therefore, is whatever is involved in systematically identifying the occurrence of ellipsis of the aforementioned type.

The organisation of information relevant to ellipsis cannot actually be other than the 'non-linguistic descriptive statement' kind. That is, information of the phenomenon of ellipsis per se cannot be organised in any way such that it would ever amount to a descriptive statement about language. In contrast, a linguistic description of Mood, to take again the example from section 4.3.2, is relatively simple. Fig. 4.3.2.i above offered a linguistic description of Mood as it is in English and following the principles of linguistic description used in systemic functional theory. But there is no organisation of the phenomenon of ellipsis which could ever amount to such a descriptive statement, offered either in terms of the systemic functional practice of linguistic description or, indeed, in terms of the practices of linguistic description used by any other theoretical school. Ellipsis is a phenomenon of a different sort. Ellipsis types could be schematised. Indeed, ellipsis can be typologised across a number of variables, for example the source of recoverability of the omitted form; the functional structural type of the element(s) omitted; etc. Fig. 4.3.3.i offers a schematisation following the principles of systemic functional description for recoverability types of ellipsis.

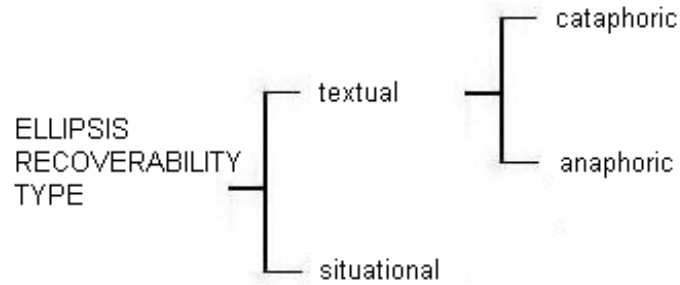


Figure 4.3.3.i: A ‘system’ of ellipsis recoverability type

But Fig. 4.3.3.i is a mis-truth. No typologies of ellipsis could ever amount to a descriptive linguistic statement such as implied by the representational form of Fig. 4.3.3.i. Taking this, again, in systemic functional descriptive terms, organising such ellipsis typologies as systems of distinctions says nothing of the meaningful contrasts available in the grammar which construe different semantic generalisations at the stratum above. Nor does it say anything about the grammatical contrasts which are construed by different phonological (if spoken language) or graphological (if written language) phenomena at the stratum below. And yet this is precisely what the systemic functional description of language as a set of distinctions is meant to achieve. Rather the distinctions of Fig. 4.3.3.i are of a different, non-linguistic descriptive statement sort.

It was said at the very outset of this section that “[t]he ‘relevant information’ [...] is whatever is involved in systematically identifying the occurrence of ellipsis”. In saying this, even at this early point there was already an implied assumption regarding scientificness and so transparency; of these as important requisites in determining what is the ‘relevant information’. Playing devil’s advocate briefly, what is the alternative? A coding scheme resembling the following – suitable, note, given the logic on which CorpusTool coding schemes are based (see section 4.3.1) – could, for example, be adopted in the present project:

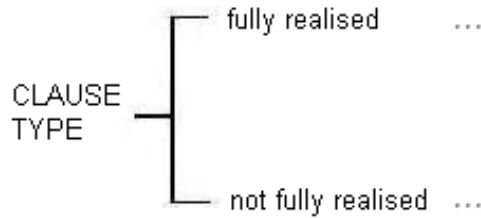


Figure 4.3.3.ii: A basic, intuitive coding scheme for the mark-up of ellipsis

But there are some fundamental shortcomings of such a coding scheme. Chief of these here, the adoption of such a coding scheme would indicate an analysis on the part of the coder which would be rendered invisible. That is, the analysis necessarily conducted on the part of the coder so as to determine whether some structure under study fell into the coding scheme categories of ‘fully realised’ or ‘not fully realised’ would not be open to observation by an on-looking researcher. Rather than being a transparent analysis based on objective criteria, the analysis would be subject to the coder’s intuition, the methods of which, more importantly, would be hidden from the on-looking researcher.

It was said earlier in this section that the organisation of linguistic information relevant to ellipsis could never amount to a descriptive linguistic statement. But we can actually go further than this. If ellipsis is to be scientifically and therefore transparently analysed, as it has just been said it should be, then the ‘relevant linguistic information’ must be described with reference to other, different linguistic phenomena. This point has long been implied in the systemic functional literature by extension of the claim that textual metafunctional phenomena have ‘second-order’ status making the textual metafunction the ‘enabling’ metafunction (e.g. Halliday, 1978: 145). Taverniers (2005) urges the disentanglement of these two characteristics of the textual metafunction, though she confesses they are related (ibid). By ‘second-order status’ it is meant that textual metafunctional phenomena have no reality prior to semiosis. That is, they only exist in the production of meaning making. This is unlike phenomena of the ideational and interpersonal metafunctions which reflect ‘natural reality’ and enact ‘intersubjective reality’ respectively (Matthiessen, 1992: 53). Phenomena of the textual metafunction ‘enable’ phenomena of the ideational and interpersonal metafunctions. That is, textual metafunctional phenomena serve to bring ideational and interpersonal metafunctional phenomena into existence. Or,

considered from the converse perspective, these latter metafunctions are only brought into the existence of semiotic systems like language by the resources of the textual metafunction (e.g. Halliday, 1978: 145; Matthiessen, 1995: 34; etc.).

Matthiessen's (1992) discussion brings the relevance of this wider point to the narrower discussion presently under focus, the one regarding what is the relevant information where the phenomenon of ellipsis is concerned. He writes:

Because of its second-order, enabling nature, the textual metafunction operates in terms of the resources brought into existence by the other metafunctions; this is manifested in lexis (lexical cohesions) as well as in grammar (theme, information, **ellipsis**, etc.).

(Matthiessen, 1992: 54 – my emphasis)

This is a reiteration of the point made above that moreover than it being simply a matter of ellipsis never itself amounting to a linguistic descriptive statement, the relevant linguistic information to a systematic – that is, in the present context, a scientific and transparent – analysis of ellipsis must be defined with reference to other phenomena, ones of a different type. Matthiessen elaborates:

The recognition of this principle helps us explain and deal with the representational problems in modelling the textual metafunction, both with respect to systems and with respect to structures. The second-order nature of the textual metafunction is reflected in many ways: [in, for example...] **[t]he use of interpersonal and ideational structure as a mode of realisation in substitution and ellipsis** [...] Substitution and ellipsis are resources for assigning textual statuses, just like [the systems of] theme and information; more specifically, they serve to indicate contrasts in the context of continuity [...] **The possibilities of ellipsis and substitution depend upon structures generated by the ideational and interpersonal metafunctions.** Thus, once an ideational or interpersonal structure has been established, the textual metafunction can give meaning to the presence and absence of an element of that structure – significantly, the manipulation of presence and absence presupposes the existence of the structure in the first place. [...]

(Matthiessen, 1992: 54-55 – my emphasis)

That is, a case of ellipsis

does not constitute a textual STRUCTURE such as the thematic wave [the consequence/realisation of a traversal in the theme system] or the wave of newsworthiness [the consequence/realisation of a traversal in the information system] [...] but the principle of using ideational and interpersonal structure to create a textual differentiation between prominence and non-prominence is the same”.

(Matthiessen, 1992: 55-56 – my emphasis)

What, then, is the ‘relevant linguistic information’ which should be used to inform the design of a coding scheme for ‘analysing the occurrence of ellipsis of the clause elemental sort’? Two conditions have already been stipulated in this section. Firstly, ‘the relevant linguistic information’ needs to be defined in ideational and interpersonal terms given the nature of ellipsis as a textual metafunctional phenomenon of the ‘second-order’, ‘enabling’ sort. Secondly, ‘the relevant linguistic information’ must amount to an analysis which is objective and so transparent, rather than intuitive and so hidden. These requisite conditions rule out some coding schemes that might otherwise have seemed suitable for the purposes of the present project. The coding scheme given as Fig. 4.3.3.ii above is one such example. But there are certainly a number of coding schemes which would satisfy the important two aforementioned stipulations and which would therefore be appropriate.

The specific approach adopted here is to build a coding scheme based on those features which have associated with them a realisation of the ‘structuring: insertion’ type. That is, in the systemic functional description of language (see section 2.1), many systemic features have associated with them realisations of the inter-axial sort (see section 2.1.3). One type of such inter-axial realisations are ‘structuring: insertion’ realisations. These are the features in language – and most specifically the lexicogrammatical stratum of language – that introduce elements of structure. Traditional schools of thought on language have often, for example, made the distinction between ‘intransitive’, ‘transitive’ and ‘di-transitive’ clauses. These are distinctions based on structural expectation; in this context regarding the presence and/or number of Objects in a clause. With comprehensive systemic functional descriptions of the lexicogrammar (Halliday, 1967-8; Matthiessen, 1995; Halliday & Matthiessen, 2004), those systemic features which carry with them an expectation of

introducing structure have been predicted in detail (e.g. Hasan, 1996: 111). The implementation of such systemic functional descriptions in natural language generation systems (for example, Matthiessen & Bateman, 1991) offers further confidence that their prediction is given on a sound basis. And systemic features which have 'structuring: insertion' realisations associated with them commonly have two characteristics: (i) metafunctionally, they fall within that region of the lexicogrammar which is referred to as the 'experiential' – a sub-type of ideational (see section 2.1.3) – space; and (ii) they occur at broad degree levels of delicacy in lexicogrammatical systems.

The more specific details of the coding scheme will be spelled out in the following section. At this point, it will suffice to re-cap that the 'relevant linguistic information' in the current project must: (i) be given in ideational and interpersonal terms; and (ii) amount to an objective and transparent analysis. With these two conditions satisfied, there are a number of specific ways the coding scheme could be engendered. The decision here is to build a scheme based on those features which have associated with them, as their realisation, the insertion of structure of the clause element type. This is one obvious means by which some kind of objective expectation of a clause's likely structural composition can be determined. And against this 'structural expectation' it can reasonably systematically be asked if a clause attests any instance(s) of ellipsis.

4.3.4. The coding scheme: Relevant information and relevant distinctions

Sections 4.3.2 and 4.3.3 have necessarily handled several theoretical issues necessary with respect to the annotation scheme adopted here. This section simply presents the scheme. The scheme is comprised of four fundamental parts. Firstly, there is an 'entry condition' to the scheme. Suspect structures in the data being analysed must satisfy these conditions to be subjected to analysis in the project. Secondly, there are the experiential and interpersonal lexicogrammatical systemic environments which contain those features having 'structuring: insertion' realisation rules as their consequence. Subjecting suspect structures which have satisfied the 'entry condition' to analysis in such terms is an objective and transparent means of establishing a 'structural expectation' against which all structures analysed can be judged for realisation and, if relevant, ellipsis can be recorded (see the discussion of section 4.3.3 above). The third part of the coding scheme is purely an organisational one. Through the use of systemic 'gates' – systems with one therefore obligatory

term – the second and fourth parts of the scheme are connected. As its function is purely organisational, this third part is not discussed further below. The fourth and final part of the scheme takes the structural expectation determined by the analysis in the second part of the scheme and asks if what is structurally anticipated on the basis of this analysis is actually realised. It does so by translating the combined transitivity and mood analyses into functional structural elements (i.e. ‘Subject’, ‘Operator’, ‘Main Verb’, ‘Complement’ and ‘Complement₂’). As Fawcett (2000: 71-73) has remarked with reference to Halliday’s (1973) earlier work, thinking in terms of these elements allows us to generalise across metafunctionally distinct functional structures (e.g. ‘Subject’ vs. ‘Actor’ vs. ‘Theme’; ‘Complement’ vs. ‘Phenomenon’ vs. ‘New’, etc.) and talk about one unified functional structure. Fig. 4.3.4.i below shows the coding scheme in full. What follows it is a more detailed consideration of each of the first, second and fourth parts of the scheme.

Fig. 4.3.4.ii displays the ‘entry condition’ to the scheme. Recall the remarks from section 4.3.2 above. ‘Entry condition’, in the context of the present CorpusTool coding scheme, is being used by analogy. In the present scheme it functions to determine structures which are subject to the analysis under study. As section 3.1 delimited, it is specifically ellipsis of elements of the unit ‘clause’ that are under study here. As both Matthiessen (1995: 123) from a systemic-functional perspective and Quirk et al. (1985: 719) from a largely atheoretical perspective identify, there are different sorts of clause. As well as the classic ‘free’ (*I’ll have a sandwich*),

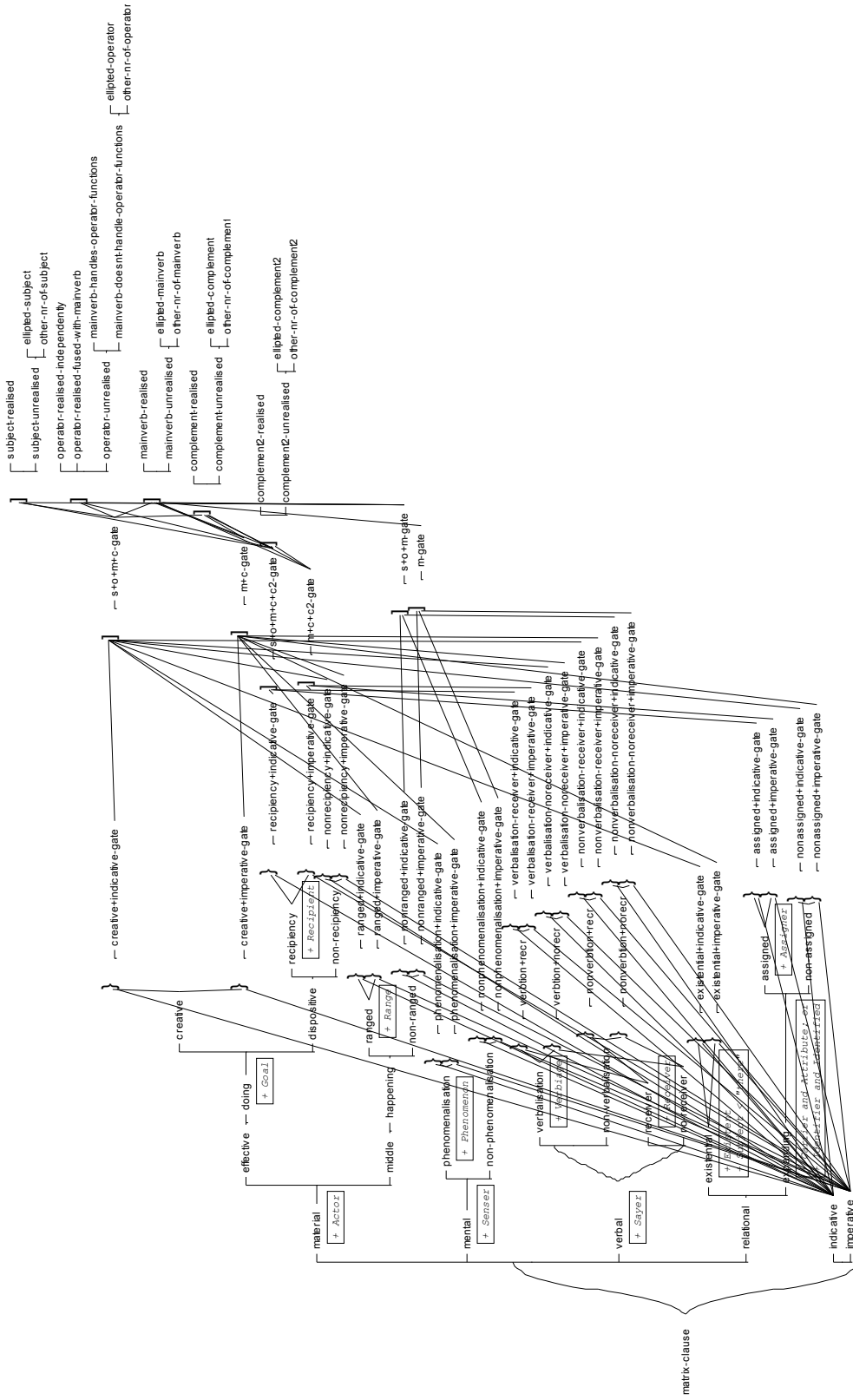


Figure 4.3.4.i: The full coding scheme for the analysis of clause elemental ellipsis

‘co-ordinated’ (*I’ll have a sandwich **and then I’ll do my work***) and ‘sub-ordinated’ (***If I get my work done**, I’ll have a sandwich*) distinction on clause types, there are also ‘embedded’ clauses (*I think **I will have a sandwich***) and an entire sub-set of relative clauses (*I’ll have the sandwich **that’s made with white bread***). Are all to be included here? As systemic functional linguists have shown (Halliday & Hasan, 1976: 29; Matthiessen, 1995: 88; Fawcett, 2000; Halliday & Mattiessen, 2004: 63; etc.), different structural units have different functional potentials. The potential of ellipsis is one such functional potential. Many ‘relatives’ clauses, for example, have a marked thematic structure. The following are examples to illustrate this point drawn from the data of the present project:

- *N’Zogbia whipped in a free kick in the 27th minute **that** [C] **Cech** [S] **gathered** [M] **low** [A]*
- *The second came soon after **which** [C] **he** [S] **enjoyed** [M]*

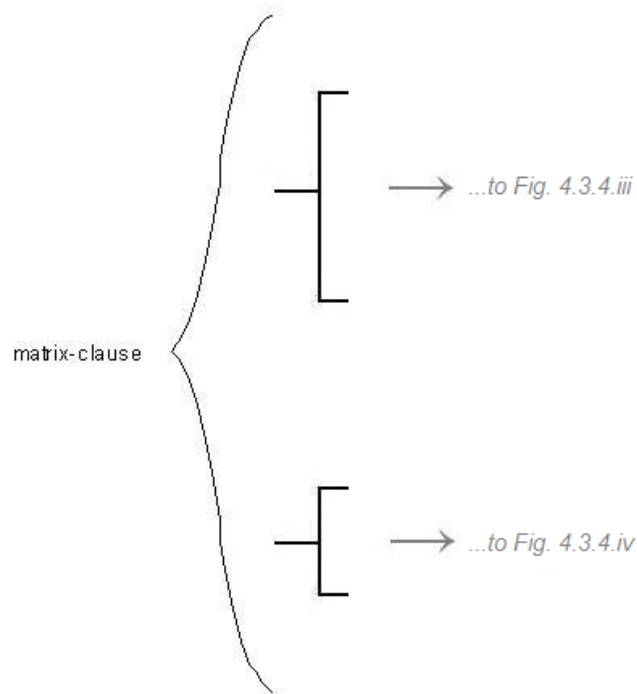


Figure 4.3.4.ii: The ‘matrix clause’ as the ‘entry point’ to the coding scheme

The same is not true of main – or ‘independent’, ‘free’ or ‘matrix’¹⁶ – clauses. Though not impossible, marked thematic structure is much rarer in these clauses. And such different functional behaviours in part characterise different units including different types of the same unit. It is quite reasonable to expect different types of clause to vary for ellipsis potential just as they do in their thematic structure potential. The decision made in this project was to admit to the project only ‘matrix’ clauses. The alternative was to build in a classification of different clause types at this point of entry to the scheme and add it as a variable to the analytical project. It could then have been asked after the analysis if ellipsis in different types of clause behaved in different ways across the mode differentiated datasets. The main reason for deciding against this approach was the fear of reducing observed instances by type to numbers so low they would not render enough examples for statistical calculation at the results stage. The addition of another variable like ‘clause-type’ at the point of entry to the scheme would have had this affect. In choosing to subject to analysis in the scheme only ‘matrix’ clauses, the recognition criteria for this type of clause – so as to distinguish it from other, aforementioned types of clause – was a matter of finiteness. That is, only matrix clauses select freely in the system of MOOD (Matthiessen, 1995: 78-79; 123; 391-393).

On satisfaction of the ‘entry condition’ as just described, what immediately follow are two ‘systems’ of distinctions. That is, two sorts of sets of questions are asked of structures which are permitted to the project, and so subjected to analysis, by their satisfying the conditions of ‘matrix clause’ as ‘entry condition’. One is a matter of the transitivity of clauses and the other a matter of their mood. Why these ‘systems’? To recall two earlier points, ellipsis must be operationalised through reference to interpersonal and experiential phenomena (see section 4.3.2) and a picture of structural expectation can be built up by those ‘features’ which have as their interaxial realisation the insertion of structural elements (see section 4.3.2). The systems of transitivity and mood are simultaneous ‘systems’ in the coding scheme here. To refresh section 2.1.2’s discussion of modelling linguistic descriptions with systemic primacy, ‘simultaneous’ means none of the distinctions in either of these ‘systems’ are ‘dependent’ upon distinctions from the other. Rather, distinctions within the transitivity ‘system’ are mutually exclusive from distinctions in the mood ‘system’ and vice versa and therefore distinctions in transitivity can freely combine with

¹⁶ These four terms – ‘main’, ‘independent’, ‘free’ and ‘matrix’ – are taken to mean the same thing here, as in the works referred to. The last of these, ‘matrix’, is the one preferred for the remainder of this discussion.

distinctions with mood and vice versa. Consequently, it would be entirely logical to present these two ‘systems’ in either order, as neither is prior to the other in the context of the coding scheme. Transitivity is, however, presented first with the presentation of mood following immediately after it.

As was said above, the account adopted here differs in very minor ways from Matthiessen’s (1995). It does so mainly for the reason of favouring the power of generalisation over elegance of detail in description, so as to aid coding simplicity, given the enormity of the present task. Again, recall from section 4.3.3 above that the over-riding important distinctions are those that introduce structural constituents, for these allow us to define what is structurally expected in the clause for the fourth and final stage of the coding scheme. Table 4.3.4.iii below, therefore, is this next part of the coding scheme, the system of transitivity based on Matthiessen (1995).

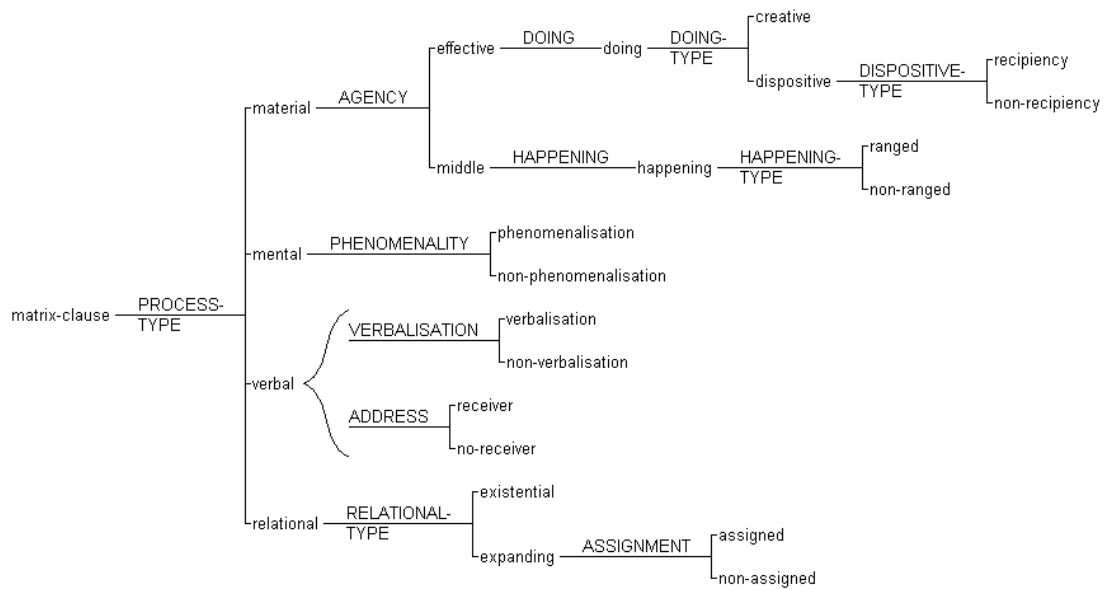


Fig. 4.3.4.iii: A system of TRANSITIVITY for the coding scheme following Matthiessen and based on features with ‘structural insertion’ realisations

Fig. 4.3.4.iii is the entirety of the TRANSITIVITY ‘system’. As a ‘system’, TRANSITIVITY is firstly a choice between four types: ‘material’, ‘mental’, ‘verbal’ and ‘relational’. At this point in delicacy, nothing is determined with respect structural expectation. Let us illustrate the more delicate areas of the TRANSITIVITY ‘system’ part of the coding scheme by discussing just verbal process types. In verbal process types, there are

two simultaneous 'systems' with structural consequences in each. In the VERBALISATION system the choice of 'verbalisation' has the addition of a structural element as its consequence. The alternative choice of 'non-verbalisation' does not result in the addition of any structural elements. Likewise, in the simultaneous 'system' of ADDRESS, the choice of 'receiver' brings about the addition of a structural element but the choice of 'no-receiver' sees no such structural consequence. Because these are simultaneous 'systems', options can freely combine and so 'verbalisation; receiver' verbal clauses will expect two more structural elements than 'non-verbalisation; no-receiver' verbal clauses.

The 'system' of MOOD, simultaneous with TRANSITIVITY, is a far simpler one. It only contains one distinction upon which the insertion of structural elements is dependent. It is the following:

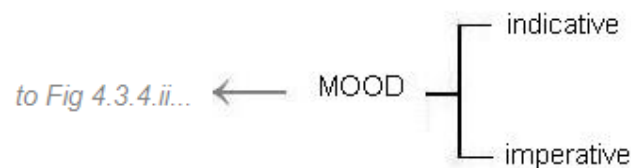


Figure 4.3.4.iv: MOOD-TYPE system for the coding scheme

The selection of 'indicative' renders an expectation of two more structural elements than the selection of 'imperative'. Specifically, these are the elements that shall be introduced below as 'Subject' and 'Operator'. The consequence of 'indicative' in the MOOD 'system' is the expectation of a 'Subject' and an 'Operator'. The consequence of 'imperative' is that there will be neither of the aforementioned structural elements.

Again, the 'systems' of TRANSITIVITY are simultaneous with the 'system' of MOOD. That is, rather than 'features' within either the TRANSITIVITY 'systems' or the MOOD system being dependent on the other, they operate at the same degree of delicacy. Distinctions from within each these simultaneous 'systems' are, therefore, mutually exclusive from each other and so can combine freely. That is, 'relational: expanding: non-assigned', for example, can select either 'indicative' or 'imperative' just as easily in the system of MOOD. And the same is true for any selection of 'features' in the

TRANSITIVITY 'systems'. This point, as indeed the whole of the second part of the coding scheme, is summarised in Table 4.3.4.i below.

| | | Selected features in MOOD system | |
|---|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| | | Indicative | Imperative |
| Selected features in TRANSITIVITY systems | ...creative | <i>I baked a cake.</i> | <i>Bake a cake!</i> |
| | ...reciprocity | <i>I gave her a kiss.</i> | <i>Give me a kiss!</i> |
| | ...non-reciprocity | <i>I gave money.</i> | <i>Give money!</i> |
| | ...ranged | <i>I travel the globe</i> | <i>Travel the globe!</i> |
| | ...non-ranged | <i>I travel</i> | <i>Travel!</i> |
| | ...phenomenalisation | <i>I thought about my family.</i> | <i>Think about your family!</i> |
| | ...non-phenomenalisation | <i>I thought.</i> | <i>Think!</i> |
| | ...verbalisation; receiver | <i>I told him he was wrong.</i> | <i>Tell him he's wrong!</i> |
| | ...verbalisation; no receiver | <i>I expressed my pain.</i> | <i>Express your pain!</i> |
| | ...non-verbalisation; receiver | <i>I told her.</i> | <i>Tell her!</i> |
| | ...non-verbalisation; noreceiver | <i>I shouted.</i> | <i>Shout!</i> |
| | ...existential | <i>There was a man at the door</i> | <i>Be!</i> |
| | ...assigned | <i>The car made him happy</i> | <i>Make him happy!</i> |
| | ...non-assigned | <i>He was happy</i> | <i>Be happy!</i> |

Table 4.3.4.i.: The combination of features from TRANSITIVITY and MOOD systems in the coding scheme, illustrated with examples

The combination of 'feature' selections in these two 'systems' leads us to the next and therefore third stage in the coding scheme. It was said at the outset of this section that this third stage in the coding scheme was purely an organisational one for ensuring the consequence of selections in TRANSITIVITY and MOOD 'systems' lead into the relevant functional structural element 'systems' (see below this section). It was also said above that this organisation, or 'wiring', of the coding scheme was handled through the use of 'gates'. These can be observed as the multitude of lines in Fig. 4.3.4.i above. That these 'gates' and therefore stage three ensures the correct mapping of TRANSITIVITY and MOOD choices to functional structural element 'systems' is all that needs be said here about this stage.

With the organisation of the coding scheme translating the combination of feature selections in the TRANSITIVITY and MOOD 'systems' into the relevant 'systems' corresponding to functional structural elements, the fourth and final stage is simply a

matter of asking if each such element as is relevant to the structure under study is realised or not. The system corresponding to the functional structural element 'Subject' is taken by way of providing an illustration.

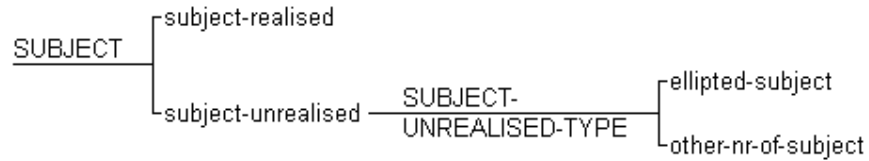


Figure 4.3.4.v: Coding scheme system for charting the realisation of anticipated individual functional-structural elements

As can be seen from Fig. 4.3,4.v the coder's job in the first instance is one of recognising whether or not the functional-structural element in question is realised or not. If realised, nothing more need be recorded and the coder can continue to record the presence or non-presence of subsequent functional-structural elements relevant to the structure under study. If, however, a functional-structural element, such as Subject (Fig. 4.3.4.v), is unrealised, there is then the decision to be made as to whether the omission is so owing to the process of ellipsis or some other type of non-realisation. This is essentially a matter of addressing if the omission satisfies the criteria of ellipsis (see section 3.2).

This section has given a necessarily condensed presentation of the coding scheme. A lot of the complexity of the scheme resides in the wiring of consequences in TRANSITIVITY and MOOD systems into the relevant functional-structural elements so the presence or non-presence of the latter can be considered. This complexity of stage three of the coding scheme is of a computational rather than linguistic kind, however, and its relevance here, therefore, is purely as a by-product of its connecting stages two and four as they have been referred to in this section. Having presented the methodology in quite a detailed fashion across the course of this chapter, we next turn to consider the results from the analysis.

CHAPTER FIVE
WHAT DO PATTERNS OF ELLIPSIS HAVE TO SAY ABOUT THE
CONTEXT-METAFUNCTION HOOK-UP HYPOTHESIS?
THE RESULTS OF ANALYSIS

This chapter presents the results following analysis. The types of analysis conducted on the data (section 4.2) were largely determined by the coding scheme (section 4.3). Previous chapters afforded comprehensive space to the setup of the analysis. To briefly re-iterate the main points in this regard, throughout this project, the following central research question has been implied:

Do patterns of ellipsis observed in datasets of text which are varied along the contextual parameter of 'mode of discourse', but are otherwise in contextual identity, support the predictions of the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis?

Chapter 3 described and defined the textual metafunctional phenomenon of ellipsis as the dependent variable measure of the analytical project. As it was specified there in chapter 3 (see section 3.1), specifically it is ellipsis of elements of the syntactic unit of the clause which are under focus in the current analytical project. Chapter 4, in turn, described the 'mode of discourse' parameter of semiotic context as it is theorised in systemic functional linguistics; 'mode of discourse' accounting for those considerations of context that deal with the role of language in the context of the text. The logic of the analytical project here and the methodology which engenders that logic is, therefore, based on several assumptions. This first such assumption is that the four datasets of the analytical project (see section 4.2, summarised in Table 5.i just below) reasonably represent four contextual values differentiated along a continuum of 'mode' – most ancillary to most constitutive – whilst otherwise being in contextual identity. These four 'mode' values are 'co-observing', 'relay', 'shared' and 'vicarious' and follow Martin's (1992a) theorising of semiotic context for systemic functional linguistics:

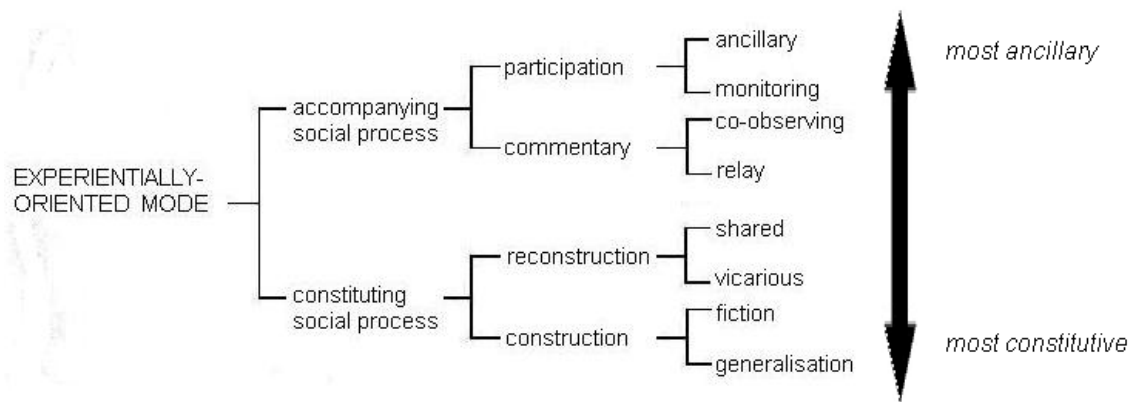


Figure 5.i: Martin’s EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE system as the blueprint for dataset design in the current project

| CORPUS | FIELD | TENOR | MODE |
|------------------------------------|---|---|---|
| TV football commentary | oral transmission: specialised: recreational | STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked | accompanying: commentary: co-observing |
| Radio football commentary | oral transmission: specialised: recreational | STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked | accompanying: commentary: relay |
| Guardian ‘six of the best’ feature | oral transmission: specialised: recreational | STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked | constituting: reconstruction: shared |
| Football newspaper reports | oral transmission: specialised: recreational | STATUS: unequal; CONTACT: distant; AFFECT: unmarked | constituting: reconstruction: vicarious |

Table 5.i: The contextual design attributes of the project’s dataset by sub-corpus

A second important assumption is that of ellipsis as some particular type of linguistic phenomenon. In systemic functional terms generally but certainly in terms of its CMHH specifically, linguistic phenomena are usually categorised by type according to the school’s metafunctional theory. And systemic functional scholars have long treated ellipsis as unproblematically being a matter of the textual metafunction (Halliday & Hasan, 1976; Halliday, 1977; Matthiessen, 1992; Martin, 1992a; etc.; see also section 3.3).

Having briefly re-iterated the logic of the analytical project and its methodology as well as acknowledging some of its assumptions (these all given fuller coverage in chapters 3 and 4), what follows in chapter 5 is organised into four main parts. The first of these characterises the four corpora in terms of some basic descriptive statistics. These calculations are necessary in that they are the basis for more sophisticated calculation that follows. The remaining three sections of this chapter correspond to each one of three different sorts of result following from the analysis (as described in section 4.3) of the data (as described in section 4.2). These are sections 5.2 – 5.4. Firstly, the frequency of ellipsis in each of the four datasets, regardless of type, is calculated and the result's significance discussed (section 5.2). Second to be presented are calculations concerning structural-functional types of ellipsis (section 5.3). Herein both the perspective starting from the structural-functional ellipsis type and the perspective starting from the corpus are considered. That is, the comparable occurrence of each structural-functional type of ellipsis in each of the four corpora is calculated first and then each corpus is characterised in terms of the instances of each structural-functional type it attests. Third and finally, the occurrence of different recoverability-types of ellipsis is considered and then discussed for its significance (section 5.4). The perspective taken in this last section is that of the corpus for reasons which will there become apparent.

5.1. General descriptive statistical profiling of the four corpora

In this section, some basic descriptive statistics are calculated relative to each of the four corpora of the project (see section 4.2). Such calculations are still analytical matters themselves, hence their inclusion here. In the first instance, they allow some characterisation of the project's datasets. This is in itself is valuable and important. Moreover than just this, however, the descriptive statistics presented in this section are necessary because the results of subsequent sections – those of sections 5.2 to 5.4 which are focally concerned with answering the central research question of the project – require the calculations made here. There are two types of 'basic descriptive statistics' offered in the present section. The first concern the size of the four corpora where 'size' is treated in probably its most transparent sense – at least where the data is linguistic – as being a matter of word count. The second set of descriptive statistics relate to the syntactic complexity of the language included in the datasets, at least with respect to the unit of the clause. This set may also be considered a matter relative to size in a slightly extended sense. They are presented in this order and together comprise the remainder of this section.

The four datasets of the present analytical project were presented and discussed at reasonable length in section 4.2. As it was said there, some systematic parts of the texts of some corpora were excluded at the stage of corpus compilation. The reasons for each such sort of exclusion were explained there and so won't be re-iterated here. The consequential size of the four datasets – 'vicarious, football newspaper reports', 'shared, The Guardian *joy of six* feature', 'relay, radio football commentary' and 'co-observing, TV football commentary' – after this initial process of editing are as follows, given in terms of the total number of words:

| Corpus | Original size in words |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| Newspaper reports | 52,209 |
| Joy of six | 51,370 |
| Radio commentary | 12,933 |
| TV commentary | 10,891 |

Table 5.1.i: Initial size of corpora in words

During the processes of analysis proper, a number of reasons led to further editing, this time of each of the four corpora. It is important to distinguish this second set of omissions, which had an analytical motivation, from the first set of omissions, which were conducted at the corpus compilation stage. The latter were excluded on the basis of the a priori judgment of the current author and consequently were never subjected to analysis. The former were excluded precisely for analytical reasons. The total number of words removed through such processes is as follows:

| Corpus | Amount of data removed in words |
|-------------------|--|
| Newspaper reports | 1989 |
| Joy of six | 452 |
| Radio commentary | 831 |
| TV commentary | 810 |

Table 5.1.ii: Omissions from corpora owing to analytically-determined exclusions

Subsequently, this lead to revised totals for each of the corpora, again given in numbers of words, as follows:

| Corpus | Edited size in words |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Newspaper reports | 50,220 |
| Joy of six | 50,918 |
| Radio commentary | 12,102 |
| TV commentary | 10,081 |

Table 5.1.iii: Edited size of corpora in words

Moving on to the descriptive profiling of the four datasets in more explicit linguistic terms, what about the nature of language within each? There are a whole host of such questions that could be asked, as there are even more statistics that could be calculated to offer tentative answers to them. Particularly important for the calculations that are to follow in this chapter (sections 5.2 to 5.4) is some statistical characterisation of the syntactic complexity of the data of the four corpora. Given the clause is the syntactic unit under focus in this project (section 3.1), it is the syntactic complexity of the clause which it is most important to enquire about. Table 5.1.iv below presents the number of clauses in each dataset.

| Corpus | Number of clauses |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| Newspaper reports | 4732 |
| Joy of six | 2856 |
| Radio commentary | 1610 |
| TV commentary | 1337 |

Table 5.1.iv: Number of clauses in corpora

Taking into account that the four datasets are of very different sizes (Table 5.1.iii above), it is hard to draw conclusions from Table 5.1.iv given this lack of comparability. One fairly simple way of allowing for such comparison is to combine the information of Tables 5.1.iii and 5.1.iv and ask what is the average length of a clause in each of the for corpora. Table 5.1.v below provides this calculation.

| Corpus | Average length of clause in words |
|-------------------|--|
| Newspaper reports | 10.61 |
| Joy of six | 17.83 |
| Radio commentary | 7.52 |
| TV commentary | 7.54 |

Table 5.1.v: Average length of clause for each corpus

** Figure rounded up/down to two decimal places*

These are statistics which themselves will allow for comparison. As shall be seen in later sections of this chapter, this ‘average clause length’ statistic is an important one in allowing for the interpretation of other results, those concerned with providing an answer to the central research questions of the project.

5.2. Patterns in the frequency of occurrence of ellipsis per se

This first section presents the most general result: how many cases of ellipsis occurred in each of the four datasets? It is a calculation which treats ellipsis as if one homogenous phenomenon and does not, therefore, acknowledge ellipsis types and the typological variables these imply. Different calculations of this same general result are considered in this section. Table 5.2.i, firstly, presents this result of instances of ellipsis by corpus simply in terms of raw figures:

| Corpus | Instances of ellipsis |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| Newspaper reports | 244 |
| Joy of six | 227 |
| Radio commentary | 269 |
| TV commentary | 304 |

Table 5.2.i: Total number of instances of ellipsis by corpus

Prima facie, there doesn’t appear to be too much in the way of difference between the four corpora for observed occasions of ellipsis. Nor is there any huge difference between any two of these corpora. There is a general trend that the corpus comprised of texts with the most ancillary mode (see Fig. 5.i above) occasion the most occurrences of ellipsis and, conversely, therefore, the corpus comprised of texts

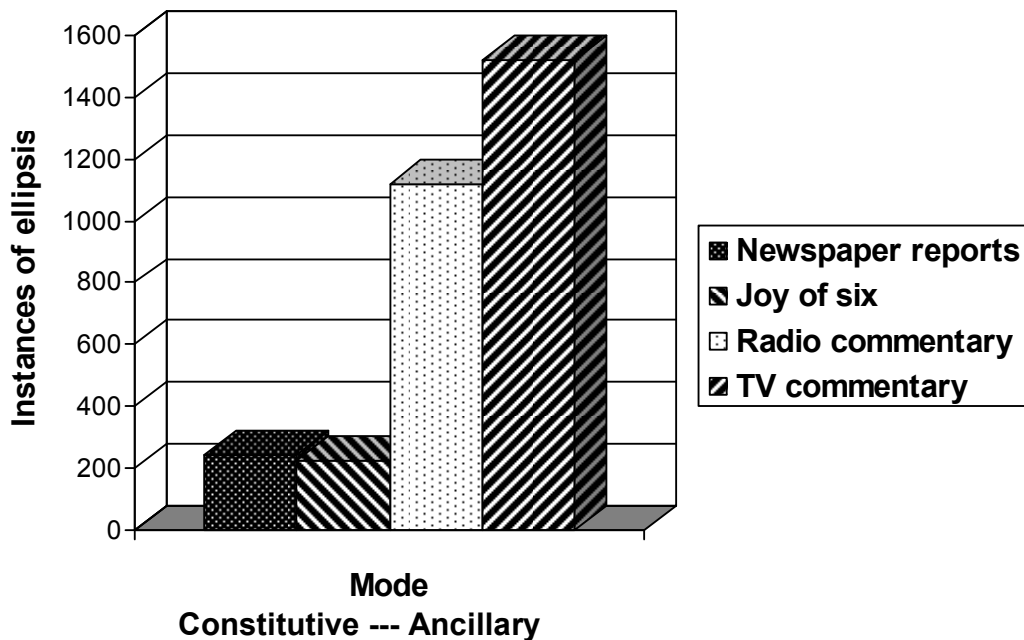
with the most ancillary mode occasion the fewest occurrences of ellipsis. But the trend is not absolute. Namely, the 'joy of six' corpus upsets the linearity of the aforementioned trend. Furthermore, differences between the corpora with respect to this trend appear to not be significant. But such initial interpretations of raw figure data are largely short-sighted and therefore irrelevant. As it was explained in both section 4.2 and then again more explicitly in section 5.1, less data of the type in 'relay, radio football commentary' and 'co-observing, TV football commentary' were included in the corresponding corpora. The reasons for this were explained in the aforementioned sections. To re-iterate in the briefest manner, because these two datasets were made up of spoken language data – where the 'vicarious, football newspaper reports' and 'shared, The Guardian *joy of six* feature' datasets were made up of written language data – the analysis of the former pair was far more labour intensive. Approximately twelve thousand ('radio commentary') and ten thousand ('TV commentary') words of data respectively was all it was feasible to analyse for these two datasets given the limitation of resources in the current project. All of this means that to render a result which allows for fair comparison and subsequent interpretation, the figures need to be normalised. For the sake of simplicity, the figures for 'instances of ellipsis' in both the 'radio commentary' and 'TV commentary' datasets given in Table 5.2.i are normalised upwards for comparison with the fifty-thousand word 'newspaper reports' and 'joy of six' datasets. That is, an assumption is made that the 'instances of ellipsis' results for the 'radio commentary' and 'TV commentary' datasets – based, remember, on the analysis of twelve-thousand and ten-thousand words respectively – would replicate themselves over the analysis of a bigger, fifty-thousand word dataset for each. In addition, the figures for 'instances of ellipsis' in the 'newspaper reports' and 'joy of six' corpora were also adjusted, though only very slightly. As was noted in section 5.1 above, the total size of each of the 'edited' versions of these corpora was marginally in excess of fifty-thousand words (see Table 5.1.iii above). This gives us the following results for 'instances of ellipsis' by corpus:

| Corpus | Instances of ellipsis |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Newspaper reports | 243 * |
| Joy of six | 223 * |
| Radio commentary | 1121 * |
| TV commentary | 1520 |

Table 5.2.ii: Total number of instances of ellipsis by corpus based on the projected analysis of 50,000 words of each dataset

** Figure rounded up/down to a single digit number*

Now all the figures are comparable, a trend certainly does seem to be apparent. A visual re-presentation of this ‘instances of ellipsis by corpus’ result, calculated on the basis of normalised figures, into bar-graph form further emphasises the pattern:



Graph 5.2.i: Instances of ellipsis by corpus based on the projected analysis of 50,000 words of each dataset

Presented in such simple visual terms, there appears to be evidence of a pattern in the results here, one which may provide some suggestion of an answer to the first research question (see above this section); at least in terms of the specifics of the

present project. The results given in Table 5.2.ii and re-presented as Graph 5.2.i suggest a trend thus: the more ancillary a text's context, the more cases of ellipsis it attests and, conversely, the more constitutive a text's context, the fewer cases of ellipsis it attests. There is, of course, one exception to this and it is the 'joy of six' corpus which attests fewer cases of ellipsis than the 'newspaper reports' corpus despite the present methodology's claim that the former represents a more ancillary mode than the latter (see Table 5.i above). More important than the identified sequence alone – which, after all, was present in the raw figure results (see Table 5.2.i) – the 'instances of ellipsis' of different corpora based on normalised figures appear very different. The importance of this aforementioned trend to the research question currently under discussion is fairly evident: it suggests some degree of support for the predictive strength of the 'mode of discourse – textual metafunction' strand of the CMHH following Martin's (1992a) systemic description of mode. The conservative partialness of the 'some degree of' of the last sentence is made in at least two respects. Firstly, stronger support required a sequence in the results such that the most cases of ellipsis occurred in the 'TV commentary' corpus, the next most in the 'radio commentary' corpus, and so on with the fewest cases of ellipsis in the 'newspaper reports' corpus. But the fewest cases of ellipsis actually occurred in the 'joy of six' corpus, even with the figures normalised (see Table 5.2.ii). This anomaly aside, the occurrence of ellipsis appeared to be responsive to those aspects of context under study as the project's independent variable (again, see Table 5.i above). Secondly, the present analysis and project only consider the textual metafunctional phenomenon of ellipsis. A huge number of other textual metafunctional phenomena would have to be observed evidencing similar trends before it could really be said that there was firm support for the predictive strength of the 'mode of discourse – textual metafunction' strand of the CMHH.

There is reason for a further, third calculation in this section. Though it is to be made with respect to the same figures which have so far been the topic of this section, where the two previous calculations are different versions of the same fundamental calculation, this third one is actually a calculation of a different kind. Tables 5.2.i and 5.2.ii above are absolute figure calculations which show the 'total number of instances of ellipsis'. Importantly, they consider only what is being counted not the conditions under which it is being counted. The proposed third calculation is one of frequency. The two aforementioned calculations differ from a true frequency calculation which requires comparable environments between datasets, or at least the assumption of such comparable environments following from statistical

normalisation. It might at first be thought that this was precisely the purpose of the calculation given in Table 5.2.ii which normalised the datasets in terms of size by word count. But this step is not sufficient to claim comparable environments between the different datasets of the analytical project here when it is considered exactly what is being counted in the analysis in the present analytical project. In profiling the four datasets in basic descriptive statistical terms, it was observed in section 5.1 that they differed to greater and lesser degrees in the average word length of their clauses (Table 5.1.v above). As it was in section 5.1, such a difference is a matter of the stylistics of the texts which the four separate corpora are comprised of. But it also has an indirect effect when interpreting results like those in Table 5.2.ii. What if, using some hypothetical numbers for argument's sake, it was the case that there were four times as many clauses in the 'radio commentary' corpus as in the 'newspaper reports' corpus despite their identical size in terms of word count? Under such a scenario, would it still really be the case that ellipsis was roughly four times as frequent in the 'radio commentary' corpus as in the 'newspaper reports' corpus, as Table 5.2.ii appears to suggest? Or would it actually be the case that ellipsis was approximately as frequent in each as in the other? Let us consider the processes involved in omission by ellipsis for a minute. The picture is clearer if illustrated with a particular functional-structural type of ellipsis, let us say Subject-only ellipsis (for example, *Liverpool trailed 3-0 at half time **but still won**; I ran the first thirteen miles **but walked the last thirteen***; etc.). The ellipsis of a clause's Subject can only happen in any given corpus as many times as there are clauses; not as many times as there are X amount of words. That is, if there are one hundred clauses in a corpus, Subject-only ellipsis can only occur a maximum of one hundred times. If two datasets contain a vastly different number of clauses – even if they are the same size in their total number of words – then the one with more clauses is, other matters aside, likely to attest more cases of ellipsis than the other. In sum, ellipsis is a matter of the clause, not of some arbitrary number of words. A frequency calculation of ellipsis, therefore, should be made by calculating ellipsis's occurrence per X number of clauses in any dataset. Doing so rules out potentially confounding variables which contribute to the average clause length in some dataset.

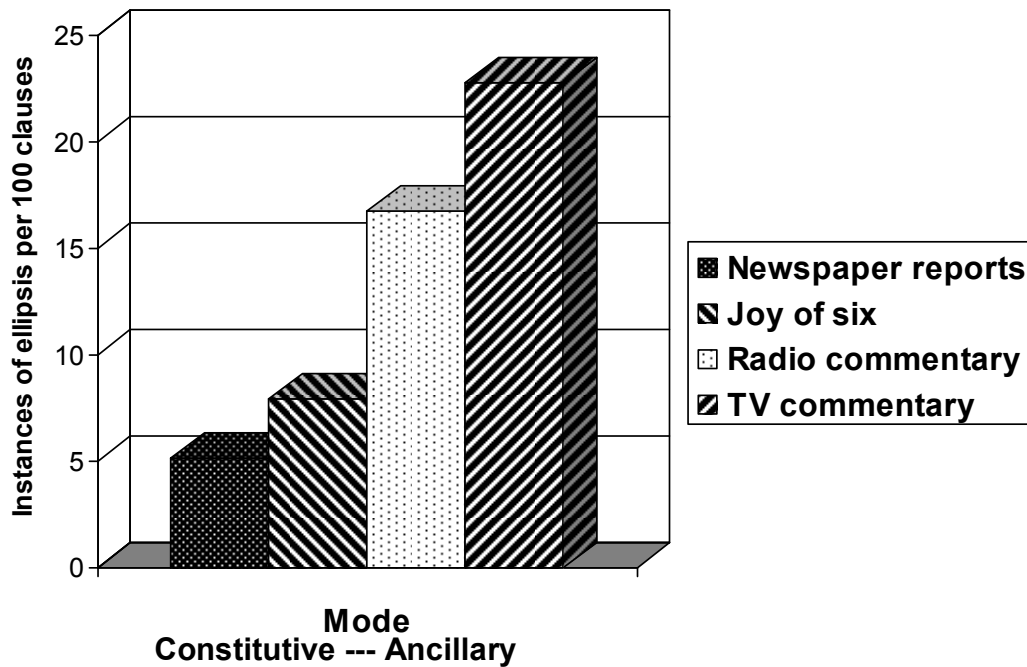
Table 5.2.iii below calculates the 'instances of ellipsis' per one-hundred clauses for each dataset and therefore indicates its frequency in the aforementioned corpora.

| Corpus | Instances of ellipsis per 100 clauses |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Newspaper reports | 5.16 |
| Joy of six | 7.95 |
| Radio commentary | 16.71 |
| TV commentary | 22.74 |

Table 5.2.iii: Frequency of ellipsis by corpus calculated per one-hundred clauses

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

As before, this can also be re-presented visually in bar-graph form as Graph 5.2.ii below:



Graph 5.2.ii: Frequency of ellipsis by corpus calculated per one-hundred clauses

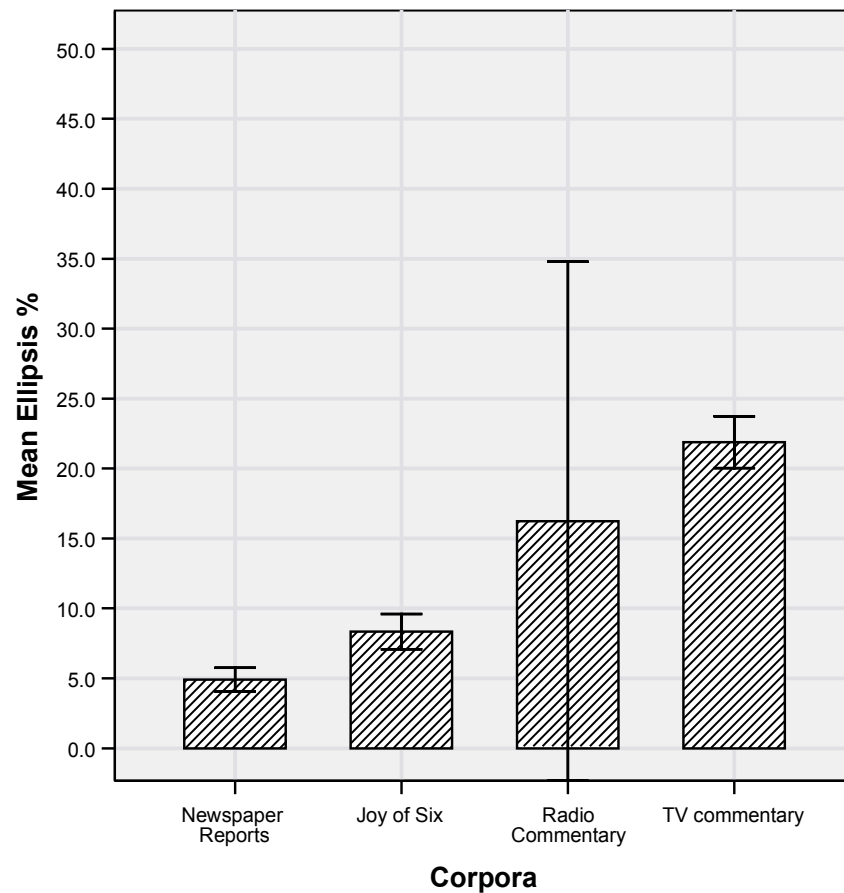
The results of this re-interpreted, 'frequency' calculation of 'instances of ellipsis by corpus' are important. They substantiate Table 5.2.ii's initial suggestive support for the predictive strength of the CMHH. But are such observed trends significant by statistical measures?

'Statistical significance' ensures the likelihood that two measurements differ by chance is held to an acceptable, probabilistically tolerable and therefore low level. Traditionally, social scientists have accepted a minimum level of 0.05, represented as $p < 0.05$ (Wonnacott & Wonnacott, 1985: 261). Using such a rubric, the probability that a statistically significant event is recorded by chance is thus less than one in twenty (5/100). As the probability (p) value is reduced, so is the likelihood that any observed difference is due to chance. Therefore, $p < 0.001$ means that the probability of a chance result is less than one in one thousand. Following the convention of the social sciences, 0.05 is the probability level for significance adopted in the present project. Consequently, the probability of a Type I error – that is, falsely rejecting the null hypothesis – is less than or equal to five percent.

To assess the statistical significance of contextual mode – as embodied in the dataset design – on the occurrence of ellipsis, a One-way Independent Analysis of Variance (ANOVA) was conducted. Analysis of Variance is a statistical test which will suggest whether an observed difference in the occurrence of ellipsis between contextual-mode differentiated corpora is the result of random chance or the indication of a relationship between ellipsis and contextual mode. It does so by taking into account the variation between different groups, here sub-corpora, but also the variation within each of those groups. As different sub-corpora comprise different numbers of texts, and these of varying lengths, the occurrence of ellipsis in the texts of any single sub-corpus – the 'within groups' variation – was calculated by dividing the instances of ellipsis by the number of clauses and multiplying the result by one hundred. This, indeed, mirrors the calculation of the 'between groups' variation (cf. Graph 5.2.ii and Table 5.2.iii above). The result is a percentage of ellipsis per text – a proportional calculation – so as to ensure that all texts in the four different sub-corpora are comparable. Levene's Test of Homogeneity of Variances confirmed that the necessary assumptions for an ANOVA had been met with the present dataset.

Graph 5.2.iii below re-iterates the sub-corpora mean averages for ellipsis and, furthermore, indicates something of the variation within groups. The error bars, indicating the span plus or minus two standard errors from the mean, demonstrate the confidence level of the claim that the means – shown by the bars themselves – represent the true patterned occurrence of ellipsis in the sub-corpus in question. The error bar for the 'radio commentary' sub-corpus overlaps the range of values for the other sub-corpora. This may well be explained by the relatively low number of texts constituting this sub-corpus. The consequence of such an overlap is that it lowers the

confidence that the means between this and other sub-corpora do indeed differ significantly. There are, however, no overlapping error bars between the remaining three sub-corpora, meaning that there can be greater confidence that the difference in the occurrence of ellipsis between these sub-corpora is significant.



Graph 5.2.iii: Mean and standard error calculations for instances of ellipsis per se by sub-corpus

The result of the ANOVA confirms the aforementioned observations. There was a highly significant main effect of sub-corpora $F(3,120) = 34.2, p < 0.001, MSE = 14.2$, indicating that the null hypothesis, that instances of ellipsis will not differ between the four sub-corpora and that the means in the different 'conditions' will be equal, can be confidently rejected.

In order to determine which of the means significantly differed from each other, Tukey's Honestly Significant Difference test was conducted in order to make multiple pairwise comparisons. The results are shown in Table 5.2.iv. These comparisons help identify which sub-corpora attest significant difference from which other sub-corpora.

| Sub-corpus | Sub-corpus | Mean difference | Standard error |
|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 'Newspaper reports' | 'Joy of six' | -3.4** | 0.80 |
| | 'Radio commentary' | -11.3** | 2.7 |
| | 'TV commentary' | -17.0** | 1.9 |
| 'Joy of six' | 'Newspaper reports' | 3.4** | 0.8 |
| | 'Radio commentary' | -7.9* | 2.8 |
| | 'TV commentary' | -13.5** | 2.0 |
| 'Radio commentary' | 'Newspaper reports' | 11.3** | 2.7 |
| | 'Joy of six' | 7.9* | 2.8 |
| | 'TV commentary' | -5.6 | 3.3 |
| 'TV commentary' | 'Newspaper reports' | 17.0** | 1.9 |
| | 'Joy of six' | 13.5** | 2.00902 |
| | 'Radio commentary' | 5.6 | 3.26863 |

* The mean difference is significant at the 0.05 level

** The mean difference is significant at the 0.01 level

Table 5.2.iv: ANOVA post-hoc multiple pairwise comparisons for ellipsis per se by sub-corpus

The results in Table 5.2.iv again identify that there is a scaled increase in ellipsis in the sub-corpora along the 'ancillary-constitutive' continuum, with the 'newspaper reports' sub-corpus having on average the fewest instances of ellipsis, and 'TV commentary' sub-corpus the most. The 'newspaper reports' sub-corpus had significantly fewer instances of ellipsis compared to all other sub-corpora. The 'joy of six' sub-corpus had significantly fewer instances of ellipsis than the 'radio commentary' and 'TV commentary' sub-corpora. The 'TV commentary' sub-corpus had on average the most cases of ellipsis. However, the difference in means between the 'TV commentary' and 'radio commentary' sub-corpora was not significant.

Returning to the interpretation of these results, the present frequency calculation offers a greater level of support for the CMHH following Martin's (1992a) systemic

description of 'mode' than Table 5.2.ii and Graph 5.2.i do. Two comments in this regard need to be added here. Firstly, Table 5.2.ii reveals a trend of instances of ellipsis in the data in which the order between corpora the CMHH would predict is abided by in its entirety (cf. Table 5.2.ii). In interpreting ellipsis as a matter of frequency and in so doing eradicating the confounding variable of clause length, the most cases of ellipsis occur in the 'TV commentary' corpus, the next most in the 'radio commentary' corpus, and the fewest cases of ellipsis in the 'newspaper reports' corpus. The 'joy of six' corpus no longer upsets the linearity in the occurrence of ellipsis that the CMHH would predict by evidencing the fewest cases of ellipsis. Instead, it attests more cases of ellipsis than the 'newspaper reports' corpus. A second point it is important to note with respect Table 5.2.iii and Graph 5.2.ii concerns the re-interpretation of the difference between, on the one hand, the 'newspaper reports' and 'joy of six' corpora and, on the other, the 'radio commentary' and 'TV commentary' corpora. Table 5.2.ii and Graph 5.2.i revealed an apparent difference in the occurrence of ellipsis between the two aforementioned pairs of corpora with comparatively little difference between the partner datasets of each of these pairs. One conclusion which might be drawn from this result is that there exists a difference between the two pairs of corpora which is a variable of importance in the occurrence of ellipsis far out-weighting any such apparent differences between either of these pairs of datasets. One such powerful explanatory variable might be, for example, the spoken – written distinction. This is indeed a difference in evidence between the two commentary corpora and the 'newspaper reports' and 'joy of six' corpora. Moreover, the 'spoken – written' distinction has long been suggested as an over-riding factor in the occurrence of ellipsis (Biber et al., 1999; Quirk et al., 1985). Thompson (1999; 2010) has even suggested the aforementioned distinction largely engenders the possibility of ellipsis in the first place. Table 5.2.iii, however, casts doubt on such a conclusion which Table 5.2.ii might have suggested preferable. The former validates semiotic distinctions – the basis of Martin's (1992a) 'mode' description and the blueprint of the dataset design here – as being as relevant as material ones, such as 'spoken vs. written', in the occurrence of ellipsis. That is, when ellipsis is considered a matter of frequency, the differences between each of the four datasets is reasonably uniform along the implied 'ancillary-constitutive' continuum. This aspect of the above result suggests Martin's (1992a) 'ancillary-constitutive' continuum has some basis, at least in respect of the textual metafunctional phenomenon of ellipsis.

As an aside related to the last point, it is necessary at this point to make a retrospective comment regarding Graphs 5.2.i and 5.2.ii. The X-axis of both implies the four datasets together and in this order represent an ‘ancillary-constitutive’ mode continuum. This is a somewhat speculative claim. As it was earlier said (see discussion of section 4.1), Martin’s (1992a: 520) systemic account of ‘mode’ is a prediction in need of validation or revision following falsification; such testing being one of the main objectives of the present work. So caution needs to be taken in reading the aforementioned graphs. Even tentative support that the contextual values of the datasets of this project (see Fig. 5.i and Table 5.i above) represent such a continuum requires results in the analytical project here which support Martin’s (ibid) predictions for systematising a description of mode.

As it was said at the outset of this chapter, the substantial effort of previous chapters was geared towards setting up an analytical project and methodology which could provide an answer to the research question, *do patterns of ellipsis observed in datasets of text which are varied along the contextual parameter of ‘mode of discourse’, but are otherwise in contextual identity, support the predictions of the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis?*. The most ‘general’ result as discussed in this section suggests statistically significant support for the predictive strength of the CMHH following Martin’s (1992a) systemic description of ‘mode’. But what about the results of the analysis of more specific types of ellipsis? Do they corroborate the support for the CMHH which the results of this section appear to offer? Or do they offer no such support and consequently does this logically lead to a re-interpretation of just what significance the results of this section really do offer?

5.3. Patterns in the occurrence of functional-structural types of ellipsis

In this section, the focus is the results following from the analysis of ‘functional-structural’ types of ellipsis. The coding scheme was designed such that it allowed for the recording of the specific functional-structural type of any instance of ellipsis. This was explained in the explicit discussion of the coding scheme in section 4.3. To recap briefly from section 4.3, by ‘functional-structural type of ellipsis’ it is meant which functional-structural elements – Subject, Operator, Main Verb, etc. – have been omitted through the processes common to ellipsis (see chapter 3). Functional-structural types of ellipsis might be single elements or the combination of more than one such element. That is, the combination of more than one functional-structural element omitted through a process of ellipsis is treated as one complex functional-

structural type, not simultaneously one instance of several single element functional-structural types. For example, the second clause of *He was playing every game and scoring every week* is an example of the 'Subject+Operator' functional-structural type of ellipsis, not an example of each 'Subject' and 'Operator' functional-structural types of ellipsis. The classification of 'functional-structural' types of ellipsis is, theoretically, as follows:

'Subject-only', 'Subject+Operator', 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb',
 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb', 'Subject+Operator/Main
 Verb+Complement', 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb+Complement',
 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb+Complement+Complement₂',
 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb+Complement+Complement₂',
 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb+Complement₂', 'Subject+Operator+Main
 Verb+Complement₂', 'Subject+Main Verb', 'Subject+Main
 Verb+Complement', 'Subject+Main Verb+Complement+Complement₂',
 'Subject+Main Verb +Complement₂', 'Subject+Complement', 'Subject+
 Complement+Complement₂', 'Subject+Complement₂', 'Operator-only',
 'Operator/Main Verb', 'Operator+Main Verb', 'Operator/Main
 Verb+Complement', 'Operator+Main Verb+Complement', 'Operator/Main
 Verb+Complement+Complement₂', 'Operator+Main
 Verb+Complement+Complement₂', 'Operator/Main Verb+Complement₂',
 'Operator+Main Verb+Complement₂', 'Operator+Complement',
 'Operator+Complement+Complement₂', 'Operator+Complement₂', 'Main
 Verb-only', 'Main Verb+Complement', 'Main
 Verb+Complement+Complement₂', 'Main Verb+Complement₂',
 'Complement-only', 'Complement+Complement₂' and 'Complement₂-only'

But in truth, a good number of these types are only marginally acceptable (e.g. 'Operator-only' ellipsis in the second clause of *I would start an argument and he finish it?*) and yet others probably impossible (e.g. *he had bought me wine and she a cake** as a 'Operator+Main Verb+Complement' ellipsis equivalent of the full form *he had bought me wine and she had bought me a cake*) owing to issues of grammaticality, even if determined on functional and social criteria. Below are some examples to illustrate some of these functional-structural types of ellipsis. The emboldened clause is the one attesting the instance of ellipsis in question. These examples are drawn from the analysis of the present project. As will be discussed

below in this section, these are some of the more frequently occurring functional-structural types in the data:

- **Subject-only ellipsis:**
 - *...but Jo lost his footing **and shot tamely at Jussi Jaaskelanien...***
 - *Gael Givet had stolen a march on the Chelsea striker **but seized by panic slid in the own goal;***
 - *Between 1948 and 1953, they won three Scottish titles and **were pipped at the death to another two...***
 - *Matt Busby was a particular fan, **and would often take his Manchester United side up north to play in hotly contested friendlies***

- **Subject+Operator ellipsis:**
 - *He was neat and tidy **and determined to get forward at every chance;***
 - *Ferguson was fined £20,000 **and given a four-match touchline ban;***
 - *He would stroll up **and, with his body leaning back like a broken Subbuteo player, simply caress the ball with the instep...***
 - *He would crouch down so that the keeper could not see him, **and then bend the ball so viciously that it was a surprise Uri Geller didn't claim credit for it***

- **Subject+Operator/Main Verb ellipsis:**
 - *That typified Blackburn's delivery. **Worse than the Royal Mail;***
 - *Nothing left to say, avoiding maybe the temptation to text Joleon Lescott, or throw another dart at the Manchester City crest. **A moral victory over Mark Hughes perhaps***

- **Operator+Main Verb ellipsis:**
 - *How would United respond? **And Rooney for that matter;***
 - *he's gone past one **and the striker by another***

- **Operator/Main Verb ellipsis:**
 - *The atmosphere was electric, **the noise deafening;***

- *the fans are delirious with joy (1.0) their manager just anxious to get his instructions across to his players*
- **Main Verb-only ellipsis:**
 - *Some things came off, **some didn't**;*
 - *...if you come at the king, you best not miss. **Zico certainly didn't***

Table 5.3.i below presents the number of instances of each functional-structural type of ellipsis by the corpus in which they appeared.

| Functional-structural type of ellipsis | Newspaper reports | Joy of six | Radio commentary | TV commentary |
|---|--------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| S-only | 159 | 118 | 109 | 130 |
| S+O | 19 | 12 | 23 | 22 |
| S+O/M | 23 | 39 | 59 | 58 |
| S+O+M | 5 | 7 | 9 | 10 |
| S+O/M+C | 2 | 3 | 6 | 9 |
| S+O+M+C | 4 | 3 | 10 | 16 |
| S+O+M+C+C | - | 3 | 3 | 2 |
| S+M | 5 | 6 | 8 | 9 |
| S+M+C | 4 | 4 | 9 | 12 |
| S+M+C+C | - | 2 | 2 | 1 |
| S+C | - | 1 | - | - |
| O-only | - | 2 | - | 1 |
| O/M | 11 | 3 | 12 | 16 |
| O+M | 1 | - | 3 | 2 |
| O/M+C | - | 1 | - | 1 |
| O+M+C | - | 1 | - | - |
| M-only | 6 | 7 | 8 | 6 |
| M+C | 1 | 8 | 3 | 2 |

Table 5.3.i: Instances of all functional-structural ellipsis types classified by corpus

Some areas of potential interest suggest themselves immediately: that 'Subject-only' ellipsis is by far the most prominent functional-structural type; that the 'newspaper reports' corpus attests a far fewer number range of functional-structural types than do other corpora; that some specific functional-structural types appear to follow the trend

identified in the last section with respect ellipsis per se (e.g. ‘Subject+Operator/Main Verb’ ellipsis, ‘Subject+Main Verb’ ellipsis); that other types evidence exactly the opposite trend (e.g. ‘Subject-only’ ellipsis); and so on. But to go down such paths in interpreting this raw figure data is unsystematic. There is a vast wealth of detailed and complex data here. How can it be interpreted in an accurate and systematic fashion? Essentially, this is a matter of what calculation or calculations should be used to interpret the data here.

Adopting raw figure data such as given in Table 5.3.i above is not particularly useful. Consider Tables 5.3.ii and 5.3.iii below, for example, which calculate the number of instances of ‘Subject-only’ and ‘Main Verb-only’ functional-structural types of ellipsis on the basis of raw figures.

| Corpus | Instances of Subject-only ellipsis by corpus |
|-------------------|---|
| Newspaper reports | 159 |
| Joy of six | 118 |
| Radio commentary | 109 |
| TV commentary | 130 |

Table 5.3.ii: Instances of Subject-only ellipsis by corpus using raw figures

| Corpus | Instances of Main Verb-only ellipsis by corpus |
|-------------------|---|
| Newspaper reports | 6 |
| Joy of six | 7 |
| Radio commentary | 8 |
| TV commentary | 6 |

Table 5.3.iii: Instances of Main Verb-only ellipsis by corpus using raw figures

It is very difficult to conclude much from this raw figure data. ‘Subject-only’ ellipsis appears to be most frequent in the ‘newspaper reports’ corpus. And there appears to be little differences between any of the corpora for the occurrence of ‘Main Verb-only’ ellipsis. But what was learned in the last section tells us that the full picture is not given in such raw figures comparisons. That is, the opportunity for any functional-structural type of ellipsis is dependent on how many clauses a particular dataset

contains. And section 5.1 (see Table 5.1.v there) exposed such rapid differences between the four corpora of the present project.

It was for such reasons that in that last section it was argued that the most useful calculation for the occurrence of ellipsis was one based on frequency. To use the same calculation to produce results regarding functional-structural types of ellipsis, however, would return little of additional value or insight. That is, the adoption of a calculation of occurrence based on frequency in the last section revealed the influence of the internal characteristics of dataset in determining the occurrence of ellipsis. There ellipsis was studied regardless of type and treated as if one homogenous phenomena. No other variables were under study. Asking the same fundamental question of more specific types of ellipsis in this section is likely to be unrevealing in two respects. Firstly, the chief conclusion likely to be drawn from the results following such a calculation will be tantamount to that conclusion drawn in the last section: the influence of the dataset in determining ellipsis. Second and perhaps more importantly, to use a calculation of frequency is likely to disguise other results intended to be the genuine focus of this section. Without having multiple variables under test in the last section, this wasn't a problem. The only variable being measured was the occurrence of ellipsis per se. But this section has as its topic two variables each with multiple values: corpus ('newspaper reports', 'joy of six', 'radio commentary', 'TV commentary') and functional-structural types of ellipsis (see above for a classification of these). Both variables and all their values want to be considered in this section if something meaningful is to be said about the occurrence of different functional-structural types in different corpora of the analytical project. But one or both of these variables will be suppressed if occurrence is here treated as a matter of frequency. This reservation can be demonstrated by calculating the occurrence of some specific functional-structural types of ellipsis by a measure of frequency. Table 5.3.iv below shows the frequency of occurrence of 'Subject-only' ellipsis at a ratio of per one-thousand clauses in each corpus.

| Corpus | Instances of Subject-only ellipsis per 1000 clauses |
|-------------------|--|
| Newspaper reports | 33.60 |
| Joy of six | 41.32 |
| Radio commentary | 67.70 |
| TV commentary | 97.23 |

Table 5.3.iv: Frequency of Subject-only ellipsis by corpus calculated per one-thousand clauses

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

Table 5.3.iv offers the same calculation but made with respect 'Main Verb-only' ellipsis, again at a ratio of per one-thousand clauses of each corpus:

| Corpus | Instances of Main Verb-only ellipsis per 1000 clauses |
|-------------------|--|
| Newspaper reports | 1.27 |
| Joy of six | 2.45 |
| Radio commentary | 4.97 |
| TV commentary | 4.49 |

Table 5.3.v: Frequency of Main Verb-only ellipsis by corpus calculated per one-thousand clauses

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

The influence of the nature of the dataset, particularly the size and therefore frequency of clauses in each corpus, largely clouds other patterns that may otherwise be rendered visible. That is, such calculations as those in Tables 5.3.iv and 5.3.v tell us little more than re-iterate the fact that ellipsis is more frequent in the more ancillary corpora and therefore less frequent in the constitutive corpora. Instead, the sorts of questions this section is really seeking answers for are: does a functional-structural type occur in one or two corpora markedly more or less frequently than in others?; is a functional-structural type's occurrence uniform across all corpora?; do different corpora evidence different sorts of functional-structural types; do some corpora, for example, attest a great number of different functional-structural types where others only attest a few such types?; and so on. Tables 5.3.iv and 5.3.v cannot offer answers to such questions. To offer answers to such questions requires statistical

calculations of the relativity sort, ones that neutralise the differences between datasets. Here, simple percentage calculations will be used to achieve such a goal. In so doing, both the perspective starting from the individual functional-structural type of ellipsis and the perspective starting from the corpus are taken, as explained at the start of this chapter. They are covered in the aforementioned order.

First, then, the occurrence of each 'functional-structural' type of ellipsis is considered across all four datasets. Let us begin by clarifying what is meant by 'the perspective starting from the individual functional-structural type of ellipsis' which is potentially misleading. By 'the perspective starting from the individual functional-structural type of ellipsis', it is not the case that the occurrence of a structural-functional type is calculated as a proportion of that same type's occurrence in all the data. This is certainly a fair reading of 'the perspective starting from the individual functional-structural type of ellipsis' but it is not what is intended. Such a calculation would be problematic in that it would not 'neutralise relevant differences between datasets' as it was put above. That is, the different number of clauses evidenced in the different corpora (Table 5.1.v) would not be accounted for and would, therefore, influence the results of such a calculation. Instead, '...starting from the individual functional-structural type of ellipsis' involves calculating the proportional occurrence of the functional-structural type under study as a proportion of all instances of ellipsis in that corpus. Doing this for the functional-structural type in question across all four corpora gives a set of results which can fairly be compared without the influence of the confounding variables just noted. This would allow us to observe, for example, if 'Subject-only' ellipsis accounts for 50% of the cases of ellipsis in the 'newspaper corpus' but only 10% in the 'TV commentary' corpus. In sum, 'the perspective starting from the functional-structural type of ellipsis' is perhaps not the most transparent label given the proportion in such a calculation is a matter of the individual corpus in question.

Above in this section, all theoretically possible functional-structural types of ellipsis were enumerated and stated. Of those, the following are attested in the data. That is, they occur at least once in at least one of four corpora:

'Subject-only', 'Subject+Operator', 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb',
'Subject+Operator+Main Verb', 'Subject+Operator/Main
Verb+Complement', 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb+Complement',
'Subject+Operator+Main Verb+Complement+Complement₂', 'Subject+Main

Verb', 'Subject+Main Verb+Complement', 'Subject+Main Verb+Complement+Complement₂', 'Subject+Complement', 'Operator-only', 'Operator/Main Verb', 'Operator+Main Verb', 'Operator/Main Verb+Complement', 'Operator+Main Verb+Complement', 'Main Verb-only', 'Main Verb+Complement', 'Complement-only'

But of these, the following occur infrequently in one or more of the corpora to the extent that the data did not offer numbers amounting to something even approaching a stable sample size of these types for the purposes of statistical calculation (see Table 5.3.i above):

'Subject+Operator/Main Verb+Complement', 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb+Complement', 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb+Complement+Complement₂', 'Subject+Main Verb+Complement', 'Subject+Main Verb+Complement+Complement₂', 'Subject+Complement', 'Operator-only', 'Operator+Main Verb', 'Operator/Main Verb+Complement', 'Operator+Main Verb+Complement', 'Main Verb+Complement',

To undertake the kind of statistical calculations adopted below in this section requires twenty instances per variable and value (Hinton, 2004: 55); that is, a return of twenty instances of each type in each of the four corpora. All of the above types fail to meet this criterion. Indeed, strictly speaking, so do some of those types included for statistical calculation in this section. But at least these begin to approach satisfaction of the criterion. This leaves the following eight functional-structural types which are discussed in the first half of this section where the perspective is that starting from the functional-structural type:

'Subject-only', 'Subject+Operator', 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb', 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb', 'Subject+Main Verb', 'Operator/Main Verb', 'Main Verb-only', 'Complement-only'

Let's consider each of these in the above order. 'Subject-only' ellipsis, by far the greatest functional-structural type of ellipsis in all four corpora, accounts for the following proportions of each of the four corpora:

| Corpus | The proportion of S-only ellipsis as a % of all functional-structural types in each corpus |
|-------------------|---|
| Newspaper reports | 65.12 |
| Joy of six | 51.97 |
| Radio commentary | 40.51 |
| TV commentary | 42.75 |

Table 5.3.vi: The proportional occurrence of Subject-only ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

Now the calculation is one that allows for genuine comparison, there appears to be a trend in evidence here, namely: the more constitutive a text's context, the greater the proportion of all its instances of ellipsis are of the 'Subject-only' type. There is, of course, one exception to this trend: the 'TV commentary' corpus has a greater proportion of 'Subject-only' ellipsis than does the 'radio commentary' corpus. Faced with a particular functional-structural type of ellipsis, it is harder to know just what significance and conclusion to draw from such a trend than it was to do the equivalent in respect of the frequency of occurrence of ellipsis per se in the last section. For one thing, why the observed direction in the trend for 'Subject-only' ellipsis? Why not the reserve direction which would have been in keeping with the trend of the occurrence of ellipsis per se by corpus? Is, perhaps, the trend currently under discussion actually a consequence of some more primary result; for example, the fact that more ancillary texts attest more different functional-structural types of ellipsis? What seems to be clear is that there is a trend roughly reflecting the linearity of the 'constitutive-ancillary' continuum of 'mode', even if the reasons for why this should be so are hard to determine.

Moving on to 'Subject+Operator' ellipsis, Table 5.3.vii below offers the result of calculating this functional-structural type of ellipsis as a proportion of all functional-structural types in each of the four corpora.

| Corpus | The proportion of S+O ellipsis as a % of all functional-structural types in each corpus |
|-------------------|--|
| Newspaper reports | 7.79 |
| Joy of six | 5.28 |
| Radio commentary | 8.55 |
| TV commentary | 7.23 |

Table 5.3.vii: The proportional occurrence of Subject+Operator ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

Three observations are immediately apparent. Firstly, the occurrence of ‘Subject+Operator’ as a proportion of all functional-structural types is far less frequent in all corpora than the proportional occurrence of the ‘Subject-only’ type (Table 5.3.vi). Although it had to be given the size of the proportional occurrence of ‘Subject-only’ ellipsis in all corpora, the proportional occurrence of ‘Subject+Operator’ ellipsis is vastly less frequent. A second observation is the lack of a trend in line with the proposed ‘constitutive-ancillary’ continuum of mode assumed to exist between the corpora given their design. This might be explained by the return of so few observed instances of ‘Subject+Operator’ ellipsis in each of the datasets. Thirdly, although the proportional occurrence of ‘Subject+Operator’ ellipsis in the four corpora is subtly different, it is still similar enough to suggest that the four corpora might be behaving in a comparable way with respect functional-structural types. This in turn would suggest one of or both two things. Either the responsiveness of ellipsis to contextual mode differences happens at only a general level and/or Martin’s (1992a: 520) systemic description of mode – the blueprint of the overall corpus design here – is not accurate in some of its finer details. Again, however, against such speculations, remarks regarding the small numbers used as the basis for statistical calculation need be borne in mind. And the consideration of more functional-structural types might also help determine answers to such questions.

Table 5.3.viii below shows the proportional occurrence of the ‘Subject+Operator/Main Verb’ functional-structural type in each of the four corpora.

| Corpus | The proportion of S+O/M ellipsis as a % of all functional-structural types in each corpus |
|-------------------|--|
| Newspaper reports | 9.42 |
| Joy of six | 17.18 |
| Radio commentary | 21.93 |
| TV commentary | 19.08 |

Table 5.3.viii: The proportional occurrence of Subject+Operator/Main Verb ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

Comparing Table 5.3.viii with Table 5.3.v.ii, the 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' type of ellipsis has a greater proportional occurrence than the 'Subject+Operator' type in all four corpora. Again, 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' ellipsis is far less frequent than 'Subject-only' ellipsis (cf. Table 5.3.vii). Whereas there appeared to be no trend of linearity in the results for the 'Subject+Operator' type, such a trend does seem to be in evidence with 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' ellipsis. Stating this specifically, the more ancillary a text's context, the more cases of 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' ellipsis. There is, however, one exception to such a trend. The proportional occurrence of 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' ellipsis in the 'TV commentary' corpus is less frequent than it is in the 'Radio Commentary' corpus. Absolute evidence of the aforementioned trend would require the opposite to be the case. This trend is one in reverse of that noted with respect 'Subject-only' ellipsis (Table 5.3.vi) above. And as noted above in considering the proportional occurrence of 'Subject-only' ellipsis by corpus, it is not easy to find a reason in explanation of a trend such as the one noted here. Bringing the two trends together, why should they point in different directions? Is there really something about 'Subject-only' ellipsis which means it is more likely to occur in constitutive contexts, even though ellipsis per se has been observed to occur more frequently in ancillary contexts? And likewise, is there anything about 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' ellipsis which would explain why it responds to the ancillary nature of contextual mode? Are these results just chance? The 'chance' explanation is certainly less likely where the outcome of the present calculation is a roughly linear trend as it is with 'Subject-only' (Table 5.3.vi) and 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' (Table 5.3.viii) types than it is with a non-linear result like that seen with 'Subject+Operator' ellipsis (Table 5.2.vii). Similarly, the more

results of the former type and the less of the latter type is yet further refutation of a 'chance' explanation.

The next two types are presented together as similar conclusions can be drawn from each. Table 5.3.ix below shows the proportional occurrence of the 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb' functional-structural type in each of the four corpora and Table 5.3.x likewise for the proportional occurrence of the 'Subject+Main Verb' type.

| Corpus | The proportion of S+O+M ellipsis as a % of all functional-structural types in each corpus |
|-------------------|--|
| Newspaper reports | 2.05 |
| Joy of six | 3.08 |
| Radio commentary | 3.35 |
| TV commentary | 3.29 |

Table 5.3.ix: The proportional occurrence of Subject+Operator+Main Verb ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

| Corpus | The proportion of S+M ellipsis as a % of all functional-structural types in each corpus |
|-------------------|--|
| Newspaper reports | 2.05 |
| Joy of six | 2.64 |
| Radio commentary | 2.97 |
| TV commentary | 2.96 |

Table 5.3.x: The proportional occurrence of Subject+Main Verb ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

Like with 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' ellipsis (Table 5.3.viii), there is some suggestion of a trend in 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb' and 'Subject+Main Verb' types such that the more ancillary a text's context, the more cases of each these type

of ellipsis. Again, as with ‘Subject+Operator/Main Verb’ ellipsis, the proportional occurrence in the ‘TV commentary’ corpus of both ‘Subject+Operator+Main Verb’ and ‘Subject+Main Verb’ types is the exception to the linearity of the aforementioned trend. But given that the proportional occurrence across corpora of both these types is based on number of instances as low as five, seven, nine, and ten (for the ‘Subject+Operator+Main Verb’ type) and five, six, eight, and nine (for the ‘Subject+Main Verb’ type), any conclusions drawn need to be so extremely tentatively. As was said above, the usual sample figure for statistical calculations is twenty (Hinton, 2004: 55). Given this calculation is based on numbers far less frequent than this, there should be serious doubt cast over how much use the above result really is. This note of caution applies equally well to the succeeding three functional-structural types.

Table 5.3.xi presents the calculated proportional occurrence of the ‘Operator/Main Verb’ functional-structural type of ellipsis in all four corpora.

| Corpus | The proportion of O/M-only ellipsis as a % of all structural-functional types in each corpus |
|-------------------|---|
| Newspaper reports | 4.50 |
| Joy of six | 1.32 |
| Radio commentary | 4.49 |
| TV commentary | 5.26 |

Table 5.3.xi: The proportional occurrence of Operator/Main Verb ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

The chief observation with respect the proportional occurrence of ‘Operator/Main Verb’ is the apparent lack of a trend according with the ‘constitutive-ancillary’ continuum of mode which is assumed to pertain between the four corpora. In this way, ‘Operator/Main Verb’ ellipsis is similar to ‘Subject+Operator’ ellipsis. The proportional occurrence of ‘Operator/Main Verb’ ellipsis across corpora is similar enough to weigh somewhat against the evidence of previous functional-structural types which suggested either one or both: (i) ellipsis’s responsiveness to context even at the more delicate level of ellipsis types; and/or (ii) the predictive strength of the CMHH following Martin’s (1992a: 520) systemic description of the contextual

parameter of mode. The aforementioned said, there appears to be, however, a marked proportional occurrence of the ‘Operator/Main Verb’ type in the ‘joy of six’ corpus. Of course, with such a small number of instances, an alternative reading might be that the marked proportional occurrence of this type is actually that in the ‘newspaper reports’ corpus and this otherwise hides a trend such that the more ancillary the text’s context, the more cases of ellipsis of this functional-structural type. Again, this is the drawback of calculating statistical measurements on such small numbers of instances.

Table 5.3.xii below presents the proportional occurrence of the ‘Main Verb-only’ type of ellipsis across the four corpora.

| Corpus | The proportion of M-only ellipsis as a % of all structural-functional types by corpus |
|-------------------|--|
| Newspaper reports | 2.46 |
| Joy of six | 3.08 |
| Radio commentary | 2.97 |
| TV commentary | 1.97 |

Table 5.3.xii: The proportional occurrence of Main Verb-only ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

If the proportional occurrence of ‘Main Verb-only’ does reveal a trend in line with the ‘constitutive-ancillary’ continuum of mode then it is in the direction counter that which most functional-structural types discussed here have appeared to reveal. That is, the more constitutive a text’s context the more cases of ‘Main Verb-only’. The only other type appearing to suggest linearity in accordance with the ‘constitutive-ancillary’ continuum pointing in this direction is ‘Subject-only’ ellipsis. As it was said when discussing ‘Subject-only’ ellipsis above, this goes against the expectation set up following section 5.2 discussion of ellipsis per se and, indeed, against the predictions of the CMHH too. But the calculated proportional occurrence of ‘Main Verb-only’ ellipsis in the ‘newspaper reports’ corpus adds doubt to the reality of the aforementioned trend, as do, again, the small numbers of instances upon which Table 5.3.xii is calculated.

The final functional-structural type to be considered in adopting the perspective starting from the functional-structural type is 'Complement-only' ellipsis. Table 5.3.xiii below shows the proportional occurrence of this type in all corpora of the project.

| Corpus | The proportion of C-only ellipsis as a % of all structural-functional types by corpus |
|-------------------|--|
| Newspaper reports | 1.65 |
| Joy of six | 3.08 |
| Radio commentary | 1.86 |
| TV commentary | 2.30 |

Table 5.3.xiii: The proportional occurrence of Complement-only ellipsis by corpus calculated as a percentage

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

Again the figures are as low as to cause concern over the value of such a calculation and, particularly, concluding significant amounts from it. There does not appear to be any trend with respect the implied 'constitutive-ancillary' continuum reflected in the sequence of corpora. Two potential conclusions that could be drawn from such an apparent result exist. It could be said that the lack of sufficient instances mean an underlying trend is not revealed. Conversely, as has previously been mused in the apparent lack of a trend with previous functional-structural types, this result may raise doubt over one or both ellipsis's contextual sensitivity and/or Martin's (1992a: 520) systematising of mode.

All those functional-structural types of ellipsis which, given the size of the data, it has been anywhere near feasible to subject to statistical calculation have now been considered. In those above discussions, it has been said several times that this shortcoming on numbers for such types as presently under focus is, sadly, a limitation of this project. It is also a challenge in studying ellipsis itself (Clarke, 2007). As well as those functional-structural types discussed above, a great number more such types occurred in the data but could not be considered statistically given their limited numerical occurrence. For the remainder of this section, the alternative perspective starting from the corpus – rather than the functional-structural type – is taken. That is, it is asked of each of the four corpora in turn what proportion of each functional-structural type they attest. After considering each such corpus,

characterised in terms of the functional-structural types of ellipsis it attests, the four corpus-profiles serve as the basis for analytical comparison. This complementary perspective on the dataset as Table 5.3.i makes up for the aforementioned omissions to a degree.

Table 5.3.xiv starts by re-interpreting the earlier Table 5.3.i, calculating the original instantial figure for each functional-structural type as a percentage of all functional-structural types in the same corpus.

| Functional-structural type of ellipsis | Newspaper reports | Joy of six | Radio commentary | TV commentary |
|---|-------------------|------------|------------------|---------------|
| S-only | 65.16 | 51.98 | 40.52 | 42.76 |
| S+O | 7.79 | 5.29 | 8.55 | 7.24 |
| S+O/M | 9.43 | 17.18 | 21.93 | 19.08 |
| S+O+M | 2.05 | 3.08 | 3.35 | 3.29 |
| S+O/M+C | 0.82 | 1.32 | 2.23 | 2.96 |
| S+O+M+C | 1.64 | 1.32 | 3.72 | 5.26 |
| S+O+M+C+C | - | 1.32 | 1.12 | 0.66 |
| S+M | 2.05 | 2.64 | 2.97 | 2.96 |
| S+M+C | 1.64 | 1.76 | 3.35 | 3.95 |
| S+M+C+C | - | 0.88 | 0.74 | 0.33 |
| S+C | - | 0.44 | - | - |
| O-only | - | 0.88 | - | 0.33 |
| O/M | 4.51 | 1.32 | 4.46 | 5.26 |
| O+M | 0.41 | - | 1.12 | 0.66 |
| O/M+C | - | 0.44 | - | 0.33 |
| O+M+C | - | 0.44 | - | - |
| M-only | 2.46 | 3.08 | 2.97 | 1.97 |
| M+C | 0.41 | 3.52 | 1.12 | 0.66 |

Table 5.3.xiv: Proportional occurrence of all functional-structural ellipsis types classified by corpus and calculated as a percentage

Note: All figures rounded up/down to two decimal places

Charts 5.3.i to 5.3.iv not only re-present this information visually as pie charts, one corresponding to each corpus, but also allow us to home in on each single corpus before considering them all in the context of each other for comparative purposes. Chart 5.3.i below, firstly, presents the ‘newspaper reports’ corpus characterised in

terms of the functional-structural types of ellipsis it attests as proportions of the corpus.

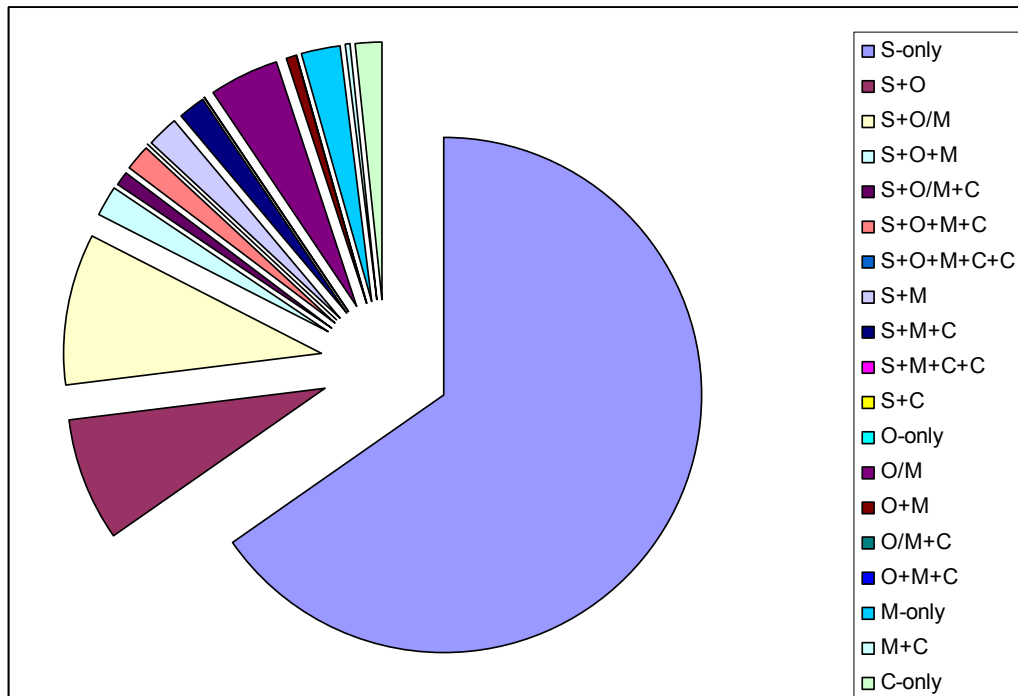


Chart 5.3.i: Proportions of functional-structural types of ellipsis in 'newspaper reports' corpus

Several observations are immediately evident. Most obviously, Chart 5.3.i reinforces the overwhelming occurrence of 'Subject-only' ellipsis in the corpus (see Table 5.3.vi above and the remarks corresponding to it). In these visual terms, clearly two-thirds approaching three quarters of the corpus is comprised of 'Subject-only' ellipsis. Secondly, three more types are reasonably visible. These are 'Subject+Operator', 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb' and 'Operator/Main Verb' types. All other functional-structural types in evidence in the 'newspaper reports' corpus occur extremely infrequently; each accounts for less than two and a half percent of the corpus (see Table 5.3.xiv just above). As shall be seen in considering subsequent corpora in comparable terms, the 'newspaper reports' corpus returns notably fewer functional-structural types of ellipsis than do all other corpora; thirteen of the thirty-six theoretically possible types of which nineteen are attested across the entire data of the present project.

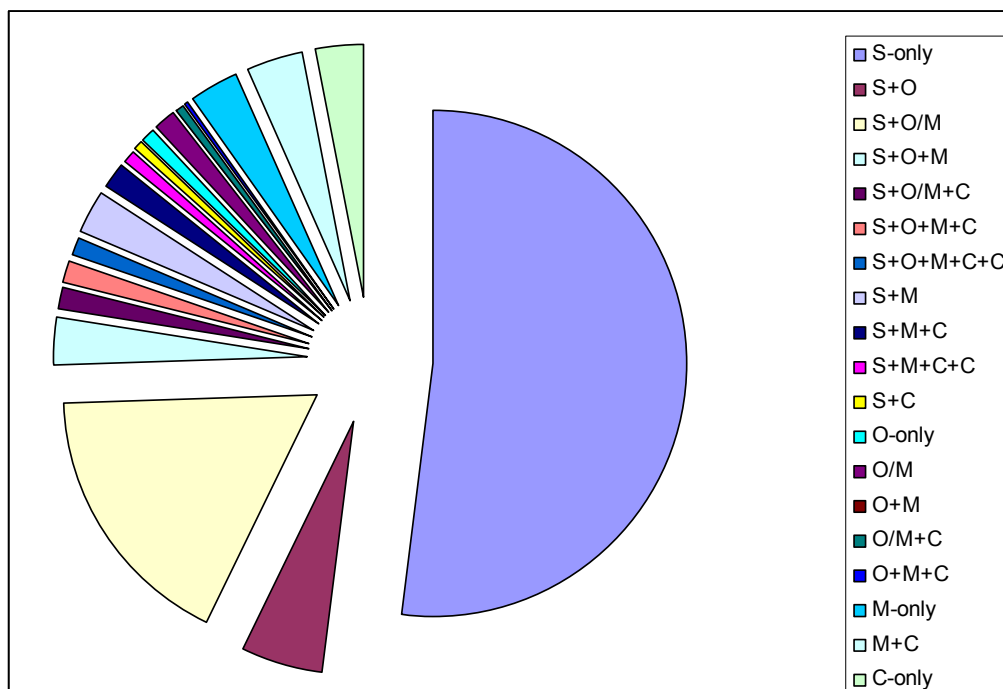


Chart 5.3.ii: Proportions of functional-structural types of ellipsis in 'joy of six' corpus

Chart 5.3.ii reveals the 'joy of six' corpus's much great accumulation of functional-structural types when compared against the profile of the 'newspaper reports' corpus given as Chart 5.3.i. Further colours (e.g. mid blue, bright pink, yellow) are in observation, these reflecting types the inclusion of functional-structural types (e.g. 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb+Complement+Complement₂', 'Subject+Main Verb+Complement+Complement₂', 'Subject+Complement' types) not in the 'newspaper reports' corpus. There is also both a noticeable reduction in the dominance of 'Subject-only' and 'Subject+Operator' types and yet a noticeable increase in the proportional occurrence of 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' ellipsis in the present corpus as compared to the 'newspaper reports' corpus (again, see Chart 5.3.i above). There is evidently a large degree of similarity between the functional-structural type profiles of the 'newspaper reports' and the 'joy of six' corpora and yet some characteristics unique to each.

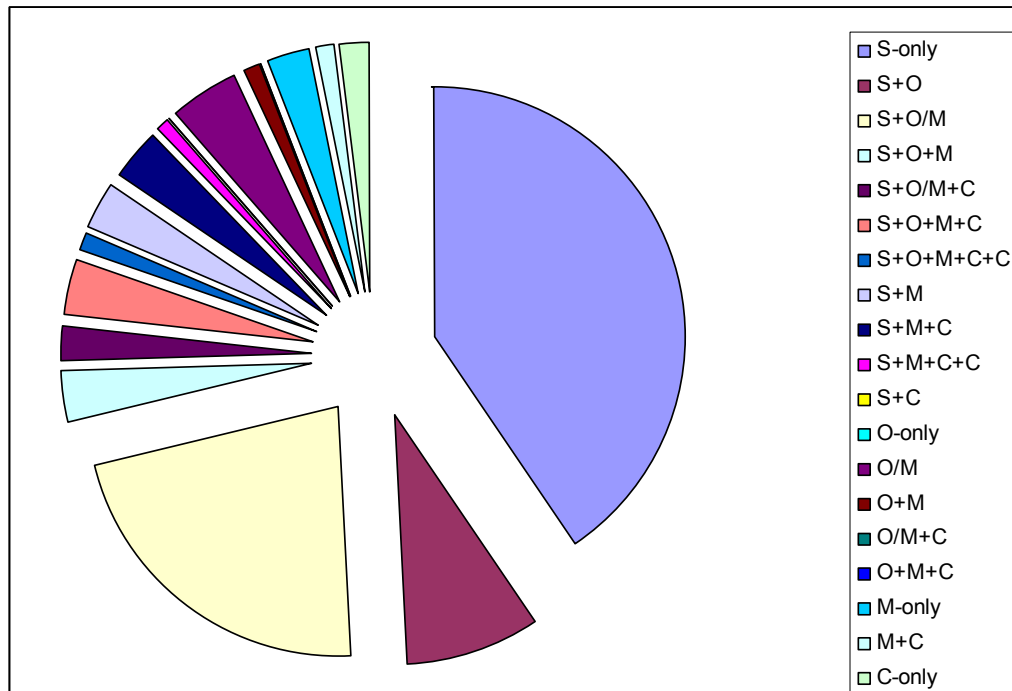


Chart 5.3.iii: Proportions of functional-structural types of ellipsis in 'radio commentary' corpus

Chart 5.3.iii above presents the characterisation in functional-structural types of the 'radio commentary' corpus. The profile of the 'radio commentary' corpus in these functional-structural terms exaggerates many of the differences observed in moving from the 'newspaper reports' corpus to the 'joy of six' corpus to yet a further degree. Specifically, 'Subject-only' ellipsis, though still by far the most frequent functional-structural type, is proportionally less frequent than in the aforementioned corpora and, conversely, 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' ellipsis is yet more proportionally frequent than in those two previous corpora. Of course, such a trend suggests that the overall characterisation of functional-structural types, ignoring differences between specific types therein (cf. Table 5.3.vi and Table 5.3.viii), supports the linearity theorised in Martin's (1992a: 520) 'constitutive-ancillary' mode continuum as well as the design of the present dataset to reflect this continuum. Further observations may be made which do not add support to the last point. Chart 5.3.iii reveals that the 'radio commentary' corpus attests a smaller range of functional-structural types than the 'joy of six' corpus. In this way it more closely resembles the 'newspaper reports' corpus. Finally, of those functional-structural types aside from 'Subject-only', 'Subject+Operator' and 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb' types which the 'radio commentary' corpus evidences, it does so in larger proportions than the 'joy of

six' corpus did. Most of these types each represent in excess of three per cent of the 'radio commentary' corpus but less than one and a half per cent in the 'joy of six' corpus. These last two observations consequently challenge the aforementioned speculation of linearity.

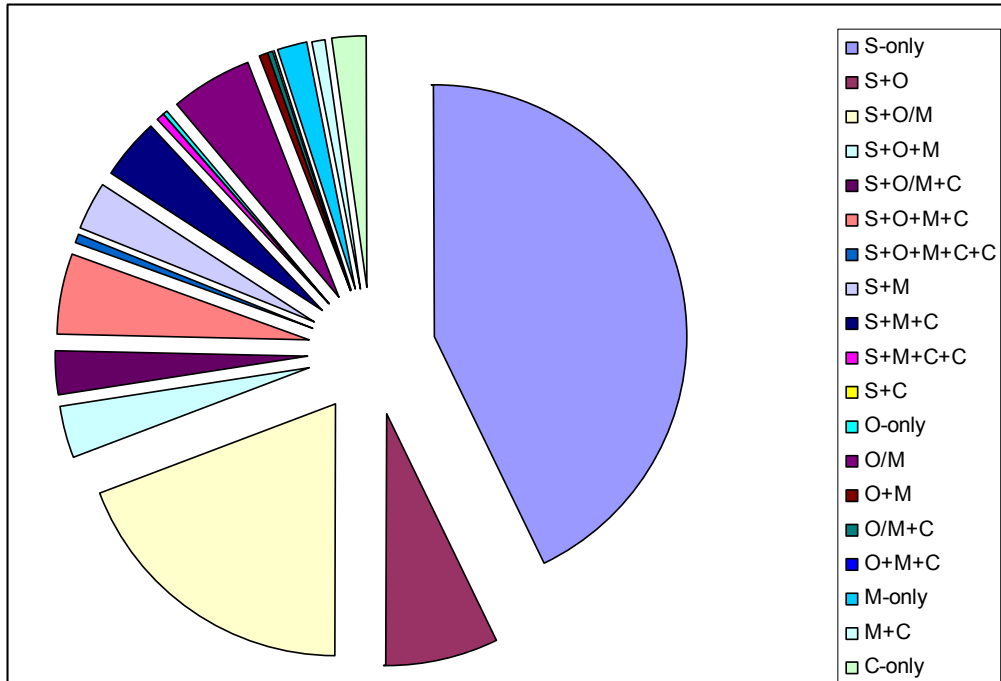


Chart 5.3.iv: Proportions of functional-structural types of ellipsis in 'TV commentary' corpus

Chart 5.3.iv offers a profile for the final, 'TV commentary' corpus in terms of the proportional occurrences of its functional-structural types. Again, 'Subject-only' ellipsis is the predominant functional-structural type with 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' and 'Subject+Operator' ellipsis occurring next most often in the corpus in proportional terms. Like the 'joy of six' corpus, a good number of other functional-structural types occur in the 'TV commentary' corpus and infrequently so. As discussed above, some results relative to the previous three corpora appear to have constituted a trend in support of either or both the linearity of a 'constitutive-ancillary' continuum and/or the ability of the present data to reflect such a continuum. Further support for the trend would require the continuity of such patterns in the present, 'TV commentary' corpus. But the results of the proportional occurrences of functional-structural types in the 'TV commentary' corpus actually see a regression of the aforementioned patterns. That is, 'Subject-only' ellipsis is more proportionally

frequent in the 'TV commentary' corpus than it is in the 'radio commentary' corpus and 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' ellipsis is less proportionally frequent here than it is in the 'radio commentary' corpus. Consequently, this leaves a question mark against the aforementioned trend and so queries either or both ellipsis's responsiveness to more detailed aspects of context and/or the predicative strength of Martin's (1992a: 520) systematising of mode. Finally, although a number of subtle differences between the functional-structural types of some of these four corpora have been noted, at a broad level they also show a great degree of similarity. All corpora have 'Subject-only', 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' and 'Subject+Operator' as their most proportionally frequent functional-structural types of ellipsis and in that order. All corpora also show infrequent occurrence of a number of similar other functional-structural types. One reading of this uniformity across corpora is a suggestion of stability in the corpus design. Although the CMHH predicts there would be differences between the occurrence of ellipsis across the four corpora of the project, it predicts this difference to be of a principled and systematic, rather than erratic, sort. Principled, systematic difference entails a large degree of similarity.

Two further observations should be added now that all corpora have been characterised in terms of the functional-structural types they include (Charts 5.3.i – 5.3.iv). Firstly, if a certain sub-set of functional structural types are recognised and grouped together, a further trend in the linearity of a 'constitutive-ancillary' continuum (following Martin, 1992a: 520) can be observed. The following functional-structural types can be grouped together as being, potentially, examples of 'clausal ellipsis' (Halliday & Hasan, 1976: 196-225; Halliday, 1994: 318-321):

'Subject+Operator/Main Verb', 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb',
 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb+Complement', 'Subject+Operator+Main
 Verb+Complement', 'Subject+Operator+Main
 Verb+Complement+Complement₂', 'Subject+Main Verb', 'Subject+Main
 Verb+Complement', 'Subject+Main Verb+Complement+Complement₂'

By 'clausal ellipsis' (ibid) it is meant that the elliptical structure (see section 3.1 for this terminology) of a case of ellipsis is the entirety of clause elements aside from Adjuncts, which are defined by their grammatical optionality. Such Adjuncts are things like markers of polarity, modality and circumstances. Examples like the emboldened parts of the following, invented exchanges would, therefore, be classed as cases of 'clausal ellipsis'.

- [A] *Are you going out tonight!?*
[B] **Probably;**
- [A] *When are you travelling to Cardiff?*
[B] **Tomorrow**
[A] *Are you sure?*
[B] **Yes!**

The <proportional occurrence of the aforementioned functional-structural types which it was said can act, potentially, as instances of clausal ellipsis (ibid) are given in Table 5.3.xv. The proportional figures are given as percentages. The table lists these calculations for each individual functional-structural types and then, in the final ‘total’ row, as one whole, ‘clausal ellipsis’ type.

| Functional-structural type of ellipsis | Newspaper reports | Joy of six | Radio commentary | TV commentary |
|---|-------------------|-------------|------------------|---------------|
| S+O/M | 9.43 | 17.18 | 21.93 | 19.08 |
| S+O+M | 2.05 | 3.08 | 3.35 | 3.29 |
| S+O/M+C | 0.82 | 1.32 | 2.23 | 2.96 |
| S+O+M+C | 1.64 | 1.32 | 3.72 | 5.26 |
| S+O+M+C+C | - | 1.32 | 1.12 | 0.66 |
| S+M | 2.05 | 2.64 | 2.97 | 2.96 |
| S+M+C | 1.64 | 1.76 | 3.35 | 3.95 |
| S+M+C+C | - | 0.88 | 0.74 | 0.33 |
| TOTAL | 17.63 | 29.5 | 39.41 | 38.49 |

Table 5.3.xv: The proportional occurrence of ‘clausal ellipsis’

Table 5.3.xv shows that clausal ellipsis corresponds fairly closely to the linearity of Martin’s (1992a: 520) ‘constitutive-ancillary’ continuum. It would suggest that clausal ellipsis, therefore, is responsive to the role of language in text. There is, however, a caveat to offer in considering this trend. Some examples of some of the types included as **potential** types of clausal ellipsis might not actually have an elliptical structure which is a clause. The emboldened co-ordinated clause of the following invented case of ‘Subject+Operator+Main Verb’ ellipsis, for example, is not a case of clausal ellipsis (Halliday & Hasan, 1976: 196-225; Halliday, 1994: 318-321) as it does not attest the intransitive sense of ‘live’.

- *I’ve lived abroad **and in Britain***

That is, it has a realised obligatory functional-structural element (i.e. its Complement).

The second additional observation it is important to note here concerns the number of different functional-structural ellipsis types in the four corpora. These do not form a linear trend in support of the predicative strength of Martin's (1992a: 520) systematising mode along a 'constitutive-ancillary' continuum. Either alternatively, or at the same time, the lack of such a trend may suggest ellipsis responsiveness to more detailed aspects of context is weak. Whereas the most constitutive corpus ('newspaper reports') did contain the fewest different types of functional-structural ellipsis types (thirteen different types), the most ancillary corpus ('TV commentary') did not contain the most (seventeen). Indeed, the 'joy of six' corpus, the second most constitutive corpus, actually contained the most different types of functional-structure ellipsis (eighteen different types). Again, the validity of this aforementioned observed trend may be negligible given the small number of types and, certainly, small number of instances of such types.

As discussed in section 5.2, results of the frequency of ellipsis per se across the four corpora of this analytical project showed significant support for the trend which the CMHH predicts. But what about the results under discussion in the present section concerning the more specific matter of functional-structural types of ellipsis? In respect of research question 1, *do patterns of ellipsis observed in datasets of text which are varied along the contextual parameter of 'mode of discourse', but are otherwise in contextual identity, support the predictions of the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis?*, what do these results suggest?

Looking at specific functional-structural types of ellipsis, there is no overall significant result or trend comparable with that observed in the last section where the frequency of ellipsis per se was shown to increase the more ancillary a text's context. There are some patterns of functional-structural types which offer some degree of support for the CMHH's predictions, for example, 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb' and 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' types. Further such examples have been mentioned previously in this section. But there are also caveats in such tentative patterns (e.g. the proportional occurrence of 'Subject+Operator+Main Verb' in the 'TV commentary' corpus upsets the absolute nature of the apparent linearity) and other patterns (e.g. 'Subject-only' type) which contradict the assumed underlying trend in the results in

support of the CMHH. In this sense, the evidence of such support for the CMHH's predictions with respect functional-structural types of ellipsis is partial and so not conclusive. This is a critical reflection on the results of analysis here considered and it is fair to reasonably balance this critical evaluation by recognising some of the constraints within which such calculations have had to have been made. Chief of these is the limitation of numbers of instances of many functional-structural types. This situation of diminished numbers of instances might account for the potential scenario that a trend in line with the 'constitutive-ancillary' continuum of mode and as therefore predicted by the CMHH does exist but is not evidenced in the data for functional-structural types here. Theory on social sciences statistics (Hinton, 2004: 55) suggests at least twenty cases of any phenomenon under study need be recorded before it can be said with any confidence that the sample's distributional behaviour resembles that of its wider population. Indeed, the few patterns of functional-structural types of ellipsis have occurred with those types most frequently returned in the data (e.g. 'Subject-only' ellipsis and 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' ellipsis). Are such patterns enough to suggest similar patterns for other functional-structural would be revealed with sufficient data? Or could the aforementioned patterns be chance calculations? And, if so, should it lead us to question if the general trend found with cases of ellipsis regardless of type is also a chance result? Or is it the case that the predictive strength of the CMHH following Martin's (1992a: 520) systemic description of mode is not powerful enough to predict the more details patterns of ellipsis types, only ellipsis per se? Only in doing significantly more analysis such that it offers comfortably sufficient numbers for the purposes of all functional-structural types for statistical calculation can an answer to all these questions truly be determined. Remarks made in absence of such rich analysis are purely speculative.

5.4. Patterns in the occurrence of recoverability types of ellipsis

The last section presented the results of the analysis of more detailed ellipsis types following the apparent trend observed when ellipsis was considered in ignorance to such delicate types (section 5.2). These results of the analysis with respect to functional-structural types were shown to be less conclusive and of more debateable significance, than was ellipsis per se, with respect validating: (i) the predictions of the CMHH; (ii) in an attempt to do so, Martin's (1992a: 520) description of mode; and (iii) the methodological design on the project (see Fig. 5.i and Table 5.i above). In this section, a different, second typological classification of ellipsis is the subject of focus.

This division is based on a distinction of the site of recoverability of the form omitted through the process of ellipsis (see chapter 3). There are two types in this classification: ‘textual ellipsis’ and ‘situational ellipsis’. In the first of these, the omitted form is to be recovered from either the prior (‘anaphoric textual ellipsis’) or subsequent (‘cataphoric textual ellipsis’) co-text. In contrast, the structure which is omitted in a case of ‘situational ellipsis’ is to be recovered from extra-linguistic context. Again, the results of the analysis relative to the situational and textual types are considered in an attempt to provide an answer to the central research question; namely, *do patterns of ellipsis observed in datasets of text which are varied along the contextual parameter of ‘mode of discourse’, but are otherwise in contextual identity, support the predictions of the ‘context-metafunction hook-up’ hypothesis?* This analysis is feasible owing to an additional ad-hoc layer of coding (see section 4.3.4) for all observed cases of ellipsis, noting the source of recoverability of the omitted structure in any instance of ellipsis.

Not very much has been said throughout the project about recoverability types of ellipsis. Its potential significance was, however, briefly implied in sections 3.1 and 4.1.3. As it was said in the latter of these, considering the logic of the CMHH and its predictions, a trend would be anticipated such that the more ancillary a text’s context, the more likely situational ellipsis to occur and the more constitutive a text’s context, the more likely ellipsis of the textual kind. The basis for this expectation is that, in ancillary contexts, non-linguistic semiotic modalities play a prominent role in the production of meaning (Hasan, 1980: 108; Martin, 1992a: 517-516). Gesture, proximity, facial expression, etc. – all modalities capable of conveying the ellipted form – play potentially focal roles in engendering the meaning in such texts. Conversely, texts with truly constitutive contexts are reliant solely on the linguistic semiotic for the production of meaning. As such, ellipsis of the situational type is a marked or even impossible communicative resource.

Table 5.4.i below re-interprets the earlier Table 5.2.i – instances of ellipsis in the four corpora, as raw figures – dividing these instantial figures of occurrence into ‘situationally-recoverable’ and ‘textually-recoverable’ types, presented again as raw numbers.

| Corpus | Instances of ... | |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| | situational ellipsis | textual ellipsis |
| Newspaper reports | 49 | 195 |
| Joy of six | 73 | 154 |
| Radio comm. | 100 | 169 |
| TV comm. | 158 | 146 |

Table 5.4.i: Instances of recoverability types of ellipsis by corpus

A few observations are initially apparent. First and most obviously, textual ellipsis is by far the more frequent type when the data is considered as one whole in ignorance of corpus divisions. Considering this in the context of corpus divisions, there is one corpus which offers an exception to the pattern: the ‘TV commentary’ corpus which is the only corpus to attest more cases of situational ellipsis than textual ellipsis rather than vice versa. Secondly, the between-corpora differences are far greater in the situational type, both in terms of raw figures but certainly proportionally. ‘Textual’ ellipsis is comparatively stable in its occurrence across corpora. Thirdly, the figures of Table 5.4.i appear to suggest two trends thus: (i) the more ancillary a text’s context, the more cases of situational ellipsis; and (ii) the more constitutive a text’s context, the more cases of textual ellipsis. Given that these observations are drawn with respect raw figures, it should be stressed that these are two trends – albeit related ones – not one. Neither trend entails the other. Indeed, (i) is absolute in its linearity whereas (ii) attest one exception: textual ellipsis is less frequent in the ‘joy of six’ corpus than it is in the ‘radio commentary’ corpus.

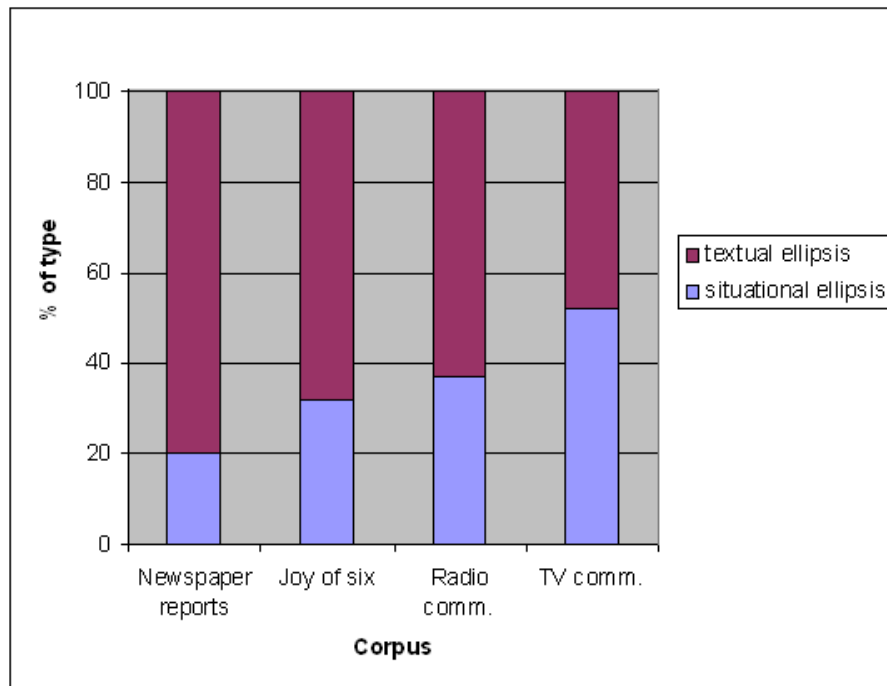
This last observation is the most potentially significant in respect of the central research question. It suggests two trends of linearity corresponding to the CMHH’s predictions. But to conclude the existence of such trends based on raw figure data (as Table 5.4.i) would be presumptuous. As has been remarked previously, raw figures do not neutralise differences between corpora. Chief amongst these are the different opportunities of the different corpora for ellipsis per se and, indeed, for ellipsis of any type owing to the different numbers of clauses in the four datasets (see Table 5.1.v of section 5.1). Much like with functional-structural types, these potentially confounding differences can be neutralised by calculating the proportional occurrence of recoverability types per corpus. And, again, as in the last section, this proportional occurrence of recoverability types in each corpus is calculated through the use of percentages. Re-interpreting Table 5.4.i in this way gives us figures as in Table 5.4.ii below.

| Corpus | % of each type in each corpus ... | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| | situational ellipsis | textual ellipsis |
| Newspaper reports | 20 | 80 |
| Joy of six | 32 | 68 |
| Radio commentary | 37 | 63 |
| TV commentary | 52 | 48 |

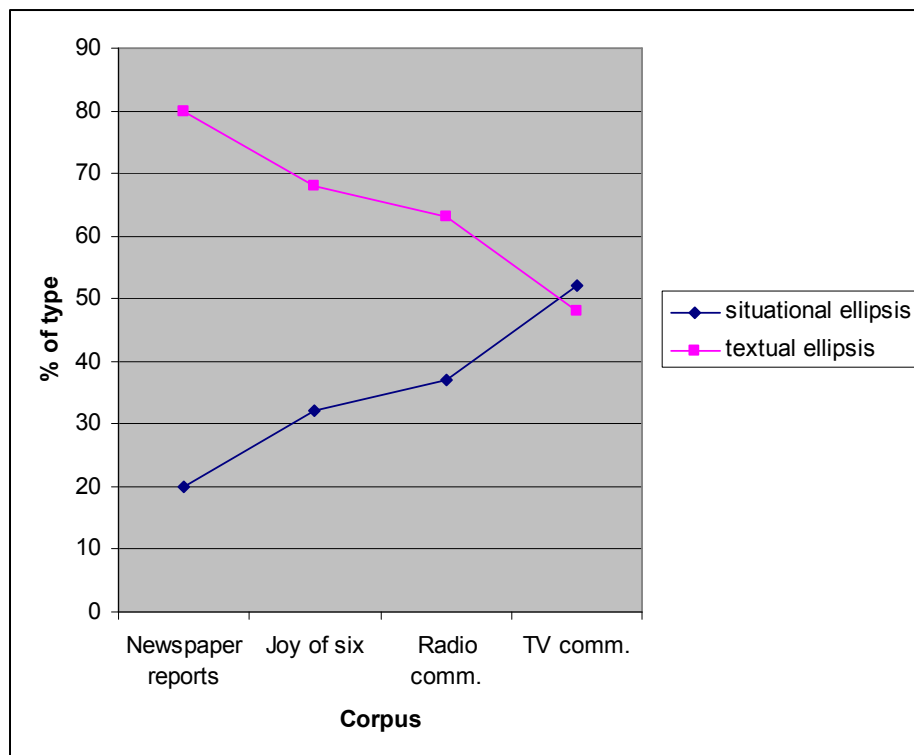
Table 5.4.ii: The proportional occurrence of recoverability-types of ellipsis in each corpus as a percentage

Note: All figures rounded up/down to a single digit number as a percentage

Table 5.4.ii's calculation of the proportional occurrence of recoverability types offers much increased confidence in the existence of the two aforementioned trends in line with what the CMHH would predict. Re-presenting this visually as a cumulative bar graph, as in Graph 5.4.i, or as a two line graph, as in Graph 5.4.ii, renders this trend yet more visible.



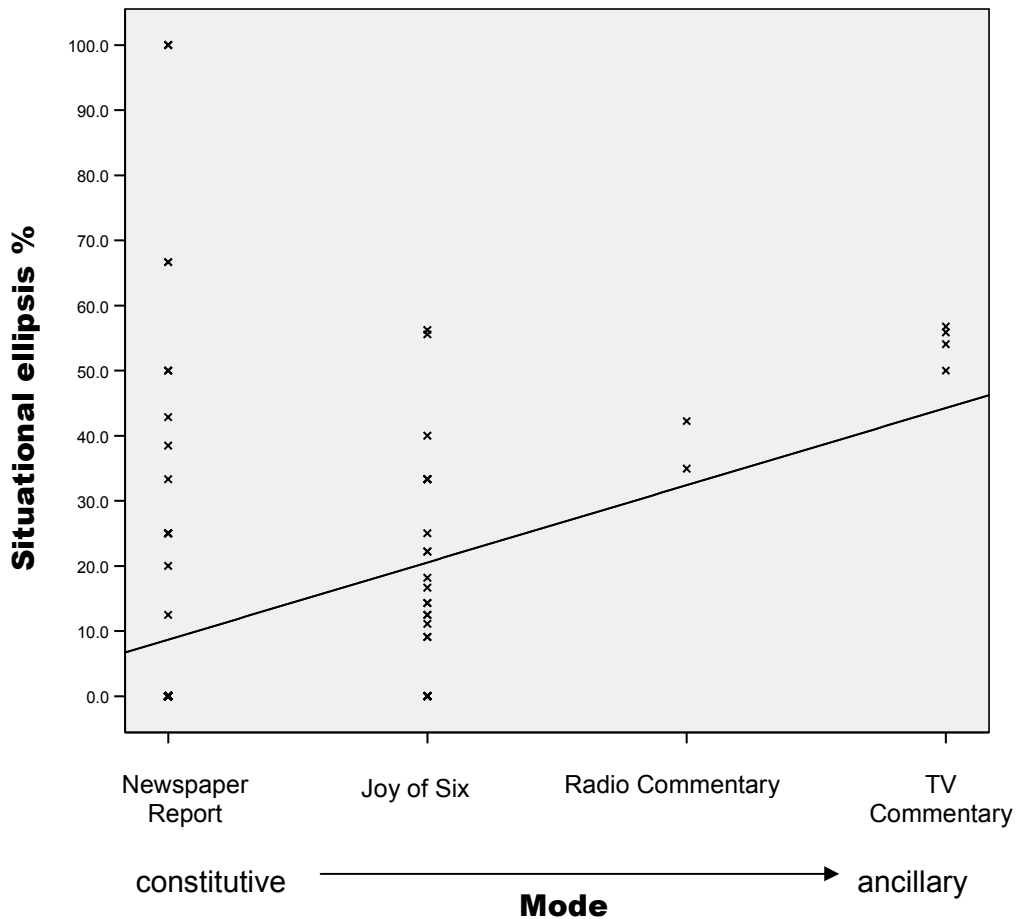
Graph 5.4.i: The proportional occurrence of recoverability-types of ellipsis in each corpus as a cumulative bar graph



Graph 5.4.ii: The proportional occurrence of recoverability-types of ellipsis in each corpus as a line-by-type graph

These graphs reveal further details and subsequent significance relative to the trends under discussion. Firstly, the ‘more constitutive context, more cases of textual ellipsis’ trend appeared partial given calculations based on the instancial, raw figure data (Table 5.4.i). However, with recoverability types calculated proportionally so as to rule out the influence of the dataset, this trend – as also the ‘more ancillary context, more cases of situational ellipsis’ trend – appears absolute. Secondly, the graphs (5.4.i and 5.4.ii), particularly, reveal the proportional difference of these trends is fairly steady/uniform between all neighbouring corpora as they are organised along the ‘constitutive-ancillary’ continuum of mode. The relative straightness of lines in Graph 5.4.ii, despite there being four value points, signifies this most clearly. Thirdly, moving between corpora along the ‘constitutive-ancillary’ continuum they are intended to represent sees a movement from recoverability types being very different in their occurrence with textual overwhelmingly dominant (at the ‘constitutive’ end of the continuum) to recoverability types being extremely similar (at the ‘ancillary’ end of the continuum). Quirk et al. (1985: 888-889) suggest that textually recoverable ellipsis is the most prototypical ellipsis, with situational ellipsis much more peripheral. Acknowledging the assumptions of the methodological design of the project, the

results here weigh in favour of Quirk et al.'s (ibid) observation. But, as was asked in respect of the occurrence of ellipsis per se (section 5.2 above), are these patterns statistically significant?



Graph 5.4.iii: Correlation between the proportional occurrence of situational ellipsis and contextual mode

Given the apparent trends as just discussed, it is appropriate to conduct a test of correlation, between the situational ellipsis in each sub-corpus as a proportion of all ellipsis in that sub-corpus and the sub-corpus's contextual mode value. As when calculating an ANOVA in determining the statistical significance of ellipsis per se (section 5.2), this requires calculations both 'between groups' and 'within groups'; that is, the proportional occurrence of situational ellipsis in each sub-corpus as a whole and the proportional occurrence of situational ellipsis in each text constituting

any single sub-corpus. Again, it was hypothesised that the more ancillary the mode of the text, the more instances of situational ellipsis. As represented in the scatterplot (Graph 5.4.iii), a significant positive correlation pertains between contextual mode differentiated sub-corpora and the proportional occurrence of situational ellipsis ($r = 0.36$, $N = 124$, $p < 0.001$). Although some data points are not distributed close to the linear regression line, there is still a strong correlation, meaning that the two variables – situational ellipsis and contextual mode – hold an evident relationship. In calculating correlation, however, it is impossible to identify a cause of this statistically significant relationship.

As was said at its outset of the chapter, the aim of sections 5.2 – 5.4 was to present appropriately the results of the present analytical project and consequently to note any pertinent trends or other observations and then consider their significance, all with respect the first central research question of the project, namely: *do patterns of ellipsis observed in datasets of text which are varied along the contextual parameter of 'mode of discourse', but are otherwise in contextual identity, support the predictions of the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis?* The last three sections have been organised to reflect three different sorts of result arising from the analytical project. The first (section 5.2) was the most general, a consideration of ellipsis as a homogenous phenomenon and therefore without regard to any more delicate ellipsis types. Conversely, the next two sections precisely considered two sorts of such 'more delicate ellipsis types'. Section 5.3 firstly did so with respect functional-structural types of ellipsis. Section 5.4 then considered recoverability types of ellipsis. But what do all these results tell us, particularly with respect the research question as identified just previously?

Several very important and convincing trends have weighed in favour of the CMMH's predictions. Firstly, the more ancillary a text's context, the more frequent ellipsis is to occur per se (see Table 5.2.iii and Graph 5.2.ii in section 5.2). The linearity of this trend in the data here is not only absolute in respect of the 'constitutive-ancillary' mode continuum implied in the dataset design, but the points along it comprised by the individual corpora themselves are also extremely uniform (again see Graph 5.2.ii of section 5.2). Secondly, the more constitutive a text's context, the greater proportion of its occasions of ellipsis are of the 'textually-recoverable' type (see Table 5.4.ii and Graphs 5.4.i and 5.4.ii above in this section). Third and conversely to the last, the more ancillary a text's context, the greater proportion of its occasions of ellipsis are of the 'situationally-recoverable' type (again, see Table 5.4.ii and Graphs

5.4.i and 5.4.ii above in this section). Both these last two trends again honour the linearity of the 'constitutive-ancillary' continuum of mode implied in the present project's dataset design and do so in a uniform manner between sub-corpora. Consider the straightness of the contours in Graph 5.4.ii. Fourth, the more constitutive a text's context, the more frequent the 'Subject-only' functional-structural type of ellipsis (see Table 5.3.xiv and Charts 5.3.i – 5.3.iv in section 5.3). Fifth, the more ancillary a text's context, the more frequent the 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' functional-structural type of ellipsis (Table 5.3.xiv and Charts 5.3.i – 5.3.iv in section 5.3). Both these last two trends each show one exception from absolute linearity of the 'constitutive-ancillary' continuum of mode implied in the present project's dataset design. This is the same exception in both cases: the 'TV commentary' corpus. These trends also do not display uniformity between sub-corpora previously mentioned trends do.

There have also been many results which attest no such trend or any other support for the CMHH following Martin's (1992a) systemic description of mode and the textual metafunctional phenomena of ellipsis. These results may reasonably be labelled 'null-hypothesis' ones in that they show no support for the predictions of the CMHH relative to the present project. Moreover, such 'null-hypothesis' results actually challenge the validity of the CMHH. The great number of the functional-structural types considered in section 5.3 fall into this category of null-hypothesis results (Table 5.3.xiv in section 5.3).

A balanced summary of the analytical results considered in sections 5.2 – 5.4 can only state, therefore, that the CMHH following Martin's systemic description of mode and the textual metafunctional phenomena of ellipsis is inconclusive. That said, it would be a remarkably rare result if the aforementioned trends in support of the CMHH were purely due to chance. The fact there are several results in very clear agreement with the CMHH's predictions suggests reasons to assume there is at least some validity to the CMHH following Martin's (1992a) systemic description of mode and the textual metafunctional phenomena of ellipsis. Only a great deal of subsequent analytical research similar to that conducted here – though, if at all possible, bigger in size and scope (cf. the shortcomings of the analysis here noted in section 5.3) – can provide an answer with greater confidence than is currently being expressed. There is reason to tentatively take the results presented in this chapter to suggest both aspects of the 'mode of discourse-textual metafunction' strand of the CMHH have validity and yet in other ways there is an apparent lack of explanatory

power. Perhaps such evidence as that presented here, partial though it may be, should inform subsequent description and theorising of semiotic context in systemic functional linguistics, while the results of further relevant analytical research are awaited with interest.

CHAPTER SIX
ELLIPSIS? MODE OF DISCOURSE? SO WHAT?
PUTTING THE ANALYTICAL RESULTS INTO SOME WIDER CONTEXT

In presenting the results following from analysis, chapter 5 also discussed their relevance with respect to the central research question of this project:

Do patterns of ellipsis observed in datasets of text which are varied along the contextual parameter of 'mode of discourse', but are otherwise in contextual identity, support the predictions of the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis?

To re-cap, the main findings of the analytical project were: the more ancillary a text's context, the more frequent ellipsis is to occur per se; the more constitutive a text's context, the greater proportion of its occasions of ellipsis are of the 'textually-recoverable' type; the more ancillary a text's context, the greater proportion of its occasions of ellipsis are of the 'situationally-recoverable' type; the more constitutive a text's context, the more frequent the 'Subject-only' functional-structural type of ellipsis; and the more ancillary a text's context, the more frequent the 'Subject+Operator/Main Verb' functional-structural type of ellipsis; the more ancillary a text's context, the more frequent clausal ellipsis.

No more will be said in this chapter about these results. The significant 'headline' results are as above and these were put in more detail in the relevant parts of the last chapter. Rather than elaborate such points, the remit of this final chapter is one of contextualising the results of chapter 5 within a broader climate of relevant issues. The discussion of the present project throughout all previous chapters has been largely in isolation of environmental factors external to the present remit. This has been necessary to retain the sufficient focus. In this section, however, a number of such 'environmental factors' are rightly brought to bear in re-evaluating the focused agenda of the present project in much broader terms. These are organised below into three main sets starting from the broadest and finishing with the narrowest. These sets correspond to sections 6.1.1 – 6.1.3. As is very likely to be the case when one's object of study is language, such matters are not discrete and hence the divisions between sections 6.1.1 – 6.1.3 are largely artificial. The contents of the three subsequent sections overlap, therefore. Bearing in mind the caveat just mentioned, section 6.1.1 considers the inherent nature of language and how this

might influence aspects of the current project, particularly in its methodological design. Subsequently, the current state of knowledge in linguistics and, specifically, in systemic functional linguistics is considered with respect what it has been possible to achieve in this project and how the aforementioned state of knowledge might have limited the outcomes of the present project (section 6.1.2). Finally, section 6.1.3 considers the methodological design adopted and how, in comparison to other options on methodology, it might have constrained the outcomes which have here been gained.

6.1. Issues arising fundamental to language

Despite the best attempts and intentions to control the design of analytical research, inevitably there are matters outside the control of the researcher. This is particularly true where one's object of study is something as complex, un-bounded and multi-faceted as a natural language. This section considers the very matter of how language's inherent properties might have influenced the project in ways that have not so far been explicitly addressed. That is, considering language is the object of study, which of its inherent characteristics needs to be considered to properly contextualise not only the results discussed in chapter 5 but also the wider project? This question is addressed in two parts which make up the remainder of section 6.1.1. Firstly, the tendency of language, when conceptualised as language use, to vary on all levels is considered in terms of the challenges this sets in studying it. Subsequently, the extent to which language and related phenomena are either capable of being deconstructed for the purposes of focused study or inherently inter-related is mused. These two points are addressed in this order.

Much of the space of earlier chapters was given over to discussions of the value of natural language as the data of the present project. It had been said that testing the context-metafunction hook-up hypothesis (henceforth CMHH) should be done: (i) on large-scale; and, particularly, (ii) with natural language as the data. As was said in those previous discussions, for a theory which claims itself to be 'functional' in orientation, the ultimate data – the one upon which its descriptions should be shown to be powerful in their explanations – must be naturally occurring language text. It is still maintained that the reasoning for such assertions is entirely valid. But a question that should be addressed is as follows. In the context of the research questions of the project, what does it actually mean to take naturally occurring language as one's

data? In other words, what is it about natural language that must be kept in mind when interpreting the outcomes of the project?

By its inherent nature, natural language varies. Counter the ‘chaos’ anxieties of structuralist readings of Saussure (e.g. Chomsky, 1957; 1965), Firth (1950) argued that data of the naturally occurring kind displayed inherent regularity and its variation was of a systematic sort. Subsequent work of, for example, Halliday (e.g. Halliday, 1961; 1967-8) and Sinclair (e.g. Sinclair, 1972) substantiated the Firthian position on this matter. Regardless of the nature of this variation, natural language text does undoubtedly have variation as one of its defining characteristics. This fact consequently brings about tension with the logic of the methodology of this project. As explained across chapters 3 and 4, the methodology is based on the premise that the dataset design constitutes the independent variable. That is, different sub-corpora serve to represent different values at the contextual parameter of mode while the contextual parameters of field and tenor are held constant as control variables (see Fig. 5.i and the accompanying Table 5.i at the start of chapter 5 as a summary). The methodological design therefore assumes consistency in two different respects: firstly, in mode within each individual datasets; and secondly, in both field and tenor across all datasets. There is, therefore, a potential mismatch between the consistencies required of the data owing to the methodological design and the variation that is inherent in naturally occurring language. One of the specific decisions taken in enacting this general methodology sees this potential mismatch become a reality. This is the decision to assign data to corpora at the unit of text, therefore treating single texts as homogenous wholes rather than something potentially subject to ‘internal’ contextual variation (see section 4.2). In taking this methodological decision, the present author made an a priori assumption that contextual values would be stable across single texts and so assigned to the corresponding corpus on this basis without problem. It was not foreseen that contextual values would shift significantly and/or rapidly across the evolution of a single text; particularly given that the majority of texts in the project were relatively short in length. Instances like the emboldened parts in the following examples challenge the methodology adopted here on precisely this matter:

the odd man out in this Spain eleven in that he doesn't play for Barcelona or Real Madrid (.) **[B]** or that he's not very good (2.0) **[A]** you can say that (.) **[B]** just did

[from ‘TV commentary’ corpus]

it doesn't look like happening and time's running out for them now (.) **and though you can't see it immediately below us the managers are disagreeing with one another er about something (.) they're at each others' throats (.)** but (.) the ball's played long again

[from 'TV commentary' corpus]

it was fitting that the Israeli should score his third hat-trick since arriving on Merseyside from West Ham in July 2007. "**He is a player with lots of quality,**" said Benítez of the 28-year-old. "**We have seen how good he can be from the bench and now he is showing how good he can be from the start.**"

[from 'newspaper reports' corpus]

The first of these, assigned to the 'TV commentary' corpus, is therefore intended to represent the following values at the tenor parameter of context: **unequal; distant; unmarked** (see Table 5i in chapter 5). But is this really the context being construed in the highlighted portion? Is there not a shift of who is addresser and addressee here such that the emboldened text is actually face-to-face 'banter' between the commentators? There are certainly undertones of a marked affect (see section 4.2.2.4) between the interlocutors, not only in the lexicogrammatical choices attested (heavily ellipsis, second person pronoun address, etc. (Poynton, 1985: 81)) but also in the intonation. Likewise, the second example above – again drawn from the 'TV commentary' corpus – is intended to represent the following values at the mode parameter of context: **accompanying; commentary; co-observing** (see Table 5.i in chapter 5). Evidently, this is not the context being construed in the highlighted part. The commentator even uses his language to draw explicit attention to the adjustment in mode and flag this for his audience (*though you can't see it...*) with this followed by an explicit specified reference to place the events being described in their location (*immediately below us...*). The commentator judges the audience to need this now the latter are no longer 'co-observers' in the event. The final example comes from the 'newspaper reports' corpus. It is arguable as to whether the contextual values have been perturbed here. It could be said that there is intertextuality here and this process induces an effect on the text's context. It certainly illustrates the same

fundamental problem, at least. In sum of this point, it is not, therefore, the case that the data of the analytical project is always internally consistent as the methodological design required for a test without potentially confounding variables.

This critical evaluation of the methodology is reasonable. But what were the alternatives? Although in chapter 4 it was said that the methodology here was oriented to the corpus tradition, on this specific methodological matter, the present project actually aligned itself more with the textual linguistic tradition (Tognini-Bonelli, 2001). A move back in the direction of the corpus linguistics tradition might provide a potential solution to the problem identified. Rather than honouring the text as a unit (*ibid*), the data could be assigned contextual values at a more delicate level and divided up into different corpora accordingly. Even taking this approach, however, would be unlikely to entirely resolve all potential manifestations of this problem. The related matter of the delicacy of language and semiotic context in natural language data provides a similar sort of challenge. Though contextual parameters may be held constant to a certain degree of delicacy across all datasets, for example, they will be differentiated along these variables at some more delicate point by virtue of the fact that they are different texts. How can it be determined that such delicate differences won't be confounding factors in measuring some dependent variable?

This leads to the second point for discussion in this section. Earlier sections acknowledged the competing 'deterministic' and 'probabilistic' interpretations of the CMHH. That is, is the relationship between parameters of contextual phenomena and metafunctional groupings of language phenomena a one-to-one relation between parameter-metafunctional pairings, or is it a relation of tendency which does not rule out connections between non-pairs? As per the conclusions of chapter 5, though significant trends in support of the CMHH were found in the results of the analysis, these were often trends of ellipsis partially supporting the linearity of 'constitutive-ancillary' continuum of mode. In addition to this, there were also other results suggesting the 'null-hypothesis' with respect the CMHH's predictions. Consequently, it is hard not to weigh in favour of the probabilistic reading of the CMHH, at least as far as the evidence here is concerned. A further matter of the relevant environment implicated in the study which it is necessary to here consider is how legitimate it really is to separate out semiotic contextual parameters and the consequences that logically follow from this point. If, as it appears from the analytical evidence produced considered here, it is not really possible to divorce field and tenor considerations from those at the parameter of mode, this has consequences for the methodological

design of this project. The logic of the methodology of the present project was that of incorporating values of context, as the independent variable, precisely within the dataset design so as to be able to ask if there is indeed the relationship between language and context which the CMHH claims. But if matters at different contextual parameters are intertwined, how can test and control variables be systematically managed to function as the independent variable in dataset design? Can they even be isolated for the purposes of research study?

Even if it was possible to control the values within the field and tenor parameters of context, at the strata of language, is it really likely that the occurrence of ellipsis is to be explained by contextual matters at the mode parameter alone? Previous research would suggest not. Poynton (1985: 78-83) has suggested that the system of CONTACT at the tenor parameter is important in the realisation of ellipsis. Matthiessen (1995: 385-393) implies the stronger stance that considerations of the interpersonal sort are those primarily relevant in the case of ellipsis. And Heine (2009) has shown that matters within the field parameter might make certain types of ellipsis possible. Given the insistence of the aforementioned scholars to more or less explicitly put to one side Halliday (1977: 202) and colleagues' (e.g. Martin, 1992a: 387) assertions of the textual metafunctional relevance of ellipsis, the implication seems to be that interpersonal, certainly, and maybe even ideational (Heine, 2009) motivations exist for the use of ellipsis per se and/or some of its types (Halliday & Matthiessen, 2004: 564-568). The evidence in favour of the deterministic interpretation of the CMHH seems to be in comparatively short supply.

6.2. Issues arising fundamental to systemic functional linguistics' descriptions of context

Having considered some of the characteristics and properties of language and the ways in which these have influenced the project here, this section considers the state of knowledge in systemic functional linguistics in a similar vein. Herein, one particular area of focus is systemic functional descriptions, particularly at the stratum of context. In this regard, the current state of descriptions of semiotic context in systemic functional linguistics is discussed before some very specific proposals for ways forward are suggested with reference to other systemic functional work. Also under discussion in the present section is the extent and nature of testing in systemic functional work. By returning to the matter of systemic descriptions, this section ends

in considering whether a contradiction lies in the premises the theory promotes as criteria for producing such descriptions.

Section 2.1 explained the principles of systemic description as well as the concepts involved in such descriptive work. Much of Halliday's (1961; 1967-8) early work was concerned with phenomena at the lexicogrammatical stratum, though at that point in the evolution of systemic functional theory, language had not been postulated as a stratified system. One of the first substantial presentations of networks of systemic contrasts at the lexicogrammatical stratum occurred as Halliday (1967-8). Their development has taken place over four decades of systemic functional research. Matthiessen (1995) was a landmark point in that it spelled out the systems of English lexicogrammar in astonishing detail and the findings therein large corroborated many of Halliday's (e.g. 1967-8; 1979) earlier predictions. In comparison, very few descriptions exist in the systemic functional literature for the stratum of context. Certainly, descriptions postulated as networks of systemic contrasts have been infrequent (see below this section). Those few that do exist have been published in the last twenty or so years (Cloran, 1987; Martin, 1992; Hasan 1995b; 1999; Butt, 2008). Importantly, even these explicitly **systemic** descriptions of contextual phenomena have been subject to very little subsequent research (see below this section). It is for this reason that Hasan (2009: 181) summarises that systemic functional descriptions of context are at "a nascent stage" of development. But as critical a review of systemic functional work on context as Hasan (2009) offers, Hasan (2010) does believe that the descriptive statement of semiotic contextual phenomena as networks of meaningful contrasts modelled systemically (see section 2.1) is feasible. What it required, Hasan (1995; 2010) contends, is a similar period of rigorous testing and comprehensive development as that afforded to lexicogrammatical descriptions over the last forty or so years.

As alluded to in the prior remarks of this section, as well as systemic functional research on context being open to criticism on simple quantitative grounds, perhaps even more seriously, there are qualitative reasons to be critical of much of the work which has actually been done. That is, much of the research on context in the systemic functional linguistics is of a certain, ultimately impoverished, sort. Many systemic functional linguists imply, in their work, a conception of context for systemic functional linguistics which does not amount to the theoretical status of a description (cf. the points of section 4.3.2). Rather, such conceptions of systemic functional context are based on acculturated intuition and therefore constitute nothing more

than explanation. Hasan (2009: 180) labels this practice 'common sense' when she writes:

faced with a text already there, SFL linguists have largely been doing what any other ordinary speaker of the language would do, i.e., construing from the language of the text what the text is all about [contextually]

Again, a more rigorous analysis of context for systemic functional linguistics requires networks of distinctions at the contextual stratum and their accompanying realisations in the semantics. The latter should not be considered an optional and/or ad-hoc aspect of such an enterprise. Rather, semantic realisations are the criteria on which the accurate identification of the meaningful distinctions at the stratum of context is based. This practice of considering regularities in realisational patternings at neighbouring strata, referred to by Halliday as 'the trinocular perspective' (e.g. Halliday, 1992a; 1996), has always been the chief source of verifying one's systemic descriptions. Hasan makes this same broad point when she writes:

What is interesting in the above description [of context as 'Field', 'Tenor' and 'Mode'] is its vagueness, the absence of 'checkable' criteria, and the reliance on 'common sense'. It is as if, other than the context's tripartite division, its description has no underlying regularities, and no reasoned framework to work with [...] such descriptions are not based in any consciously and carefully prepared framework for what, for want of an established term, one might call CONTEXTUALISATION. What has been attempted so far by way of contextualisation is a common sense account [...] There is much in this situation to cause discomfort."

Hasan (2009: 180)

Comparing this situation to the state of knowledge at the lexicogrammatical stratum, again, descriptions there take the form of networks of interacting contrasts which themselves are postulated on the basis of interacting realisational patternings with phenomena at neighbouring strata. Such work at the contextual level has barely begun in systemic functional linguistics and the relevant matters have normally been assumed as 'largely common sense' (ibid), as if they either elude or, worse, do not require description in the same terms the school demands of phenomena at other strata.

Not irrelevant to the limited progress of describing contextual phenomena in systemic functional linguistics is the fact that the phenomena that comprise context are phenomena of an abstract sort. This is characteristic of higher order strata (see Fig. 2.1.1.i in section 2.1.1) but contradicts the prime facie understanding of 'context'. An initial consideration of what constitutes phenomena of the contextual sort may judge it to be phenomenal in nature. But this is a misperception. Though some aspects of context have the potential to be matters of a tangible sort (Hasan, 1980), the systemic functional conception of context is as a semiotic construct. Consequently, contextual phenomena are not in the first instance tangible but rather semiotic. This may well explain the situation Hasan (2009: 180-181) describes. In other words, the misperception of context as comprised of phenomena of the phenomenal sort may lead some scholars to rely on a lazy and ultimately flawed 'common sense' understanding of systemic functional context.

One unfavourable consequence of the lack of what Hasan (2009: 180) describes as a "reasoned framework to work with", i.e. for the systemic functional description of context, is that the few ventures on systemic functional context which do amount to description evidence significant differences. The discussion of section 4.1 above served as an example of this. There, Hasan's (1985b) and Martin's (1992a) systemic functional descriptions of 'mode' were contrasted. As it was shown there, there are certainly subtle differences between the two accounts, though in the instance of these two accounts of the same specific part of the description of systemic functional context also has a large degree of overlap. Indeed, it illustrates the present point that Hasan (1999; 2009) has subsequently revised her description of context such that the overlap with Martin (1992a) seen in Hasan (1985b) is now absolved, as was described in section 4.1.3. Other accounts and/or other areas of the systemic functional model of context have much more disparaging differences.

That there are differences between different scholars' attempts to state in descriptive terms the options available at context is not itself a problem. In broadest terms, the goal of linguistic description is to use theoretical abstractions or the like in order explain as much language data as possible. What constitutes 'the data' is a matter relative to the goals and orientation of the wider theoretical school; as is the balance to be struck between the depth of detail in the description and the power to generalise. The real problem of competing descriptions, rather, is not determining which of such descriptions achieves the goals of the theory most successfully, or, at least, which description serves which function(s) best. As was said at some length in

chapter 1, this state of affairs is the consequence of a lack of scientific testing of such descriptions. And it can be remedied in these terms. Again, to re-iterate from the first chapter of this work, testing should not be seen as one scholar's pursuit to disprove a fellow researcher. Rather, testing is a recognition and positive appraisal of another's ideas in an attempt to either show support for – and so validate – them or to help improve their descriptive eloquence and power. Such a goal has precisely been the one driving the current project. The present author believes the potentially illuminating value of the systemic functional linguistics conception and description of semiotic context and the predictions that follow from the CMHH are worth pursuing. But there is also a realisation here that their full potential requires the significant efforts of many others. Hasan and Martin, alone or together, have only taken the first steps.

6.3. Issues arising fundamental to methodology

The chapter has intended to reflect on the potential influence of broader 'environmental' factors. Section 6.1 did so in considering some of the characteristics of language and how bearing such things in mind is important when interpreting the significance of any outcomes of the present project. Section 6.1 had a similar remit but with respect the state and rate of progress of knowledge in systemic functional linguistics. A particular focus in this regard was a critical appraisal of existing descriptions of the contextual stratum in systemic functional work. In this third and final part of chapter 6, the influence of methodology is considered. Some remarks concerning methodology and particularly concerning the methodology actually adopted here were made under section 6.1. There, the decision to assign data to corpora on the basis of 'the text' as an assumed homogenous unit was questioned. Here, in this section, the influence of methodology has a slightly different focus. The current methodology is considered in relation to other potential methodologies which might otherwise have been adopted. This focus has two facets. Firstly, what matters might have been neglected as a result of choosing to adopt the methodology used here. Secondly, what might be have been added to the project if different specific methods or different wider methodologies had been employed.

Specific shortcomings, limitations and oversights of the present project, such as the one mentioned in section 6.1 and just referred to, might have been avoided if some form of methodological triangulation had been employed. The decision not to triangulate methodologically was not because it wasn't considered; nor because it

was intentionally dismissed as in any way unnecessary. Rather, the focal reason for not adding to the methodology in such a way was due to the laborious nature of the methodology that was employed. For reasons given only briefly in chapter 4, the present methodology aligned itself with a broadly conceived corpus linguistics approach to language study. A chief reason for doing so was the value placed by the present author on analysing as much naturally occurring language data as it was possible to. The analysis of functional-structural types showed even the data that was analysed was depressingly short of the total ideally required. The benefits of such a methodological orientation are well documented and they won't be rehearsed here. Taking this approach ruled out the opportunity for the inclusion of other methodological traditions, no matter how small. What would have been particularly useful in this regard was the inclusion of ethnographic methods to some degree. Bowcher (1999; 2001) employs these in a similar research project to that conducted here and with data similar to two of the corpora of the current project. Bowcher (*ibid*) shows how taking on the role of ethnographer can assist the analyst's understanding of the context of some communicative event, both in its details but in appreciating the nature of the communicative event as meaningful, given the society, in the first instance. Had this project followed Bowcher (*ibid*) in a similar vein, the shortcomings as noted in section 6.1 are likely to have been avoided. There is also a broader point. As implied in Hasan's (2009) criticisms of systemic functional work on context hitherto (see section 6.1.2 above), a rigorous description of semiotic context is going to require the systemic functional linguist to embark on a truly transdisciplinary venture, engaging with the sociologist and anthropologist (Hasan, 1995: 271; 2009: 181)

It is relevant to reflect on the selection of ellipsis as the linguistic phenomenon to function as the dependent variable in this project given the methodological design. It was said in chapter 1 that ellipsis together with variation at the contextual parameter of mode, its contextual correlate according to the CMHH (section 2.2.3), was a 'case study by which to test the CMHH'. The basic logic of the methodological design is as follows. If linguistic phenomena of one metafunction are predicted by the CMHH to co-vary with considerations of a corresponding contextual parameter, then some value of one or the other of these need be held constant. This makes it the dependent variable and the other the independent variable. Whichever is now accordingly independent variable needs varying in a principled manner. How this is to be achieved is reliant on which – language or context – has been chosen to function as the independent variable. It is then a matter of observing whether the linguistic

phenomenon and matters at its contextual correlate really do co-vary in some language data as the CMHH predicts. The 'case study by which to test the CMHH' in this project made the linguistic textual metafunctional phenomenon ellipsis (see chapter 3) the dependent variable and the contextual parameter of mode the independent variable (see sections 4.1 and 4.2). Given context was to be the independent variable and given that texts can be characterised on the basis of their contextual properties – if not as easily as initially thought (see point in 6.1 above) – variation in contextual mode manifested itself in the design of the dataset, with mode values of different corpora the test variable and field and tenor values the control variables. A 'case study by which to test the CMHH could, however, be framed just as easily in reverse with variation in linguistic phenomena the independent variable and some matter of context the dependent variable. On reflection, was the 'case study' adopted here – or more, accurately, were the components of that case study – a strategic and wise choice? How did this decision affect the results observed at its end?

As it was said in section 2.2.1, systemic functional linguists claim both the semantic and the lexicogrammatical strata to be metafunctionally-diversified. By virtue of giving the 'context-metafunction hook-up' hypothesis its label, there is an implication of a suppression of the semantics – lexicogrammar stratal boundary. While that would without contention be a misreading of systemic functional theory, the degree to which such a misreading is problematic is a matter of much greater debate. The issue of contention centres on whether or not phenomena of non-neighbouring strata can ever theoretically be related as closely as phenomena that do share a stratal boundary. Hasan (1980) and Halliday (e.g. Halliday, 1992a) stand on one side of the debate. They follow Lemke (1984) in arguing metaredundancy as a fundamental characteristic of natural language systems. Metaredundancy formalises a specific interpretation on the relation of realisation. It expresses the idea phenomena of different – for example metafunctional – sorts re-configure themselves in the context of each other both before and after the process of crossing a stratal boundary that is realisation. If one invokes or adheres to the importance of the concept of metaredundancy, it is not, therefore, entirely accurate to say grammar realises meaning and phonology in turn realises grammar (Halliday, 1992a: 24-26). Rather, it is more accurate to say that grammar realises meaning and phonology realises the realisation of meaning as grammar (ibid). Indeed, Hasan (1995: 231) extends Lemke's (1984) notion of metaredundancy to the non-linguistic stratum of semiotic context so as to make the point that realisation of contextual phenomena into

semantic phenomena incorporates this same fundamental process. This is largely what leads to the aforementioned scholars' argument for a probabilistic interpretation on the CMHH (see sections 2.2.3 – 2.2.4). By taking a deterministic view of the predictions embodied in the CMHH, Martin's position with respect to the concept of metaredundancy is unclear, though he does discuss it very briefly in the most comprehensive exposition of his ideas (Martin, 1992a: 497). If the Hasan and Halliday position has a valid basis such that phenomena at distant strata are likely to be less intertwined by realisation, then the choice of adopting the lexicogrammatical phenomenon of ellipsis (see section 3.3.2) as the linguistic phenomenon by which to test the CMHH in this project was a questionable one. That is, by nature of its being more distant from matters of contextual mode, ellipsis is likely to be less sensitive and therefore less responsive to such contextual factors than some semantic textual phenomena will be. In turn, it should be expected that the relation between ellipsis and mode is less significant and less readily observable through an analytical exploration of such connections like those of this project. In such an event, it might have been better to ask what semantic distinctions ellipsis construes and consider the relation between these and contextual mode (Butt, 2010).

There is a further point to be made relative to ellipsis as the primary linguistic phenomenon under study in this project. It comes as a consequence of Hasan's (1985a: 113-115; 1995: 269; 2009: 186) theorising of some of the specifics of the dialogic relations pertaining between language and context. Specifically, Hasan (*ibid*) claims that different sorts of linguistic phenomena relate to different sorts of contextual phenomena. Hasan (*ibid*) offers a broad classification of linguistic phenomena into one of two types: 'structural' or 'cohesive textual'. One of the criteria motivating her division of linguistic phenomena into these two sorts is whether some linguistic phenomenon under consideration is constrained by grammatical relations or not. The latter type account for phenomena whose relations have the potential to expand beyond the ultimate structural boundary of the clause. Examples are lexical cohesion, reference and also ellipsis (Halliday & Hasan, 1976). Hasan (1985a: 113-115; 1995: 269; 2009: 186) continues that this division of linguistic phenomena mirrors a division of a different sort of phenomena at the stratum of context by there being a relationship between the two. The division of contextual phenomena is based on a measure of delicacy in the systemic functional description of contextual phenomena; namely, between broad, indelicate level systemic distinctions and delicate ones (see section sub-section 2.1.2). Such a distinction is evidently subject

to being a matter of degree. Hasan (ibid) claims that further evidence of the dialogic between language and context is the fact that there is a tie-in between the two aforementioned divisions such that ‘structural linguistic phenomena’ are the realisation of broad level contextual systemic distinctions whereas ‘cohesive linguistic phenomena’ are the realisation of delicate contextual systemic distinctions.

Compared to texture, structure is concerned with the more general – less particular – aspects of a text.

(Hasan: ibid)

the facts of texture construe the very detailed aspects of the situation in which the text came to life.

(Hasan: ibid)

The logic of Hasan’s (1985a: 113-115; 1995: 269; 2009: 186) argument seems to be neat and therefore appealing and indeed it may be valid. As is true, however, of many other claims arising from systemic functional theorising, Hasan’s (ibid) prediction is yet to be substantiated with rigorous data-driven analysis. Assuming Hasan’s predictions do have some validity, it raises a further question against some of the more specific details of the methodology employed here. In a bid to test the CMHH, this project sampled data to represent variation across the contextual mode parameter but at only a very broad level of delicacy. Consider again Martin’s (1992a: 520) system of EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE which was used as the blueprint for dataset design, marginally adjusted from Fig. 5i in chapter 5:

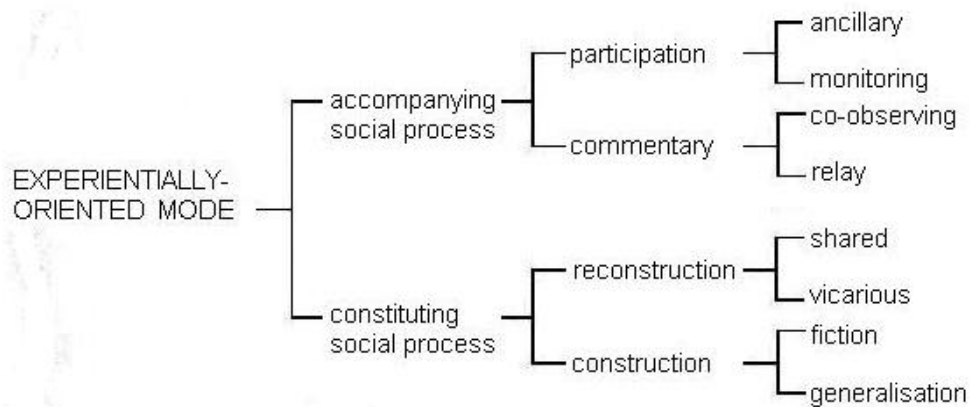


Figure 6.3.i: Martin’s EXPERIENTIALLY-ORIENTED MODE system as the blueprint for dataset design in the current project

As can be observed from Fig. 6.3.i, the contextual values of sub-corpora only extend a very small way into delicacy; to be specific, to the third degree of delicacy according to Martin's (1992a) theorising of mode. Even at this degree of delicacy, it was not possible to represent the whole range of contextual potential. That is, only 'co-observing', 'relay', 'shared' and 'vicarious' were represented by datasets of the present project. No data in the present project stands to represent 'ancillary', 'monitoring', 'fiction' and 'generalisation' mode types as these are defined by Martin (*ibid*). This is not the only reason of feasibility that made it impossible to take on board and account for Hasan's (1985a: 113-115; 1995: 269; 2009: 186) claims. Martin's (1992a) networks for mode are the most detailed in published existence and Fig. 6.3.i shows the full extent of their expanse into delicacy. These two logistical sticking points aside, Hasan's (1985a: 113-115; 1995: 269; 2009: 186) claims could very usefully have been tested by sampling a further four corpora to represent mode values at, say, the 20th degree of delicacy as well as the four at the 3rd degree of delicacy which were accounted for in this project. It would be an interesting analytical exploration to see which set of four datasets varied most considerably in terms of their realisation of ellipsis: the indelicate or the delicate ones.

The next point is relevant to several previous ones and certainly the last. A central methodological concern was the internal consistency of design datasets to match the intended contextual values and only those values. This was a huge task with many competing factors to balance. Some of these have already been discussed. Some research was conducted in an attempt to determine whether such internal consistency of datasets had been achieved. It is in the nature of corpus linguistics research to be iterative in the methodology and results stages and one further pre-corpus-compilation analysis that could have been conducted in an attempt to ensure the desired internal consistency of datasets is Hasan's (1978; 1984) work on characterising situational types in structural terms (Butt, 2010).

But again, one reason that made such a step very difficult to include in the present project is the limitation on resources. Such iterative corpus compilation and associated analysis is hugely time consuming (Biber, 1993; Williams, 2002). What reasonable achievement of such a task would have required is an independent stage of analysis of the text types involved; characterising these in terms of the generic-structural-potentials (1978; 1984) and finding what structural contrasts in these terms existed between the four datasets of present project to define them apart. This would

have also added a hugely valuable extra outcome from the project (Matthiessen, 1993). But it simply was unfeasible given the limitations of the project. It is fair to say that the project would have benefited very gratefully from such extra work. However, even where resources are extremely limited, an analytical stage in these terms in projects like the present one should seriously be considered.

The analysis of the present project included the mark-up of the recoverability types of ellipsis in the data (see section 5.4). As remarked in chapter 5, some examples which eluded a clausal analysis appeared to be of the situationally-recoverable type. Given the current state-of-knowledge in linguistics and even the wider field of semiotics, at present such examples ultimately defy analysis and so explanation. What is required for a full understanding of the potential and boundaries of permissible of ellipsis of the situationally-recoverable sort are comprehensive descriptions of the relevant modalities involved in the realisation of such situational types of ellipsis (e.g. gesture, proxemics, body language) stated in terms like are now coming into existence for the language modality (e.g. Matthiessen, 1995). In absence of such knowledge, situational ellipsis will be characterised as somehow less prototypical an instance of ellipsis than textually-recoverable equivalents, as Quirk et al.'s (1985: 885-6) classification implies. This is based on the view that because their full form cannot be precisely stated in terms of the linguistic meaning potential, for which we do now have fairly comprehensive maps, it is not knowable at all. Absence of detailed maps of other modalities – in terms like those suggested above – further clouds the predictability of such examples. This point at which the abstractions required for these other modalities are known may well be some distance away, but there is no reason to think that situational ellipsis might not eventually be explained in terms as clearly as those we have for the textually-recoverable type. The work involved provides an exciting insight into the opportunities for new and revised knowledge that will be gained when semiotics other than language begin to become more fully understood in terms equivalent to our present understanding of the vast potential of language. This last point of chapter 6's wider contextualisation of the analytical project conducted here is more of a speculatively optimistic rather than simply reflective one. Such a rhetoric is a good one on which to come to a close.

REFERENCES

- Barthes, R. (1977) *Image, music, text*. London: Fontana.
- Bateman, J. & Paris, C. (1991) 'Constraining the deployment of lexicogrammatical resources during text generation: Towards a computational instantiation of register theory'. In Ventola, E. (ed.) *Functional and systemic linguistics: Approaches and uses*. Berlin & New York: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Benson, J.D. & Greaves, W.S. (1981) 'Field of discourse: Theory and application.' *Applied Linguistics* 2, 45-55.
- Benson, J.D. & Greaves, W.S. (1992) 'Collocation and field of discourse'. In Mann, W.C. & S.A. Thompson (eds.) *Discourse description: Diverse analyses of a fund raising text*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins, 397-410.
- Bernstein, B. (1971) *Class, codes and control, Volume 1: Theoretical studies towards a sociology of language*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul.
- Bernstein, B. (1973) *Class, codes and control, Volume 2: Applied studies towards a sociology of language*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul.
- Bernstein, (1975) *Class, codes and control, Volume 3: Toward a theory of educational transmission*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul.
- Berry, M. (1975) *An introduction to systemic linguistics: 1. Structures and systems*. London: B.T. Batsford.
- Berry, M. (1977) *An introduction to systemic linguistics: 2. Levels and links*. London: B.T. Batsford.
- Berry, M. (1987) 'Is teacher an unanalysed concept?'. In Halliday, M.A.K. & R.P. Fawcett (eds.) *New Developments in Systemic Linguistics. Volume 1*. London: Frances Pinter, 41-63.

- Berry, M. (1989) 'They're all out of step except our Johnny: A discussion of Motivation (or lack of it) in systemic linguistics'. *Occasional Papers in Systemic Linguistics* 3, 5-67.
- Berry, M. (2010) *Email communication with Ben Clarke*, 14 June – 19 July.
- Biber, D. (1993) 'Representativeness in corpus design'. *Literary and linguistic computing*. 8 (4), 243-257.
- Biber, D. (1997) 'Lexical bundles in spoken and written discourse: What the grammar books don't tell you'. In Gerome, S.B. (ed.) *An update on grammar: How it is learnt - how it is taught*. Paris: TESOL France, 4-8.
- Biber, D., Johansson, S., Leech, G.N., Conrad, S., & Finnigan, E. (1999) *Longman grammar of spoken and written English*. London: Longman.
- Bowcher, W.L. (1999) 'Investigating institutionalization in context.' In Ghadessy, M. (ed.) *Text and context in functional linguistics*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins, 141 – 176.
- Bowcher, W.L. (2001) *Play-by-play talk in radio: An enquiry into some relations between language and context.* PhD thesis, University of Liverpool, Liverpool.
- Brazil, D. (1995) *A grammar of speech*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Brown, R. & Gilman, A. (1960) 'The pronouns of power and solidarity'. In Sebeok, T.A. (ed.) *Style in Language*. New York: MIT. 253-76.
- Brown, G., & Yule, G. (1983) *Discourse Analysis*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Bühler, K. (1934) *Sprachtheorie: Die darstellungsfunktion der sprache*. New York: Fischer.
- Butler, C.S. (1985) *Systemic linguistics: Theory and applications*. London: B.T. Batsford.

- Butler, C.S. (2003) *Structure and function: An introduction to three major structural functional theories. Part 1: Approaches to the simplex clause*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Butt, D. (2008) *Parameters of context: On establishing the similarities and differences between social processes*. Department of Linguistics: Macquarie University, Sydney. Mimeo.
- Butt, D. (2010) *Email communication with Ben Clarke*, 13 April – 8 May.
- Butt, D. Fahey, R., Feez, S., Spinks, S., & Yallop, C. (2000) *Using functional grammar: An explorer's guide*. Second edition. Sydney: National Centre for English Language Teaching and Research, Macquarie University.
- Chomsky, N. (1957) *Syntactic structures*. The Hague: Mouton.
- Chomsky, N. (1965) *Aspects of the theory of syntax*. Cambridge, MA: M.I.T. Press.
- Clarke, B.P. (2007) *Searching for linguistic absence: Can word-based concordancer methods be used to study category-based research questions in computerised corpora?* Unpublished MA Dissertation, Cardiff University, Cardiff.
- Cloran, C. (1987) 'Negotiating new contexts in conversation'. *Occasional Papers in Systemic Linguistics, Volume 1* (1985), 85-110.
- Cloran, C., Butt, D., & Williams, G. (1996) 'Introduction'. In Cloran, C., D. Butt, & G. Williams (eds.) *Ways of saying, ways of meaning: Selected papers of Ruqaiya Hasan*. London: Cassell, 1-12.
- Crystal, D. (1988) *Rediscover grammar*. London: Longman.
- van Dijk, T. (2008) *Discourse and context. A sociocognitive approach*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press
- Eggins, S. (1994) *An introduction to systemic functional linguistics*. London: Frances Pinter.

- Egins, S. & Slade, D. (1997) *Analysing casual conversation*. London: Cassell.
- Fawcett, R.P. (1980) *Cognitive linguistics and social interaction: Towards an integrated model of a systemic functional grammar and the other components of a communicating mind*. Heidelberg: Julius Groos Verlag, and Exeter: University of Exeter.
- Fawcett, R.P. (1988) 'What makes a 'good' system network good?' In Benson, J.D. & W.S. Greaves (eds.) *Systemic functional approaches to discourse*. Norwood, N.J.: Ablex, 1-28.
- Fawcett, R.P. (2000) *A theory of syntax for systemic functional linguistics*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Fawcett, R.P. (2008) *Invitation to systemic functional linguistics through the Cardiff grammar: An extension and simplification of Halliday's systemic functional grammar*. London: Equinox.
- Fawcett, R.P. (forthcoming) *Alternative architectures for systemic functional linguistics: How do we choose?* London: Equinox.
- Fawcett, R.P., Tucker, G.H., & Lin, Y.Q. (1993) 'How a systemic functional grammar works: The role of realization in realization'. In Horacek, H., and M. Zock (eds.) *New Concepts in Natural Language Generation*. London: Pinter, 114-186.
- Firth, J.R. (1950) 'Personality and language in society'. *Sociological review*, 42, 37-52.
- Firth, J.R. (1957a) 'A synopsis of linguistic theory 1930-1955'. In *Studies in Linguistic Analysis*. Oxford: Philological Society.
- Firth, J.R. (1957b) *Papers in linguistics, 1934-1951*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Gregory, M.J. (1967) 'Aspects of varieties differentiation'. *Journal of Linguistics* 3 (2), 177-98.

- Gregory, M.J. (2002) 'Phasal analysis within communication linguistics: Two contrastive discourses' In Fries, P., M. Cummings, D. Lockwood & W. Spruiell (eds.) *Relations and functions within and around language*. London: Continuum, 316-345.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1961) 'Categories of the theory of grammar'. *Word* 17, 241-292.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1963) 'Class in relation to the axes of chain and choice in language'. *Linguistics*, 2, 5-15.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1967-8) 'Notes on transitivity and theme in English, Parts 1-3'. In *Journal of Linguistics* 3 (1), 37-81, 3 (2), 199-244 & 4 (2), 179-215.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1969) 'Options and functions in the English clause'. *Byrno Studies in English*, 8, 81-88.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1970) 'Language structure and language function'. In Lyons, J. (ed.) *New horizons in linguistics*. Harmondsworth: Penguin Books, 140-165.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1973) *Explorations in the functions of language*. London: Edward Arnold.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1976) 'The form of a functional grammar'. In Kress, G. (ed.) *Halliday: system and function in language*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 7-25.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1977) 'Text as semantic choice in social contexts'. In van Dijk, T. & J. Petofi (eds.) *Grammars and descriptions*. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter, 176-225.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1978) *Language as social semiotic. The social interpretation of language and meaning*. London: Edward Arnold.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1979) 'Modes of meaning and modes of expression: Types of grammatical structure, and their determination by different semantic functions'. In Allerton, D.J., E. Carney & D. Holdcroft (eds.) *Function and context in linguistic analysis: Essays offered to William Haas*. London: Cambridge University Press, 57-79.

- Halliday, M.A.K. (1985a) 'Context of situation'. In Halliday, M.A.K. & R. Hasan
Language, context and text: Aspects of language in a social semiotic perspective. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 3-14.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1985b) 'Register variation'. In Halliday, M.A.K. & R. Hasan
Language, context and text: Aspects of language in a social semiotic perspective. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 29-49.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1985c) 'Systemic background'. In Benson, J.D. & W.S. Greaves
(eds.) *Systemic perspectives on discourse*. Norwood, New Jersey: Ablex, 1-15.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1989) *Spoken and written language*. Victoria, Australia: Deacon
University Press.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1992a) 'How do you mean?'. In Davies, M. & L. Ravelli (eds.)
Advances in systemic linguistics: Recent theory and practice. London: Frances
Pinter, 20-35.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1992b) 'Language as system and language as instance: The
corpus as a theoretical construct'. In Svartvik, J. (ed.) *Directions in Corpus
Linguistics: Proceedings of Nobel Symposium 82 Stockholm, 4-8 August 1991*.
Berlin/ New York: Mouton de Gruyter, 61-77.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1994) *Introduction to functional grammar*. 2nd edition. London:
Arnold.
- Halliday, M.A.K. (1996) 'On grammar and grammatics'. In Hasan, R., C. Cloran &
D.G. Butt (eds.) *Functional descriptions: Theory in practice*. Amsterdam: John
Benjamins, 1-38.
- Halliday, M.A.K. & Fawcett, R.P. (1987) 'Introduction'. In Halliday, M.A.K. and R.D.
Fawcett (eds.) *New developments in systemic linguistics volume 1: Theory and
description*. London: Frances Pinter, 1-13.

- Halliday, M.A.K. & Greaves, W.S. (2008) *Intonation in the grammar of English*. London: Equinox.
- Halliday, M.A.K. & Hasan, R. (1976) *Cohesion in English*. London: Longman.
- Halliday, M.A.K. & Hasan, R. (1985) *Language, context and text: Aspects of language in a social semiotic perspective*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Halliday, M.A.K. & Martin, J.R. (1993) *Writing science: literacy and discursive power*. London: Falmer.
- Halliday, M.A.K. & Matthiessen, C. (1999) *Construing experience through meaning: A language-based approach to cognition*. London: Cassell.
- Halliday, M.A.K. & Matthiessen, C. (2004) *An introduction to functional grammar*. Third edition. London: Arnold.
- Halliday, M.A.K., McIntosh, A., & Stevens, P. (1964) *The linguistic sciences and language teaching*. London: Longmans.
- Hasan, R. (1978) 'Text in the systemic-functional model'. In Dressler, W. (ed.) *Current trends in text linguistics*. Berlin: de Gruyter, 228-246.
- Hasan, R. (1980) 'What's going on: A dynamic view of context'. In Copeland, J.E. & P.W. Davis (eds.) *The seventh LACUS forum*. Columbia, S.C: Hornbeam Press, 106-121.
- Hasan, R. (1983) *A semantic network for the analysis of messages in everyday talk between mothers and their children*. Department of Linguistics: Macquarie University, Sydney. Mimeo.
- Hasan, R. (1984) 'The nursery tale as genre'. *Nottingham Linguistic Circular* 13, 71-102.

- Hasan, R. (1985a) 'The identity of a text'. In Halliday, M.A.K. and R. Hasan
Language, context, and text: Aspects of language in a social semiotic perspective. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 97-116.
- Hasan, R. (1985b) 'The structure of text'. In Halliday, M.A.K. and R. Hasan
Language, context, and text: Aspects of language in a social semiotic perspective. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 52-69.
- Hasan, R. (1985c) 'The texture of a text'. In Halliday, M.A.K. and R. Hasan
Language, context, and text: Aspects of language in a social semiotic perspective. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 70-96.
- Hasan, R. (1987) The grammarian's dream: lexis as most delicate grammar. In
Halliday, M.A.K. & R.P. Fawcett (eds.) *New developments in systemic linguistics volume 1: Theory and description*. London: Frances Pinter, 184-211.
- Hasan, R. (1991) 'Questions as a mode of learning in everyday talk'. In Lê, T. & M.
McCausland (eds.) *Language education: Interaction and development*.
Launceston: University of Tasmania, 70-119.
- Hasan, R. (1992a) 'Meaning in sociolinguistic theory'. In Bolton, K. & H. Kwok (eds.)
Sociolinguistics today: International perspectives. London: Routledge, 80-119.
- Hasan, R. (1992b) 'Speech genre, semiotic mediation and the development of higher
mental functions'. In Halliday, M.A.K. & F.C.C. Peng (eds.) *Language sciences*
14 (4), 489-528.
- Hasan, R. (1995) 'The conception of context in text'. In Fries, P.H. & M. Gregory
(eds.) *Discourse in society: Systemic functional perspectives*. London: Edward
Arnold, 183-283.
- Hasan, R. (1996) 'Semantic networks: a tool for the analysis of meaning'. In Cloran,
C., D. Butt & G. Williams (eds.) *Ways of saying: Ways of meaning*. London:
Cassell, 104-131.

- Hasan, R. (1999) 'Speaking with reference to context'. In Ghadessy, M. (ed.) *Text and context in functional linguistics*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins, 219-328.
- Hasan, R. (2009) 'The place of context in a systemic functional model'. In Halliday, M.A.K. & J. Webster (eds.) *Continuum companion to systemic functional linguistics*. London: Continuum, 166-189.
- Hasan, R. (2010) *Conversation with Ben Clarke*, 14 September.
- Hasan R. (2011) 'Context for linguistic analysis'. In *Register and Context 2011*, 14-16 February, Macquarie University, Sydney.
- Heine, L. (2008) '“Want some coffee?” Reduced questions in spoken English discourse from a SFL perspective'. In *35th International Systemic Functional Congress*, 21-25 July Macquarie University, Sydney.
- Hinton, P.R. (2004) *Statistics explained*. Second Edition. Hove: Routledge.
- Hjelmslev, L. (1961) *Prolegomena to a theory of language* (trans. F. J. Whitfield). Madison: University of Wisconsin Press.
- Hudson, R.A. (1971) *English complex sentences*. Amsterdam: North Holland.
- Jakobson, R. (1960) 'Linguistics and poetics'. In Sebeok, T. (ed.) *Style in Language*. Cambridge, MA: M.I.T. Press, 350-377.
- Klein, D. & Manning. C.D. (2003) 'Accurate unlexicalized parsing'. In *Proceedings of the 41st Annual Meeting of the Association for Computational Linguistics, Volume 1*. Morristown NJ: Association for Computational Linguistics, 423-430.
- Kress, G. & van Leuween, T. (1996) *Reading images: The grammar of visual design*. London: Routledge.
- Lamb, S.M. (1966) *Outline of stratificational grammar*. Washington DC: Georgetown University Press.
- Leech, G.N. (1992) *Introducing English Grammar* London: Penguin.

- Lemke, J.L. (1984) *Semiotics and education*. Toronto: Toronto Semiotic Circle Monographs.
- Lemke, J.L. (1985) 'Ideology, intertextuality and the notion of register'. Benson, J. & W.S. Greaves (eds.) *Systemic perspectives on discourse*. Norwood, NJ: Ablex.
- van Leeuwen, T. (2005) 'Three models of interdisciplinarity'. In Wodak, R. & P. Chilton (eds.) *A new agenda in (critical) discourse analysis*, 3–18.
- Malinowski, B. (1923) 'The problem of meaning in primitive languages'. In Ogden, C.K. & I.A. Richards (eds.) *The meaning of meaning*. London: Routledge, 296-336.
- de Marneffe, M., MacCartney B., & Manning, C.D. (2006) 'Generating typed dependency parses from phrase structure parses'. In proceedings of 5th conference on language resources and evaluation, Genoa, Italy, 449-454.
- Martin, J.R. (1984) 'Language, register and genre'. In Christie, F. (ed.) *Children writing: reader. ECT Language Studies: children writing*. Victoria, Australia: Deakin University Press, 21-30.
- Martin, J.R. (1986) 'Intervening in the process of writing development'. In Painter, C. & J.R. Martin (eds.) *Writing to mean: Teaching genres across the curriculum*. Applied Linguistics Association of Australia, 11-43.
- Martin, J.R. (1987) 'The meaning of features in systemics linguistics'. In Halliday, M.A.K. & R.P. Fawcett (eds.) *New developments in systemic linguistics, Volume 1*. London: Frances Pinter, 14-40.
- Martin, J.R. (1992a) *English text: System and structure*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Martin, J.R. (1992b) 'Macro-proposals: Meaning by degree'. In Mann, W.C. & S.A. Thompson (eds.) *Text description: Diverse analyses of a fund raising text*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins, 359-395.

- Martin, J.R. (1992c) 'Theme, method of development and existentiality - the price of reply'. *Occasional Papers in Systemic Linguistics* 6. 147-184.
- Martin, J.R. (1999) 'Modelling context: The crooked path of progress in contextual linguistics.' In Ghadessy, M. (ed.) *Text and context in functional linguistics*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins, 25-61.
- Martin, J.R. (2010) 'Language, register and genre.' In Coffin, C., T. Lillis, & K. O'Halloran (eds.) *Applied linguistics methods: A reader*. London: Open University Press/Routledge, 12-32.
- Martin, J.R. & Rose, D. (2008) *Genre relations: Mapping culture*. London: Equinox.
- Martin, J.R. & White, P.R.R. (2005) *The language of evaluation: Appraisal in English*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Martinec, R. (1998) 'Cohesion in action'. *Semiotica*, 120 (1-2), 161-180.
- Martinec, R. (2000) 'Types of process in action'. *Semiotica*, 130 (3-4), 243-268.
- Martinec, R. (2001) 'Interpersonal resources in action'. *Semiotica*, 135 (1-4) 117-145.
- Martinec, R. (2004) 'Gestures that co-concur with speech as a systematic resource: The realization of experiential meanings in indexes'. *Social Semiotics*, 14 (2), 193-213.
- Matthiessen, C. (1992) 'Interpreting the textual metafunction.' In Davies, M. & L. Ravelli (eds.) *Advances in systemic linguistics: Recent theory and practice*. London: Pinter, 37-82.
- Matthiessen, C. (1993) 'Register in the round: Diversity in a united theory of register analysis'. In Ghadessy, M. (ed.) *Register analysis: Theory and practice*. London: Pinter, 221-292.
- Matthiessen, C. (1995) *Lexicogrammatical cartography: English systems*. Tokyo: International Language Sciences Publishers.

- Matthiessen, C. (2007) 'The 'architecture' of language according to systemic functional theory: Developments since the 1970s.' In Hasan, R., C. Matthiessen, & J. Webster (eds.) *Continuing discourse on language. Volume 2*. London: Equinox, 505-561.
- Matthiessen, C., Teruya, K., & Lãm, M. (2010) *Key terms in systemic functional linguistics*. London: Continuum.
- Matthiessen, C. & Bateman, J.A. (1991) *Text Generation and Systemic Functional Linguistics*. London: Pinter Publishers.
- Matthiessen, C. & Halliday, M.A.K. (2009) *Systemic functional grammar: A first step into the theory*. Higher Education Press.
- Matthiessen, C., Teruya, K. & Lam, M. (2010) *Key terms in systemic functional linguistics*. London: Continuum.
- O'Donnell, M. (2008a) *UAM CorpusTool: Version 2.0 user manual* [online] [Accessed August 2008] Available from:
<http://www.wagsoft.com/CorpusTool/UAMCorpusToolManualv27.pdf>
- O'Donnell, M. (2008b) 'The UAM CorpusTool: Software for corpus annotation and exploration'. In Bretones Callejas, C.M. et al. (eds.) *Applied Linguistics Now: Understanding Language and Mind*. Almería: Universidad de Almería, 1433-1447.
- O'Donnell, M. (2009) 'Resources and courses'. In Halliday, M.A.K. & J. Webster (eds.) *Continuum companion to systemic functional linguistics*. London: Continuum, 216-228.
- O'Donnell, M. (2010) 'Discovering meaning patterns in text using UAM CorpusTool' In *Centre for Language and Communication Seminar Series*, 29 September, Cardiff University, Cardiff.
- Patten, T. (1988) *Systemic text generation as problem solving*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

- Popper, K. (1963) *Conjectures and refutations*. London: Routledge.
- Poynton, C. (1984) 'Names as vocatives: forms and functions'. *Nottingham Linguistics Circular* 13, 1-34.
- Poynton, C. (1985) *Language and gender: Making the difference*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Poynton, C. (1990) *Address and the semiotics of social relations: A systemic-functional account of address forms and practices in Australian English*. PhD thesis, Linguistics department, University of Sydney, Sydney.
- Quirk, R., Greenbaum, S., Leech, G. & Svartvik, J. (1985) *A comprehensive grammar of the English language*. Harlow: Longman.
- Sacks, H., Schegloff, E.A. & Jefferson, G. (1978) 'A simplest systematics for the organization of turn taking for conversation.' In Schenkein, J. (ed.) *Language, thought and culture: Advances in the study of cognition*. New York: Academic Press, 1-55.
- de Saussure, F. (1966) *Course in General Linguistics*. (Trans. W. Baskin). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Scott, M. (1997) 'PC Analysis of key words - and key key words'. *System*, 25 (1), 1-13.
- Sinclair, J.M. (1972) *A course in spoken English: Grammar*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Sinclair, J.M. (1991) *Corpus, concordance, collocation*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Spencer, J. & Gregory, M.J. (1964) 'An approach to the study of style'. In Spencer, J. (ed.) *Linguistics and style*. London: Oxford University Press.

- Taverniers, M. (2005) 'Subjecthood and the notion of instantiation'. *Language Sciences*. 27, 651-678.
- Thompson, G. (1999) 'Acting the part: lexico-grammatical choices and contextual factors' in Ghadessy, M. (ed.) *Text and Context in Functional Linguistics*. Amsterdam: Benjamins, 103-126.
- Thompson, G. (2010) *Conversation with Ben Clarke*, 14 September.
- Tognini-Bonelli, E. (2001) *Corpus linguistics at work*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Tucker, G.H. (1996) 'So grammarians haven't the faintest idea: Reconciling lexis-oriented and grammar-oriented approaches to language'. In Hasan, R., D. Butt, & C. Cloran (eds.) *Functional descriptions: Theory in practice*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins, 145-78.
- Tucker, G.H. (1998) *The lexicogrammar of adjectives: A systemic functional approach to lexis*. London: Cassell Academic.
- Turner, G. (1973) 'Sociosemantic networks and discourse structure'. In Halliday, M.A.K. & R.P. Fawcett (eds.) *New developments in systemic linguistics*. London: Frances Pinter, 64-93.
- Williams, G. (2002) 'In search of representativity in specialised corpora: Categorisation through collocation'. *International Journal of Corpus Linguistics*. 7 (1), 43-64.
- Wonnacott, R.J & Wonnacott, T.H. (1985) *Introductory statistics*. 4th edition. New York: Wiley.

APPENDIX:

All instances of ellipsis in the data by sub-corpus

Key:

The entire clause attesting ellipsis of one or more of its elements is given in **emboldened font**. Frequently, surrounding co-text is provided, particularly where the ellipsis is textually-recoverable in type.

Ellipted elements are reconstituted in rounded parenthesis and given *italic font*.

The functional structure of ellipted elements is given in squared parenthesis immediately after the word(s) expounding the element in question.

Situationally-recoverable ellipsis types are given in underlined font.

NEWSPAPER REPORTS CORPUS

WEEK 4 DAILY STAR

Instead, Wayne Rooney won a debatable penalty when he went down under Manuel Almunia's challenge, and **(Wayne Rooney [S])** scored it himself before **Abou Diaby** turned **Ryan Giggs'** free-kick into his own net to give the hosts their victory

Arshavin turned and **(Arshavin [S])** let fly with a rasper of a drive in the first half to put the Gunners ahead.

Rooney went straight for the ball, **(Rooney [S])** put it on the spot and promptly sent Almunia the wrong way.

Rooney went straight for the ball, put it on the spot and **(Rooney [S])** promptly sent Almunia the wrong way.

WEEK 4 EXPRESS

However, Jensen was alert to the danger and **(Jensen [S])** claimed the ball at the Frenchman's feet.

WEEK 4 GUARDIAN

Late on, a fine ball by David Dunn put David Hoilett through on goal, but he chipped over the onrushing Green – and **(he [S])** also **(chipped [M] over)** the crossbar

The Premier League (is [O/M]) the best in the world?

The Premier League the best in the world? (It [S] is [O/M]) Not on this showing.

WEEK 4 INDEPENDENT

Bolton had scored just once in four and a half hours of action this season but **(Bolton [S])** managed two in 47 minutes against a Liverpool defence which looked just as frail with debutant Sotirios Kyrgiakos

WEEK 4 MAIL

WEEK 4 MIRROR

Peter Crouch lifted Tottenham to dizzy heights in the Premier League – and then **(Peter Crouch [S])** brought them crashing down to earth.

Supersub Crouch scored his first goal at White Hart Lane since his £9m summer move but **(Supersub Crouch [S])** fears high-flying Spurs will struggle to break into the top four this season

Birmingham levelled through Lee Bowyer three minutes after Crouch had equalised and **(Birmingham [S])** should have had a penalty when Wilson Palacios tripped James McFadden

Crouch hit the bar and **(Crouch [S])** had another headed off the line

so it was a close-run thing, and **(it [S])** also shows the value of having genuine quality on the bench

There is still two days left of the transfer window and **(there [S] is [O/M])** enough time to replace the unconvincing Carlo Cudicini.

But Redknapp is convinced that Crouch has been a shrewd piece of business and **(Redknapp [S])** says that Fabio Capello – despite seemingly not being completely convinced – should put him in England's World Cup squad

WEEK 4 MORNING STAR

they only won two away games last season and **(they [S])** have matched that total already.

WEEK 4 NEWS OF THE WORLD

Turner's overall performance was immaculate and **(Turner's overall performance [S])** underlined why Sunderland, Everton and Fulham are eager to break the bank to sign him

WEEK 4 TELEGRAPH

Regardless, their robust approach brought the visitors six bookings, a mandatory Football Association fine and, just after the break, an ill-deserved lead, Paul Schamer stealing in at the far post to convert Charles N'Zogbia's cross. **(It [S] is [O])** Not that the sense of injustice swirling around Goodison Park lasted long.

WEEK 4 TIMES

-

WEEK 5 DAILY STAR

-

WEEK 5 EXPRESS

The Wolves defender was presented with an open goal **but** (*the Wolves defender [S]*) fluffed his shot on the turn

The Wolves defender was presented with an open goal but fluffed his shot on the turn **and** (*the Wolves defender [S]*) saw his effort fly high and wide of the relieved Robinson's goal.

Diouf managed to hold his nerve **but** (*Diouf [S]*) only just (*managed to hold [M] his nerve [C]*) as he hit a low shot which squirmed through the unfortunate Hennessey's legs **and** **bobbled into the net to put the home side in front**

As Rovers began to revel in the late summer sun Andrews forced a superb save out of Hennessey from a set-piece **and** (*Andrews [S]*) crashed another effort against Berra in the box.

WEEK 5 GUARDIAN

Yossi Benayoun was superb throughout this contest, as he has been since the tail end of last season, **and** (*Yossi Benayoun [S]*) played a defining role in releasing Liverpool from their initial sluggishness.

The second was a tap-in following a superb charge into the area by Steven Gerrard **and** the third (*was [O/M]*) similarly comfortable after the player found himself onside **and** in space **having collected Andriy Voronin's through pass**.

But that should not take away from his achievement **nor** (*should [O] that [S] take away [M] from*) the class displayed by Liverpool, who briefly moved into fourth place before Manchester United's win at Tottenham.

WEEK 5 INDEPENDENT

Adebayor cleared an Emmanuel Eboué shot off the goalline **and** (*Adebayor [S]*) then waved towards the Arsenal fans as he left the pitch.

(It [S] was [O/M]) Hard to tell if this was ironic

Hard to tell if this was ironic, though (it [S] was [O/M]) probably not (ironic [C])

Craig Bellamy, whose contribution across the pitch was colossal, collected a Lescott interception, **(Craig Bellamy [S]) ran 40 yards**

Craig Bellamy, whose contribution across the pitch was colossal, collected a Lescott interception, ran 40 yards, **(Craig Bellamy [S]) exchanged passes with Richards**

Craig Bellamy, whose contribution across the pitch was colossal, collected a Lescott interception, ran 40 yards, exchanged passes with Richards and **(Craig Bellamy [S]) gratefully lashed in on 74 minutes.**

Bellamy won possession 30 yards out and **(Bellamy [S]) put through Wright-Phillips for a deft flick over Almunia.**

In the blinding finale, Arsenal could have scored fully four times but **(Arsenal [S]) did so only once.**

WEEK 5 MAIL

Do Portsmouth deserve to be at the foot of the table? 'Yes (Portsmouth [S] do [O] deserve [M] to be at the foot of the table [C]), because we haven't got any points.'

WEEK 5 MIRROR

Liverpool were held to a goalless draw at Stoke last season and **(Liverpool [S]) came up short**

WEEK 5 MORNING STAR

But Sir Alex Ferguson's men eased their way back into the game and **(Sir Alex Ferguson's men [S]) were back on par after the evergreen Ryan Giggs scored on 24 minutes.**

WEEK 5 NEWS OF THE WORLD

Anton Ferdinand then brought the ball out and **(Anton Ferdinand [S]) fed Bent**

For a second, Turner started to celebrate then **(Turner [S]) realised he was in front of 3,000 Hull supporters**

WEEK 5 TELEGRAPH

Had the winger made a decent connection with the ball it would surely have been a goal, but he didn't (*make [M] a decent connection with the ball [C]*) but Kevin Fahey picked up on a loose ball and (*Kevin Fahey [S]*) sent a long range shot fizzing unchecked through a gormless Villa defence, just wide of the post

WEEK 5 TIMES

Etuhu, the Fulham midfield player, lunged for a loose ball and (*Etuhu [S]*) caught the Everton captain with his trailing leg. Neville immediately waded to the dugout for help and (*Neville [S]*) looked in significant pain

WEEK 6 DAILY STAR

Wolves did not have the same problem and (*Wolves [S]*) added a second goal five minutes after the interval

WEEK 6 EXPRESS

He came off the bench in the second half against Sunderland for his home debut and (*he [S]*) scored twice.

WEEK 6 GUARDIAN

(*It [S] is [O/M] Time to draw a line under it all.*)

Thomas Vermaelen has become a very dependable weapon and (*Thomas Vermaelen [S]*) is now the club's top scorer.

The Belgian gives Arsenal a genuine focal point from set-pieces, and (*The Belgian [S]*) demonstrated his talent for jumping high at the right time to smack in Robin van Persie's corner.

Gathering possession near the centre circle, he cantered forward, (*he [S]*) exchanged passes with Eboué

Gathering possession near the centre circle, he cantered forward, exchanged passes with Eboué, and (*he [S]*) crafted a curler into the top corner.

WEEK 6 INDEPENDENT

Reo-Coker was sent home and **(Reo-Coker [S] was [O])** dropped from the squad for this game and a reappearance in a Villa shirt looks unlikely, **at least (a reappearance in a Villa shirt [S] looks [M] unlikely [C])** in the short term Nadir Belhadj, chasing Petrov, needlessly hooked his foot around the Bulgarian **but (Nadir Belhadj [S])** only got the player's legs Nadir Belhadj, chasing Petrov, needlessly hooked his foot around the Bulgarian **but only got the player's legs and (Nadir Belhadj [S])** conceded the penalty that James Milner thrashed low to his left.

WEEK 6 MAIL

Similarities with the galacticos begin (with an all-white kit [C]) and end with an all-white kit

Similarities with the *galacticos* begin and **(similarities with the galacticos [S])** end with an all-white kit

WEEK 6 MIRROR

Record £6million signing Christian Benitez was denied three times by the Wales keeper and Lee Bowyer **(was [O] denied [M])** twice before O'Connor finally broke Myhill's brave resistance.

WEEK 6 MORNING STAR

Non-stop midfielder man Darren Fletcher popped up in the City six-yard box to head home a Giggs cross and **(non-stop midfielder man Darren Fletcher [S])** put the Reds 2-1 up on 47 minutes

Two minutes later, Craig Bellamy dummied Park Ji-Sung on the far corner of the Reds box and **(Craig Bellamy [S])** fired home an unstoppable shot across Foster.

Fletcher wasn't finished though and **(Fletcher [S])** repeated his double act with Giggs to put United ahead again after 81 minutes.

in the 96th minute, Giggs received the ball in the middle of the park and **(Giggs [S])** released Owen on the edge of City's 18-yard line.

The ex-Liverpool hitman advanced three yards and **(the ex-Liverpool hitman [S])** shot low into the far corner to shatter City's dreams

WEEK 6 NEWS OF THE WORLD

But after the dispossession, (was [O/M]) the disappointment - a clean strike catching the upright flush in its face.

Torres had already served up a delicious chance for Yossi Benayoun and (Torres [S] had [O]) volleyed into the punters before he surged beyond Tomkins.

WEEK 6 TELEGRAPH

but I think there's a part of him that wants to show people that he's over the injuries which affected him for a couple of years." His early-season form suggests that he may be (over [M] the injuries which affected him for a couple of years [C])

WEEK 6 TIMES

Harry Redknapp, the Tottenham manager, was understandably annoyed at Howard Webb's failure to spot Ricardo Carvalho's 55th-minute trip on Keane as the Ireland striker reached the byline, but (Harry Redknapp [S]) viewed the loss of King eight minutes earlier as more crucial.

WEEK 7 DAILY STAR

and after 16 minutes Bramble got away from his marker and (Bramble [S]) headed into the net following a cross from Charles N'Zogbia.

WEEK 7 EXPRESS

WEEK 7 GUARDIAN

Sam Ricketts launched a long throw from the right, Kevin Davies flicked (IC) on

Lee walked the offside tightrope superbly and (Lee [S]) rounded Hart

Lee walked the offside tightrope superbly and rounded Hart, but (Lee [S]) dragged his shot across goal and wide.

Phillips drifted in from the right and (Phillips [S]) exchanged passes with Benítez before thumping a shot into the bottom corner.

and the 21-year-old South Korean picked up the loose ball, **(the 21-year-old South Korean [S]) kept his composure wonderfully with the goal gaping and defenders sliding in**

and the 21-year-old South Korean picked up the loose ball, kept his composure wonderfully with the goal gaping and defenders sliding in and **(the 21-year-old South Korean [S]) tapped the ball home to seal the points.**

WEEK 7 INDEPENDENT

A subdued O'Neill admitted the sending off "may have galvanised Blackburn Rovers" and **(A subdued O'Neill [S]) said he had asked referee Mark Clattenburg for clarification on his decision to award a penalty.**

he has scored in the last five games, and **(he [S]) put Villa ahead in the third minute.**

After a cross from John Carew, Agbonlahor's mis-hit shot bobbed across the box, and with Paul Robinson sprawled on the ground, **(Agbonlahor's mis-hit shot [S]) bounced in off the far post.**

Ryan Nelsen's lob at the halfway line bounced once, then **(Ryan Nelsen's lob at the halfway line [S]) was inadvertently headed on by Dunne for Samba to score.**

WEEK 7 MAIL

He picked up the ball on the right of the penalty area, **(he [S]) left the unfortunate Sonko for dead again**

He picked up the ball on the right of the penalty area, left the unfortunate Sonko for dead again and **(he [S]) dribbled around Myhill before casually flicking a right-footed strike into the empty net.**

WEEK 7 MIRROR

City looked a different proposition after the break and Matthew Etherington finally got to look into the whites of Ben Foster's eyes when Rory Delap picked him out with a low cross only to delay fatally. **That (was [O/M]) the cue for Stoke to show more adventure as United's frustration began to become clear.**

WEEK 7 MORNING STAR

Arsenal lost here last season and **(Arsenal [S]) knew that a third defeat of this campaign would already have their detractors writing off their title hopes.**

WEEK 7 NEWS OF THE WORLD

Keane is a player who thrives on confidence and (Keane [S]) did not allow that to knock his nerve.

Keane skipped up, (Keane [S]) shimmied

Keane skipped up, shimmied, (Keane [S]) fooled keeper Brian Jensen into diving right

Keane skipped up, shimmied, fooled keeper Brian Jensen into diving right and (Keane [S]) coolly slotted the ball into the other corner.

"I'm not going to moan but that was a big turning point," claimed Coyle. (It [S] is [O/M]) Unlikely (that was a big turning point [C]).

WEEK 7 TELEGRAPH

The Wolves manager has now overseen 25 Premier League games at the Stadium of Light and (The Wolves manager [S] has [O]) not won any of them.

WEEK 7 TIMES

but they were comfortably outplayed and (they [S]) could have lost by a heavier scoreline.

WEEK 8 DAILY STAR

Heitinga came forward from the back and (Heitinga [S]) exchanged passes with Osman

It was a bold play by Everton, but (it [S] was [O/M]) one which could see them caught on the break.

WEEK 8 EXPRESS

Tottenham went into the match without a win in nine attempts at the ground and then (Tottenham [S]) got off to a terrible start.

Instead Tottenham regrouped and (Tottenham [S]) equalised 30 minutes later through Niko Kranjcar.

Lee Chung-Yong was unmarked at the back post and (Lee Chung-Yong [S]) helped the ball on.

Palacios made a quick recovery, however, and (Palacios [S]) had a hand in their equaliser.

Zat Knight met Matt Taylor's free-kick in the 38th minute **but (Zat Knight [S]) was off-balance**

Zat Knight met Matt Taylor's free-kick in the 38th minute but was off-balance **and (Zat Knight [S]) headed wide.**
but Cudicini was alert to the danger **and (Cudicini [S]) was happy to concede a corner.**

The England winger fired in a shot that Jussi Jaaskelainen did well to beat away **but (Jussi Jaaskelainen [S]) only (beat away [M] the shot [C]) to Palacios six yards out.**

Palacios was well placed in front of goal **but (Palacios [S]) only succeeded in sending his effort closer to the corner flag.**

WEEK 8 GUARDIAN

WEEK 8 INDEPENDENT

Wigan beat Chelsea last weekend **but (Wigan [S]) have now lost to the team boasting the worst defensive record in the Premier League.**
Chances came **and (chances [S]) went.**

WEEK 8 MAIL

Amid all this intrigue, there was never a hint that Portsmouth might be about to break their duck. **Well, (there [S] was [O/M]) scarcely a hint.**
Home they came, **home (they [S] came [M]) with the points.**

WEEK 8 MIRROR

United had not only escaped **but (United [S] had [O]) found the momentum to push for a winner in the seconds that remained.**
Bent collected Lee Cattermole's short pass with his back to goal, **then (Bent [S]) turned unopposed to beat Ben Foster with a sweet strike from 22 yards.**
Berbatov's overhead kick was perfect in its execution **and (Berbatov's overhead kick [S]) gave Craig Gordon no hope.**

WEEK 8 MORNING STAR

Referee Phil Dowd booked an infuriated Scott Parker for retaliation and then (Referee *Phil Dowd* [S]) seemed to take an age, consulting the fourth official Anthony Taylor and the assistant referee, before deciding that Dikgacoi should go for putting his hand in Parker's face.

WEEK 8 NEWS OF THE WORLD

Fabregas departed to a great ovation and (*Fabregas* [S]) watched from the sidelines as Nicklas Bendtner, Walcott and Alex Song passed up opportunities to rack up more goals

WEEK 8 TELEGRAPH

Benitez would love to repeat another victory in the Champions League this season and in striker Fernando Torres (*Benitez* [S]) has a world-class player which would help him achieve it.

WEEK 8 TIMES

Jeered even as the City team bus rolled in to the car park, he did appear affected by the venom that came his way, but (*he* [S]) still kept the ball rolling with minimal fuss.

WEEK 9 DAILY STAR

Reina thought he had the striker's shot covered and (*Reina* [S]) could only look on in horror when it hit the beach ball and flew past him into the net.

Sunderland sensed an opportunity and (*Sunderland* [S]) could have been out of sight by half-time.

Bent might have completed a hat-trick but (*Bent* [S]) headed a 22nd-minute Reid cross straight at Reina

Bent might have completed a hat-trick but headed a 22nd-minute Reid cross straight at Reina and then (*Bent* [S]) glanced Phil Bardsley's driven ball wide of the far post seven minutes before the break.

But they managed to survive further mishap and (*they* [S]) gradually eased their way back into the game

The Scotland international had to block Ryan Babel's 13th-minute shot on the turn at close quarters and (*The Scotland international* [S]) was happy to see Fabio Aurelio's 27th-minute free-kick fly wide

WEEK 9 EXPRESS

Well, we can give Ancelotti the benefit of the doubt for an unconvincing answer and (*we* [S] *can* [O]) put it down to his admirable, but not always successful, attempt to deal with the English language.

But Villa held on to leave manager Martin O'Neill with only two defeats in eight games. (*They* [S] *are* [O/M]) *Interesting stats, those, made more wide-eyed by the fact that Villa have also won at Liverpool and drawn with Manchester City.*

WEEK 9 GUARDIAN

Again much of Arsenal's football was sublime and at one point (*much of Arsenal's football* [S]) threatened to bury the opposition in goals.

If anything, Arsenal slackened off a little too much and after conceding a soft goal shortly before half-time (*Arsenal* [S]) kept the Emirates on tenterhooks as they spent much of the second half squandering chances at one end while leaving inviting gaps for Birmingham at the other.

Birmingham found themselves under siege and (*Birmingham* [S]) could have taken little comfort from seeing Tomas Rosicky fluff a couple of chances in the opening nine minutes since it was obvious that a goal for Arsenal was not far distant.

At that point Birmingham would have been grateful to reach half-time without conceding more goals but they surprised Arsenal, and possibly (*they* [S] *surprised* [M]) themselves, by getting one back.

WEEK 9 INDEPENDENT

(*Put* [M]) *Hands up those who still believe the Premier League is too predictable.*

WEEK 9 MAIL

Sir Alex Ferguson did not want (*any drama* [C]) or need any drama after the week he has just endured.

Sir Alex Ferguson did not want or (*Sir Alex Ferguson* [S] *did* [O] *not*) need any drama after the week he has just endured.

United will look back and (*United* [S] *will* [O]) wonder why there was any late drama.

Owen had a part in United's opening goal but (*Owen [S] did [O]*) not really (*have [M]*) the one he most wanted.

The striker's movement was excellent, his finishing (*was [O/M]*) woeful.

WEEK 9 MIRROR

The early pressure came from Portsmouth but (*the early pressure [S]*) lacked any real penetration.

WEEK 9 MORNING STAR

WEEK 9 NEWS OF THE WORLD

The Hammers skipper took a right hook from Stoke slugger Robert Huth and (*The Hammers skipper [S]*) finished yet another defeat bloodied, bruised and battered.

Julien Faubert tried his hardest to pull out of the tackle but (*Julien Faubert [S]*) was left aghast as the ref pointed to the spot and Beattie made no mistake.

WEEK 9 TELEGRAPH

but they regrouped at half-time and (*they [S]*) were level within 65 seconds of the re-start.

WEEK 9 TIMES

Bobby Zamora, whom Hull tried to sign in the summer, put Fulham ahead late in the first half, then (*Bobby Zamora [S]*) set up the second for Diomansy Kamara.

but Zamora had read Kamara's intentions and (*Zamora [S]*) slid in to meet the ball, only to put his first-time shot narrowly over the bar.

Duff took a touch and (*Duff [S]*) hit a fierce volley from 20 yards that Myhill, once again, did well to parry

the forward looked up and (*the forward [S]*) hit a low cross-shot for Kamara — marginally offside when Hughes played the original pass — to score his second goal of the season.

WEEK 10 DAILY STAR

Jo lost his footing on the edge of the box and (Jo [S]) shot tamely at Jussi Jaaskelainen before sending a glancing header wide from a corner.

Everton finished the first half the stronger side and having emerged for the second looking similarly purposeful, (Everton [S]) drew level within 10 minutes of the restart.

WEEK 10 EXPRESS

Wolves retaliated and (Wolves [S]) appeared to have strong claims for a penalty rejected by referee Peter Walton when central defender Richard Dunne held back Kevin Doyle as he looked to burst clear.

Agbonlahor saw plenty of the ball and (Agbonlahor [S]) had one shot blocked by the head bandaged and impressive Jody Craddock when well positioned. his downward header was weak and (his downward header [S]) did not trouble Hennessey.

WEEK 10 GUARDIAN

-

WEEK 10 INDEPENDENT

Wigan, by contrast, adapted brilliantly to full-back Maynor Figueroa withdrawing with a knee injury mid-way through the first half, and (Wigan [S]) dominated the rest of the match.

WEEK 10 MAIL

Football may be unpredictable ... but surely (football [S] is [O/M]) not (unpredictable [C]) to that extent.

Maybe Altidore might have been able to conjure up a goal but he turned up too late and (he [S]) did not even make the Hull bench.

On the hour, Myhill stuck out an instinctive hand to stop a close-range shot from Aruna Dindane and, two minutes later, (Myhill [S]) was again at full stretch to save Hassan Yebda's effort.

WEEK 10 MIRROR

Crouch leapt above the Stoke defence and **(Crouch [S])** forced Simonsen into a fingertip save as the ball looped towards the far post.

Crouch got on the end of the cross and **(Crouch [S])** beat Simonsen with his lobbed header

WEEK 10 MORNING STAR

If the critics were to be believed, boss Benitez was for the chop and the Reds were all washed up and **(the Reds [S] were [O])** facing financial ruin.

If the critics were to be believed, boss Benitez was for the chop and the Reds were all washed up and facing financial ruin. **Well, not after this cracking battle.**

Torres forced his injured frame through the game and **(Torres [S])** grabbed his ninth goal of the campaign midway through the second half to get Liverpool firing.

The atmosphere was electric, **the noise (was [O/M])** deafening.

Then Lucas robbed Paul Scholes and **(Lucas [S])** gave Kuyt another chance

United had better possession and **(United [S])** hit Liverpool with pace

He held off the England centre-back and **(he [S])** lashed a shot into the roof of the net.

WEEK 10 NEWS OF THE WORLD

Some things came off, **some didn't (come off [M])**.

He wasn't the best player on the park – **(he [S] was [O/M])** not **(the best player on the park [C])** by a distance.

The sausage roll is his own improvised, contemporary Cockney rhyming slang. For the hole. In the hole. (Do [O] you [S]) Geddit.

Anelka peeled left and **(Anelka [S])** dashed on to the pass before sending a cross into the cluster of onrushing bodies.

Gael Givet had stolen a march on the Chelsea striker but seized by panic, **(Gael Givet [S])** slid in the own goal.

That typified Blackburn's delivery. (It [S] was [O/M]) Worse than the Royal Mail.

But Givet's aberration apart, they defended stoutly enough. Well, in the first half at least. **None (defended [M])** more stoutly than Paul Robinson - no pun intended, **Paul. Honest.**

Fabio Capello had been at White Hart Lane earlier in the afternoon and **(Fabio Capello [S]) decided not to dice with tea-time London traffic.**

Drogba rolled Givet with ridiculous ease, his cut-back was partially cleared and Lampard welcomed the invitation. (It [S] was [O/M]) A goal that was an advert for Lampard's predatory instincts and Drogba's new-found selflessness.

WEEK 10 TELEGRAPH

The hosts, seemingly conscious of a poor record against their guests, threatened through the otherwise anonymous Carlos Tévez and **(the hosts [S]) saw a goal from Micah Richards ruled out for little or nothing.**

The hosts, seemingly conscious of a poor record against their guests, threatened through the otherwise anonymous Carlos Tévez and saw a goal from Micah Richards ruled out for little or nothing, **but (the hosts [S]) looked a shadow of the side who made such an imperious start to the campaign.**

WEEK 10 TIMES

Of the leading six teams on Saturday morning, only Chelsea raised their hands and **(Chelsea [S]) bellowed: "Yes, we would like to win the championship**

only Chelsea raised their hands and bellowed: "Yes, we would like to win the championship. (we [S] would [O]) Very much (like [M] to win the championship [C]), actually."

With Liverpool, the supposedly dead-and-buried Liverpool, beating United at Anfield, (it [S] is [O/M]) small wonder that Arsène Wenger reflected ruefully on what might have been.

It made for bright, inventive fare. (It [S] was [O/M]) Hardly as incident packed or emotionally charged as the viewing from Anfield, on the television screens in the Upton Park concourses, but it was largely enjoyable.

The home fans even felt moved to indulge in the occasional chanting; it could be their day. **Maybe (it [S] could [O]) not (be [M] their day [C]), to judge by two split-seconds of defensive mediocrity, both in the first half.**

Green clawed at a cross from Bacary Sagna and **(Green [S]) could only touch it on to Van Persie, who guided in his sixth goal of the season.**

Parker, behaving more like a madman than a warrior, collected his sixth booking of the campaign for a foul on Emmanuel Eboué and then **(Parker [S]) screamed blue murder when not awarded a penalty after he had fallen under a challenge from Gallas.**

Arsenal, like most of the other title pretenders, must stand up and **(Arsenal [S] must [O]) be counted.**

WEEK 18 DAILY STAR

But Robbo was nowhere to be seen and he had to scramble back and *(he [S] had [O] to)* pull of an incredible save to stop the ball sneaking into the corner.

Wigan came out after the break in a meaner mood and *(Wigan [S])* soon equalised when Rodallega nodded home after outjumping Gael Givet to get on the end of Charles N'Zogbia's cross.

WEEK 18 EXPRESS

-

WEEK 18 GUARDIAN

But the 28-year-old survived and *(the 28-year-old [S])* now looks set to remain in the Spurs side for some time.

He went into yesterday's encounter on the back of some encouraging displays and, over the course of 90 Boxing Day minutes, *(he [S])* did more than anyone to ensure the visitors left west London with a point.

He went into yesterday's encounter on the back of some encouraging displays and, over the course of 90 Boxing Day minutes, did more than anyone to ensure the visitors left west London with a point. The highlight of Gomes's show (was [O/M]) an eight-minute spell midway through the second half, when he made three reaction saves, two from Bobby Zamora and one from Clint Dempsey.

WEEK 18 INDEPENDENT

-

WEEK 18 MAIL

David Nugent knows exactly what he wants for a late Christmas present – *(he [S] wants [M])* a move to Burnley.

(If [S] is [O]) No wonder Owen Coyle and his chairman Barry Kilby have already begun talks at least to extend the loan - which ends on January 22 - until the end of the season.

WEEK 18 MIRROR

Robinho was substituted by Craig Bellamy with 20 minutes to go and **(Craig Bellamy [S])** was soon in the thick of things.

WEEK 18 MORNING STAR

Cue ecstatic celebrations amongst the Everton fans and **(cue [M])** a precious, deserved point for their side.

WEEK 18 NEWS OF THE WORLD

Others may recall his recent team selection at Old Trafford, **(others [S] may [O])** hum a little bit

Others may recall his recent team selection at Old Trafford, hum a little bit, and **(others [S] may [O])** swiftly move on, whispering about whether he's in a position to talk about the spirit of the game.

He was neat and tidy and **(he [S] was [O])** determined to get forward at every chance.

Wolves settled after the early pressure and **(Wolves [S])** will lament a gilt-edged chance for Kevin Doyle before half-time.

WEEK 18 TELEGRAPH

Now Arsenal sit only four points behind Carlo Ancelotti's nervous frontrunners. How **(do [O] Arsenal [S] sit [M] only four points behind Carlo Ancelotti's nervous frontrunners [C])?**

the Croatian, still too diffident after that horrendous leg injury, should have scored within four minutes but **(the Croatian [S])** rolled his shot too close to Brad Friedel.

Villa's wall resembled a row of tall pines with none higher than that towering Norwegian spruce. John Carew. (It [S] was [O/M]) No problem for Arsenal's No 4.

Fabregas bent the ball just over Villa's seven lords a leaping and **(Fabregas [S] bent [M] the ball [C])** past the diving Friedel.

WEEK 18 TIMES

Richard Garcia was sent through by the outstanding Craig Fagan and **(Richard Garcia [S])** appeared to be tripped by Wes Brown as the defender came rushing across.

Hull had two fantastic chances to score after that **but (Hull [S]) squandered both**

Garcia had bombed forward, leaving three United players in his wake, and **(Garcia [S]) passed the ball out wide to Fagan, whose cross was met crisply by Seyi Olofinjana.**

Shortly after, Rooney conceded possession, Olofinjana raced forward and **(Olofinjana [S]) released the ball to Stephen Hunt just before Rafael could make the tackle**

but, to their credit, they refused to be cowed and **(they [S]) found themselves level on the hour after that most rare thing — a Rooney error.**

The forward attempted to play the ball back to Kuszczak but **(the forward [S]) failed to spot Fagan lurking with intent.**

Despite being encountered by Kuszczak, who had raced out of goal, Fagan kept his composure and **(Fagan [S]) crossed to the far post where Jozy Altidore fell under a challenge from Rafael.**

How would United respond? **And (how would [O]) Rooney (respond [M]) for that matter.**

How would United respond? And Rooney for that matter. **(Rooney [S] would [O] respond [M]) Impressively, as it turned out.**

Then, just for good measure, Rooney latched on to Brown's firm header forward and **(Rooney [S]) crossed for Berbatov to add a third.**

WEEK 21 DAILY STAR

McCarthy fired a long-range free-kick just over, then **(McCarthy [S]) turned provider again to set up Kalinic who stumbled on the edge of the box.**

WEEK 21 EXPRESS

But instead of pointing to the spot, Mason deemed the Liverpool midfielder had dived — and **(Mason [S]) booked him.**

(It [S] was [O/M]) No wonder Benitez, despite his bitter disappointment at the final outcome, was thrilled by his side's effort.

WEEK 21 GUARDIAN

they could even have left out a handful of Europeans as well as the Africans who are on international duty in Angola and **(they [S] could [O] have) still cruised to victory.**

A 4-0 scoreline after 34 minutes actually flattered Sunderland. (It [S] is [O/M]) Absurd but true.

Nicolas Anelka was exceptional and (Nicolas Anelka [S]) has rarely looked so boyishly happy.

Ashley Cole scored a solo goal of such distinction, and (Ashley Cole [S]) attacked with such marauding intent They suffocated with possession, and (they [S]) finished with precision.

Once he shrugged off his nearest marker he cantered, unchallenged, into the penalty area and (he [S]) steered the ball into the far corner of the net.

He tamed a lofted pass, (he [S]) left a bewildered Lorik Cana on his backside

He tamed a lofted pass, left a bewildered Lorik Cana on his backside, and (he [S]) poked in a fabulous goal.

WEEK 21 INDEPENDENT

Berbatov had to hold off Michael Duff and then (Berbatov [S] had [O] to) drive his shot in from a relatively acute angle.

(It [S] was [O/M]) No matter that the game was won or that Burnley had just struck the post.

WEEK 21 MAIL

Hull, meanwhile, have not won in seven games but (Hull [S]) will see the draw as a point gained

but referee Atkinson appeared to have his view blocked and (referee Atkinson [S]) waved play on.

WEEK 21 MIRROR

Wolves record signing Kevin Doyle recovered from illness and (Wolves record signing Kevin Doyle [S]) lined up alongside Sylvan Ebanks-Blake

Mancienne looked uncertain and (Mancienne [S]) failed to deal with a bouncing ball on the edge of the box

Mancienne looked uncertain and failed to deal with a bouncing ball on the edge of the box and (Mancienne [S]) allowed Rodallega to send in his low shot which Hahnemann turned around the post.

Doyle was trying his best to inspire Wolves and (Doyle [S]) won their second corner of the half in injury-time

Stearman gave away a spot-kick when he tugged at the shirt of McCarthy and (Stearman [S]) was dismissed for a second bookable offence.

N'Zogbia shook off the challenge of Ward and (N'Zogbia [S]) squared the ball back to Rodallega

N'Zogbia went to celebrate with the Wigan fans and (N'Zogbia [S]) was yellow-carded for his actions.

WEEK 21 MORNING STAR

They dominated the second period but (they [S]) only spasmodically threatened to find a way past Green.

James Milner's drive beat Green but (James Milner's drive [S]) clipped the outside of a post

WEEK 21 NEWS OF THE WORLD

YOU can imagine David Moyes sat at home last night, dominos in one hand, a cool Chardonnay in the other. And an immovable smile from ear to ear. Nothing left to say, avoiding maybe the temptation to text Joleon Lescott, or throw another dart at the Manchester City crest. (It [S] was [O/M]) A moral victory over Mark Hughes perhaps.

Yesterday was redemption time. (Yesterday [S] was [O/M]) Vindication even, for doing it his way.

You would not have wanted to have been a losing Everton player going back into the dressing room last night. Nor (would [O] you [S] have wanted [M] to have been) a fan who did not give it the full works.

Robinho went on, in his own time, when his strip was nicely tucked in and his bright, shiny, yellow boots were ready. And (Robinho [S] went on [M]) for what?

He was not even an irritant to an Everton defence that was too big and too strong and too committed. £33m. Baffling. A statement signing we were told when the Sheiks thrust him at Hughes in the last January transfer window. How true (that [S] is [O/M]).

A statement signing we were told when the Sheiks thrust him at Hughes in the last January transfer window. How true. (It [S] was [O/M]) A statement of decadence. Brought on after 10 minutes, taken off on the hour. A reluctant handshake with the manager who showed his own pair are a bit bigger.

A statement signing we were told when the Sheiks thrust him at Hughes in the last January transfer window. How true. A statement of decadence. (He [S] was [O/M]) Brought on after 10 minutes, taken off on the hour. A reluctant handshake with the manager who showed his own pair are a bit bigger.

A statement signing we were told when the Sheiks thrust him at Hughes in the last January transfer window. How true. A statement of decadence. Brought on after 10 minutes. (he [S] was [O/M]) taken off on the hour. A reluctant handshake with the manager who showed his own pair are a bit bigger.

Ultimately this was Mancini's first big test - Blackburn, Wolves and Stoke, come on - and he failed (this first big test [C]).

Micah Richards began his shirt tug on Louis Saha outside of the Manchester City penalty area, but (Micah Richards [S]) ended it in it.

Saha remained calm and (**Saha [S]**) stroked his penalty kick straight down the goal and past Given.

A quarter-of-an-hour later, Robinho was gone - sullenly. (**Was [O] Robinho [S] gone [M]**) For good?

A quarter-of-an-hour later, Robinho was gone - sullenly. For good? Perhaps (**Robinho [S] was [O] gone [M] for good**).

WEEK 21 TELEGRAPH

(**It [S] was [O/M]**) Game one for Owen Coyle at Bolton

Game one for Owen Coyle at Bolton, (**It [S] was [O/M]**) game 767 at Arsenal for Arsène Wenger

Game one for Owen Coyle at Bolton, game 767 at Arsenal for Arsène Wenger – and (**It [S] was [O/M]**) an outcome that provided further proof of the value of managerial stability.

He had been out for the past three weeks, but (**he [S]**) was immediately dangerous yesterday in an advanced midfield position as Craig Eastmond made his first start in the holding role.

Eduardo had created space on the left and (**Eduardo [S]**) crossed for Fabregas

Fabregas says he now feels “stronger” in the final yards of the pitch, but (**Fabregas [S]**) modestly put his improved finishing down to “luck and maybe more composure”.

Fabregas broke forward and (**Fabregas [S]**) fed Eduardo

JOY OF SIX CORPUS

2010-03-05 FA CUP QUARTER FINALS

It had four goalkeepers, seven goals, 13 minutes of injury-time in an age when there were usually around 13 seconds and, most improbably of all, an Englishman called Chic. (It [S] is [O/M]) Not that there was anything particularly chic about the game.

It was a rugged knee-trembler of an FA Cup tie which, wrote Patrick Barclay in this paper, "produced so much excitement that purists in the 30,000 crowd forgot to complain". (He [S] was [O/M]) Quite right too.

for the second, eight minutes later, he conceded a free-kick wide on the left and then **(he [S]) headed it past Peter Shilton.**

Anderson dislocated his shoulder just before half-time and **(Anderson [S]) was taken off.**

Moments after Anderson's own goal, the brilliant Trevor Francis volleyed their first from Russell Osman's errant header – "an act which can be compared to provide an arsonist with a blow torch", wrote Ronald Atkin in the Observer – and **(Trevor Francis [S]) made the second for Colin Walsh shortly before half-time with a classy run on the right.**

Ipswich won the replay against Forest 1-0 three days later, thanks to that rarest of things - a right-footed Arnold Muhren volley, but **(Ipswich [S]) would lose in the semi-final.**

4. Newcastle 4-3 Forest, 09/03/1974 (This [S] was [O/M]) Another famous atmosphere in the north-east, for slightly different reasons.

If this bedraggled champion – with his mad-professor hair and top barely reaching halfway down his protruding stomach as he was led off by the police towards the mother of all hangovers – was comedy gold, **what followed certainly wasn't (comedy gold [C]).**

Blissett deftly volleyed in the first and John Barnes scored the second with a regal header. (It [S] was [O/M]) No surprise, this: Barnes had form at Highbury, where he bagged a hat-trick at the age of 19, and in FA Cup quarter-finals, having scored an outrageously good goal at Birmingham in 1984.

2010-02-26 MATCHES THAT NEVER WERE

Finalists in 1966, the team had grown since then – they'd discovered Gerd Müller, basically – and **(the team [S]) would surely have edged past Italy to the 1970 final in that 4-3 rollercoaster had Franz Beckenbauer not been forced to play on with a dislocated shoulder.**

A 2-1 win in Stuttgart and a 2-2 at the Maracana in pre-Saldanha 1968 proves little, but **(a 2-1 win in Stuttgart and a 2-2 at the Maracana in pre-Saldanha 1968 [S]) does make the 1970 final that never was a damn sight more tantalising.**

Between 1948 and 1953, they won three Scottish titles and **(they [S]) were pipped at the death to another two**

Smith, Johnstone, Turnbull, Reilly and Ormond knew each other's games inside out and **(Smith, Johnstone, Turnbull, Reilly and Ormond [S]) interchanged freely**

Matt Busby was a particular fan, and **(Matt Busby [S]) would often take his Manchester United side up north to play in hotly contested friendlies**

While Real Madrid needed a last-minute equaliser to salvage a draw at Servette, and Milan lost 4-3 at home to Saarbrücken, the Scots went to German champions Rot-Weiss Essen and **(the Scots [S]) thrashed their hosts 4-0**.

Shankly respected Busby as a father figure, the two meeting almost every week to talk fífta, and **(Shankly [S]) pipped his mentor in the race back to the top from both clubs' early-60s torpor**.

While both matches were symbolic, and gave the fans something to shout about – albeit in a much less rabid fashion than today's tedious hatred – neither really mattered in terms of outcome. (It [S] was [O/M]) A wee shame, then, that United failed to convert their superiority over Leeds in the 1965 FA Cup semi.

The greatest trick Brazil ever pulled was convincing the world that *joga bonito* exists. They are bluffers. **Most great teams are (bluffers [C])**.

This would not have matched Liverpool v Arsenal – **nothing could (have matched [M] Liverpool v Arsenal [C])**

They posted tennis scores in the group stages (USSR 6-0 Hungary, Denmark 6-1 Uruguay) and **(they [S]) played with such technical ability and telepathy that their defeats in the second round to Belgium and Spain, largely the consequence of unfathomable human error from Andriy Bal, Jesper Olsen and Erik Friedriksen, were truly shocking**.

2010-02-19 - INSPIRED SUBSTITUTIONS

Italy had already lost their opening game of USA 94, to Ireland, and **(Italy [S]) would have been effectively out of the tournament if they lost to Norway**.

Sacchi needed nine outfield players who could each do the work of 1.11 men. **Baggio simply couldn't (do [M] the work of 1.11 men [C])**.

Italy "seemed to draw courage from Sacchi's", according to Patrick Barclay in this paper. **(Italy [S] seemed) Not (to draw [M] courage from Sacchi's [C]) just in this game**, but for the remainder of their unforgettably fraught journey to the final.

Jan Koller pulled one back four minutes later, but, after such a breathless start, most managers might have been content to allow the game to respire for a while. Not Brückner: straight after Koller's goal he took off Grygera, **(he [S]) introduced Vladimir Smicer**

Jan Koller pulled one back four minutes later, but, after such a breathless start, most managers might have been content to allow the game to respire for a while. Not Brückner: straight after Koller's goal he took off Grygera, introduced Vladimir Smicer and **(he [S]) switched from 4-4-2 to 3-5-2**

2010-02-12 - LONG-RANGE SCREAMERS

The FA Cup is dead. (There [S] is [O/M]) No point trying to revive what has passed.

When the return pass is played towards Radford he is not in shot, but then he suddenly appears and **(he [S]) welts the ball towards immortality**.

Radford's wife Ann turned to talk to her children just before he let fly, and **(Radford's wife Ann [S]) was desperately shouting "Who scored?" as half the crowd charged on to the pitch.**

So how do we distinguish? **(We [S] distinguish [M]) By trusting in genius, as below**

So how do we distinguish? By trusting in genius, as below; **(we [S] distinguish [M]) by scrutinising the technique, as above**

So how do we distinguish? By trusting in genius, as below; by scrutinising the technique, as above; **or (we [S] distinguish [M]) by focusing on the sub-genre that discriminates as much as the volley or the chip**

Remember the irresponsible hopemongering that surrounded the original release of the adidas Predator boot in 1994? **(Remember [M]) How it was going to have the mother of all sweet spots?**

Remember the irresponsible hopemongering that surrounded the original release of the adidas Predator boot in 1994? How it was going to have the mother of all sweet spots? **(Remember [M]) How it was consequently going to turn water into wine and me and you into Lothar Matthäus.**

Get tight and he would swivel those hips and **(he [S] would [O]) leave you for dead.**

Then Ronaldinho scored and Barcelona cruised to a 2-0 victory. How did it look? **Who knows (how it [C] looked [M]).** We barely saw it

We're simple folk, so we've no idea. (It [S] was [O/M]) Good goal, though.

2010-02-05 - NEUTRALS' FAVOURITES

And Keegan had become to seem overblown and **(Keegan [S] had [O] become [M]) not a little bit irritating, fanned and puffed with his own localised cult of headline publicity.**

Beardsley scored 25 times and **(Beardsley [S]) was sublimely impish in a roving attacking role.**

Overall, they scored 51 goals at home, 12 more than the champions, Manchester United, and **(they [S]) scored four or more goals on 10 occasions.**

he won his last major at the 1964 Masters, **then (he [S]) blew a seven-shot lead over the back nine on the final day of the 1966 US Open**

But while he was always modest and graceful in victory, the real manner of the man was illustrated in more testing circumstances: **(the real manner of the man [S] was [O] illustrated [M]) by his concession of Tony Jacklin's nervy tiddler on the deciding hole of the 1969 Ryder Cup at Birkdale, generously ensuring the match was drawn**

But while he was always modest and graceful in victory, the real manner of the man was illustrated in more testing circumstances: by his concession of Tony Jacklin's nervy tiddler on the deciding hole of the 1969 Ryder Cup at Birkdale, generously ensuring the match was drawn, **and (the real manner of the man [S] was [O] illustrated**

[M] by) his sportsmanship at Turnberry at the 1977 Open, when he walked off the last green arm in arm with his victor Tom Watson, despite having shot a preposterous 66-66 over the final two rounds

Bubbly booze may have played a part in proceedings the day Ipswich won the 1981 Uefa Cup, a celebratory Alan Brazil going up to collect his medal sporting only an ill-fitting dressing gown (If [S] is [O/M]) best not to ask.)

2010-01-29 - GAME-BREAKING TRASFERS DURING THE SEASON

1) Eric Cantona, Manchester United, November 1992 and, er, Eric Cantona, Leeds United, February 1992 (It [S] was [O/M]) Surely the greatest mid-season signing of the lot.

Cantona arrived at Leeds United in February 1992 and (Cantona [S]) helped them to the league title.

Before he arrived in 1992-93, United had picked up just six wins and (United [S]) appeared well out of the title race

with Cantona they picked up 18 of them and (they [S]) went on to win the league.

In 43 games over the course of 1992 (ie in the period Before Cantona) they won 17 times and (they [S]) racked up 67 points

Cantona was supposed to be a short-term fix. Instead United got their best player since, well, Best on the rebound. (It [S] was [O/M]) Some fix.

He pulled up his collar and (he [S]) puffed out his chest.

If that didn't convince, what he said next did (convince [M]).

Hartson cost £3.3m, a Hammers record; Kitson, (cost [M]) £1.2m.

They had done exactly what they'd been asked to do: save their side, put out the fire. (It [S] is [O/M]) No wonder Sullivan was so ready to invoke their names this week. week.

They had done exactly what they'd been asked to do: save their side, put out the fire. No wonder Sullivan was so ready to invoke their names this week. (It [S] was [O/M]) A cunning plan with just one, teensy flaw

he scored just one goal and (he [S]) only provided two assists

Edgar Davids turned FC Barcelona around. (Edgar Davids [S] turned [M] FC Barcelona [C] around) Not just in 2004 when he arrived

Edgar Davids turned FC Barcelona around. Not just in 2004 when he arrived but, it's tempting to conclude, (Edgar Davids [S] turned [M] FC Barcelona [C] around) for good.

Ronaldinho was implausibly brilliant but the rest of the side was infuriatingly awful. They had won just seven games in the first half of the season, **(they [S]) had been beaten by Real Madrid at the Camp Nou for the first time in 20 years**

Ronaldinho was implausibly brilliant but the rest of the side was infuriatingly awful. They had won just seven games in the first half of the season, had been beaten by Real Madrid at the Camp Nou for the first time in 20 years **and, after being thrashed 5-1 by Málaga, (they [S]) had slipped to 12th, 18 points behind Real Madrid.**

It also took pressure off a creaking defence **and (it [S]) gave personality and belief to a side with little heart and crumbling confidence.**

They went 14 unbeaten, a run that included a 2-1 victory in Madrid, **and (they [S]) overtook their rivals to finish second behind Valencia – their highest finish for four years.**

2010-01-22 - COUNTER-ATTACKING GOALS

To most teams, counter-attacks are almost treated as a bonus. If they emerge organically, (that [S] is [O/M]) great.

While rapid breakaways were not new in this country – Herbert Chapman's Arsenal had great success through the simple tactic of their stopper lumping it into the space for their wide men – **counter-attacking football with the emphasis on ball-carrying and precision passing certainly was (new to this country [C]).**

Clough was whip-smart, **(Clough [S] was [O/M]) not a romantic**

Clough was whip-smart, not a romantic, **and (Clough [S]) was more than happy for Forest to play as the away side even at the City Ground.**

With Mark Hughes suspended, Ferguson – as tactically courageous in those days as he is cautious now – eschewed the safe selection of Bryan Robson **and instead (Ferguson [S]) put Giggs at centre-forward alongside Cantona, with Lee Sharpe and Kanchelskis wide.**

Just seven seconds later Kanchelskis ran through on goal, following four consecutive one-touch passes of extremely high class, **and (Kanchelskis [S]) coolly rounded Bryan Gunn to score from a narrow angle.**

Even Binic's low cross is weighted **and (Binic's low cross [S] is [O]) angled immaculately for Darko Pancev to finish.**

Counter-attacking defined Italian football in the 20th century just as much as thud and blunder defined English football, **and (counter-attacking [S]) was an integral part of their unexpected 1982 triumph**

2010-01-15 - LEAGUE CUP SEMI-FINALS

Their plastic pitch, on which they went unbeaten for 38 games, added a sense of the unknown **and (Their plastic pitch [S]) altered the parameters of what we could reasonably expect from giant-killers**

Oldham lost the second leg 3-0, not that it mattered, **and (Oldham [S]) were beaten by Forest in the final.**

But they had a tremendous combination of indefatigability and team spirit – five were 20 or under, seven were homegrown – and **(they [S]) did it again, thanks to one of the more unlikely heroes**

After a 0-0 draw in the first replay at Hillsborough, the sides went to Old Trafford and **(the sides [S]) staged a classic**.

2010-01-08 - SOLO GOALS

It came in the final of Drybrough Cup, a short-lived pre-season competition for the four highest scorers in the league the previous season, and **(it [S]) has acquired almost mythical status**.

Yet when Lothar Matthaus scored one of the most awesome solo goals of all, against Yugoslavia during Italia 90, he beat only one defender, and (he [S] did [M]) that by simply changing the direction of his run rather than through any sleight of foot.

The BBC showed Brazil beating Sweden 2-1 and **(The BBC [S]) cut to highlights of this game at half-time and full-time**.

And after the goal, (was [O/M]) the product of Best's legendary balance as much as anything else, he broke away from his awestruck team-mates to seek out the referee and, presumably, prescribe an alternative use for that whistle.

The dummy that leaves defender and goalkeeper sprawling pathetically at his feet is magisterial and **(the dummy that leaves defender and goalkeeper sprawling pathetically at his feet [S]) even fools the cameraman**

PSV, 1-0 down from the away leg, conceded early on in the second leg to a very good Steaua side (Hagi, Lacatus, Petrescu, Dumitrescu, Balint) and **(PSV [S]) needed three to go through**.

2009-12-18 - FOOTBALLERS OF THE DECADE

This Argentinian is 22 yet **(this Argentinian [S]) already boasts a back catalogue of goals, tricks, runs and passes that could be compiled into a bumper Christmas DVD**

This Argentinian is 22 yet already boasts a back catalogue of goals, tricks, runs and passes that could be compiled into a bumper Christmas DVD, and **(it [S]) probably has been (compiled [M] into a bumper Christmas DVD [C]) in Barcelona**.

and for the past five seasons he has never failed to get into double figures in the league, and **(he [S] has [O]) averaged a goal every three games in Europe**.

His reflexes are paranormally fast – quicker even than Gigi Buffon's - **his footwork (is [O/M]) equally rapid**

For his country he was excellent in the 2006 World Cup and **(he [S] was [O/M]) a key part of the Euro 2008-winning team**

He scuffed the spot-kick **but (he [S]) scrambled in the rebound.**

2009-11-27 - GREAT GOALS FROM THE PAST DECADE

Would it make any difference if Argentina had fulfilled that promise and gone on to lift the trophy in Germany? *(It [S] would [O]) Not (make [M]) a jot.*

Some (M)entioning no naMEs) had heard talk of a promising 16-year-old striker at Everton and **(some [S]) stuck him in their Fantasy Football team for 2002-03.**

He did not earn as many points as, say, an intelligent purchase such as David Unsworth (defenders who take penalties (are [O/M]) always a Fantasy winner)

He did not earn as many points as, say, an intelligent purchase such as David Unsworth (defenders who take penalties – always a Fantasy winner) **but (he [S]) delivered a juggernaut full of smugness when he decisively ended Arsenal's 30-game unbeaten run.**

It is clearly not a great goal. Well it is **(a great goal [C])**

It is clearly not a great goal. Well it is, **but (it [S] is [O/M]) not (a great goal [C]) in the way that Messi's goal is or Rivaldo's is.**

2009-11-20 - GREAT FOOTBALL MATCHES FROM THE PAST DECADE

In the 54th minute, moments after Jerzy Dudek had tipped Andriy Shevchenko's free-kick around the post, Steven Gerrard met a John Arne Riise cross and **(Steven Gerrard [S]) headed into the net.**

Hector Cúper's charges tore into Barcelona from the off, **and within 10 minutes (Hector Cúper's charges [S]) were in front courtesy of Angulo's emphatic finish.**

Lowly Tranmere had already beaten six Premiership sides in Cup competitions over the previous 18 months, **and (Lowly Tranmere [S]) had drawn 0-0 at Southampton to force this replay.**

Jo Tessem added the second **and then (Jo Tessem [S]) teed up a third just before the break as Dean Richards bundled in.**

2009-11-13 - CLASSIC SMASH-AND-GRABS

And then, 10 minutes from time, Maradona picked up the ball in his own half, **(Maradona [S]) eluded the savage swipes of his hunters – Ricardo Rocha and Ricardo Gomes even collided with each other in the panic that ensued – before slipping the ball to Claudio Caniggia**

Samp were chasing their first-ever Scudetto, **and (Samp [S]) were three points clear of a formidable Internazionale**

Samp were chasing their first-ever Scudetto, and were three points clear of a formidable Internazionale ((it [S] was [O/M]) two for a win in those days)

Vialli took a long ball, (**Vialli [S]**) muscled Ricardo Ferri aside

Vialli took a long ball, muscled Ricardo Ferri aside and (**Vialli [S]**) coolly, cockily rounded Zenga to score the 18th goal of a season that washed away his Italia 90 regrets.

Midway through the first half Dennis Bergkamp glided past Mark Juliano and (**Dennis Bergkamp [S]**) cracked a low shot off the post

Italy scored their first two but then Paolo Maldini missed. (It [S] was [O/M]) No matter, next up was Paul Bosvelt, who shot straight at Toldo.

5. Arsenal 1-2 Liverpool, FA Cup final, 12/05/2001 (What [C] was [O/M]) The match in a nut-shell?

Arsenal dominated but (**Arsenal [S]**) were foiled by two predatory strikes from Michael Owen, a string of saves by Sander Westerveld and a trademark block with his hands by Stéphane Henchoz.

The rosy-cheeked Swiss had previously proved handy when picking up points in a league match against Southampton and (**the rosy-cheeked Swiss [S]**) had also been on hand to deny Birmingham a last-minute equaliser in the League Cup final

With 19 minutes left Arsenal finally scored, Ljungberg rounding Westerveld and shooting into the net. (Was [O/M] it [S]) Game over?

With 19 minutes left Arsenal finally scored, Ljungberg rounding Westerveld and shooting into the net. Game over? (It [S] was [O/M]) Not quite (game over [C]).

And then, in the 82nd minute, Arsenal failed to clear a Gary McAllister free-kick and (**Arsenal [S]**) watched slack-jawed as Owen fired past the hitherto redundant David Seaman.

They hit the woodwork four times, (**they [S]**) gave the rotund County goalkeeper Steve Cherry repeated scope to display an elasticity that probably even he didn't know he had

They hit the woodwork four times, gave the rotund County goalkeeper Steve Cherry repeated scope to display an elasticity that probably even he didn't know he had, and (**they [S]**) lost to a textbook sting 21 seconds from time.

2009-11-06 - GREAT EUROPEAN UPSETS

In the 38th minute Tony Kurbos hurtled down the right and, with the goalkeeper anticipating a cross, (**Tony Kurbos [S]**) sent the ball, perhaps flukily, straight into the net from an acute angle.

Ten minutes into the second half the irrepressible Kurbos latched on to a sweet through ball and (**Kurbos [S]**) clipped it over the keeper to make it 5-5 on aggregate the Senegal striker Jules Bocandé feinted his way to the byline and (**the Senegal striker Jules Bocandé [S]**) pulled back towards the penalty spot

the striker Roland Sandberg dashed on to a pass from Lars-Goran Andersson and *(the striker Roland Sandberg [S]) slid the ball past Peter Bonnetti for an equaliser.* Chelsea failed to respond **and, indeed, (Chelsea [S]) failed to accept their defeat with good grace.**

Would Tbilisi be as nifty as Ferencvaros and Red Star Belgrade had proved when upsetting Liverpool earlier in the decade, albeit before Bob Paisley had elevated the club to a higher level with two European Cup triumphs? **No (Tbilisi [S] would [O] not be [M] as nifty as Ferencvaros and Red Star Belgrade had proved when upsetting Liverpool earlier in the decade [C]).**

2009-10-30 - CLASSIC ARSENAL VS. TOTTENHAM MATCHES

That debut would never come; **nor would the fruition of a philosophy outlined by the Arsenal manager George Graham in his post-match interview (come [M]) he never started another game, (he [S]) wasn't in the squad for the final**
he never started another game, wasn't in the squad for the final **and (he [S]) was released at the end of the season.**

They were outplayed in the first half, falling behind to Tony Woodcock, **but (they [S]) came back so well after the break**

In real terms, it was Spurs' last league victory at Highbury – sorry, but we can't take matches on the last day of the season that include such luminaries as Gavin McGowan, Mark Flatts, David McDonald and Danny Hill seriously – **and (it [S]) kept them ahead of Everton on goal difference.**

Yet for various reasons, Spurs only played two league games in the next seven and a half weeks, **and incredibly (Spurs [S]) would not play a home league game between 29 December and 12 March.**

they lost three of the next four league games at home, one of them crucially to Everton, **and eventually (they [S]) finished third.**

2009-10-23 - GREAT PERFORMANCES WITH 10 MEN

but David Seaman did not have a notable save to make in the 80 minutes that followed Beckham's red card. (It [S] is [O/M]) Not that England played for penalties
Tottenham attempted a riposte but goalkeeper Arni Arason, making his first (and second-last) appearance for City, tipped another fine Ziege free-kick on to the bar **and (goalkeeper Arni Arason [S]) blocked Gus Poyet's follow-up.**

Forest had gone 2-0 up after 14 minutes **and (Forest [S]) were threatening to run riot**

Drogba scored one, **(Drogba [S]) made two**

Drogba scored one, made two, **and (Drogba [S]) earned a standing ovation when he was substituted, having been booed by some of his own fans in the previous home game.**

Brazil were in the box seat: they looked around, **(they [S]) laughed their heads off when they realised that was all England had**

Brazil were in the box seat: they looked around, laughed their heads off when they realised that was all England had, and **(they [S]) waited for the clock to run down.**

2009-10-16 - GREAT TEAMS THAT MISSED OUT ON THE WORLD CUP

The FA had withdrawn from Fifa in 1928 over some spurious nonsense about player payment, and during the 1930s **(the FA [S]) couldn't even be bothered to reply to invitations to play in the World Cup**

The FA had withdrawn from Fifa in 1928 over some spurious nonsense about player payment, and during the 1930s couldn't even be bothered to reply to invitations to play in the World Cup. (it [S] was [O/M]) snootiness multiplied by xenophobia on the end of a stick.

It was hubris on a grand scale: one of the top teams in the world at the time, England could easily have landed at least one of the first three World Cups – and who knows, maybe even **(England [S] could [O] have landed [M]) all of them.**

the Scots were trounced 4-0 in Bratislava but **(the Scots [S]) wiped out the result with a battling 3-2 win at Hampden.**

This was the best post-war Scottish team, perhaps **(this [S] was [O/M]) the best of all time.**

They led twice, thanks to a pair of St John headers, but **(they [S]) were pegged back each time.**

On the terraces, the orange-clad chanted "Mexico!" and **(the orange-clad [S]) frugged wildly in delight**

Zambia had just beaten Mauritius 3-0 in a qualifier for the 1994 African Nations Cup, and **(Zambia [S]) were en route to Senegal to play their first match in their attempt to get to the World Cup finals in America.**

In their final match in Morocco, Zambia needed only a point to qualify for the 1994 World Cup, and **(Zambia [S]) were 40 minutes away from realising their dream when Moroccan striker Abdeslam Laghrissi scored to secure a 1-0 victory.**

2009-10-09 - CLASSIC WORLD CUP QUALIFYING DECIDERS

Amid French panic, Israel equalised in the 83rd minute and then **(Israel [S]) plundered an incredible winner three minutes into time added on**

France began tentatively but in the 32 minute **(France [S]) planted one foot in America when Cantona collected a superb knock-down from Papin to smash into the net from close range.**

It turned out to be Paul Gascoigne's last competitive match for England: (that [S] was [O/M]) strange given the controlled brilliance of his performance against an Italian midfield containing Demetri Albertini, Angelo Di Livio and Dino Baggio.

Algeria were aiming to reach their third successive World Cup and, equipped with a side that a few months later would blitz all before them in the African Cup of Nations, (Algeria [S]) were strong favourites.

2009-09-11 - TOTTENHAM VS MANCHESTER UNITED MEMORIES

United, who needed a win to take control of the title race after Arsenal had dropped points at Bolton the previous day, battered Tottenham from the start but (United [S]) were denied time after time by Kasey Keller.

In 1992 and 1993, United played 43 league games. In 1992 they won 17 and (they [S]) amassed 67 points

In 1992 and 1993, United played 43 league games. In 1992 they won 17 and amassed 67 points; in 1993 they won 31 and (they [S]) amassed 102.

He scored the opening goal and then (he [S]) made Denis Irwin's second with a return pass of outrageous imagination and technique that spun straight on to Irwin's left foot and, at precisely the same moment, into folklore.

In 2002, Mauricio Taricco was sent off and a penalty (was [O]) awarded even though his professional foul on Paul Scholes occurred outside the box.

When we see old footage of the game's greats at work, we tend to think only of the good times: (we [S] tend to think [M]) that it never rained

When we see old footage of the game's greats at work, we tend to think only of the good times: that it never rained, (we [S] tend to think [M]) that they were always scoring great goals and winning trophies.

When he scored his famous lob against Spurs in February 1971, United were actually in 14th place. (It [S] is [O/M]) Not that this in any way diminishes the tender majesty of this goal.

and fifth. Barry Davies turning into Bernard Matthews. (It [S] is [O/M]) Not that you could argue with his appraisal: "Beautiful. Ab-so-lutely beautiful."

2009-09-04 - GREAT VOLLEYS

Cantona simply looked Jones up and down with the sort of magisterial contempt that only he could muster, and then, just before half-time, (Cantona [S]) showed how you really hurt someone on a football field.

you just knew Rodriguez was about to endanger low-flying aircraft. Except he didn't (endanger [M] low-flying aircraft [C]).

When he controlled the ball he was facing his own goal, but (he [S]) managed to adjust quickly to manufacture the shot

2009-08-28 - FREE-KICK SPECIALISTS

"Make the goalkeeper work." So plead legions of pundits, who themselves couldn't hit a cow's arse with the proverbial one during their playing days, every time there is a free-kick within range. **Zico certainly did (make [M] the goalkeeper work [C]).**

After training he would hang a shirt in each top corner and **(he [S] would [O]) challenge himself to take one of them down from 20 yards.**

He would stroll up and, with his body leaning back like a broken Subbuteo player, **(he [S] would [O]) simply caress the ball with the instep where he wanted.**

With delicious inevitability, Zico stuck one in the bottom-left corner while Galli danced around like a cat on a hot tin roof in the centre of his goal, scared to put his weight on either foot lest he be made to look a complete fool. **He was (made [M] to look a complete fool [C]) anyway.**

after all, if you come at the king, you best not miss. **Zico certainly didn't (miss [M]).**

He would crouch down so that the keeper could not see him, and then **(he [S] would [O]) bend the ball so viciously that it was a surprise Uri Geller didn't claim credit for it.**

Most free-kick specialists are like Olympic sprinters: they have an optimal distance and **(they [S]) are notably less successful when taken away from that.**

David Beckham, for example, is less effective from 20 yards, and **Ronaldinho (is [O/M] less effective [C]) from 30.**

2009-08-21 - UNDER-RATED FOOTBALLERS

John Aldridge is perceived by many as an inferior Ian Rush. (That [S] is [O/M]) Unfair.

It took him 20 matches to score his first goal for his country and he was never prolific thereafter, but **(he [S] was [O/M]) always essential.**

Olsen was 36 during the 1986 World Cup and **(Olsen [S]) played international football into his forties.**

He offers good defensive control through excellent positional sense, **(he [S]) has ice in his veins**

He offers good defensive control through excellent positional sense, has ice in his veins and, most importantly, **(he [S]) treats the ball with the utmost respect.**

Usually he strolls up and **(he [S]) passes the ball high to the keeper's left into such a specific area that you could win a spot-the-ball competition every time.**

Just how good was he? **Nobody really knows (how good he was [C]), because he never played club football abroad**

like Matthew Le Tissier, he liked his life and **(he [S]) chose to stick with it.**

2009-08-07 - WORST KITS

What could possibly drive someone to inflict this on a community? Or **(what [S] could [O] drive [M] someone [C] to inflict [C]) this (on a community)?**

What could possibly drive someone to inflict this on a community? Or this? Or **(what [S] could [O] drive [M] someone [C] to inflict [C]) this (on a community)?**

there was at least some rhyme and reason to the Arsenal* and Celtic outrages – a vague nod to time-honoured colour schemes in the designs. **The Chelsea one (there [S] was [O/M]) not so much (rhyme and reason [C] to), unless you're counting their support's alliance with Rangers.**

The purple flash, however, referenced nothing, **and (the purple flash [S]) was both pointless and hideous.**

This shirt, for example, is often cited as the worst ever, an affront to cotton. **But why (is [O] this shirt [S] cited [M] as the worst ever [C])?**

Presumably desperate to remind everyone of their proud founder-member Victorian credentials, they twirled their waxed moustaches **and (they [S]) commissioned first this old-school jumper**

Can a football shirt be disingenuous? **Yes (a football shirt [S] can [O] be [M] disingenuous [C]).**

Can a football shirt be disingenuous? Yes. **Yes it can (be [M] disingenuous [C]).**

The Mexican look is glamorous – **(it [S] is [O/M]) gaudy**

Did the new strip really have magic powers? **On the face of it, no (it [S] didn't [O] have [M] magic powers [C]), that's preposterous.**
they suddenly looked just like any other old team. **And (they [S]) have played in the manner of one ever since.**

Don't be fooled by the two World Cups, **nobody in Brazil was (fooled [M] by the two World Cups [C]).**

2009-07-31 - GREAT FINISHERS

he would often scuff it almost apologetically past the goalkeeper **and (he [S] would [O]) watch it dribble over the line**

He had a huge backside **and (he [S]) looked hideously unnatural**

when he retired, for example, he embraced the good things in life **and (he [S]) grew a beard that made him look like Richie Tenenbaum.**

He was not just content to score; he wanted not only to vaccinate an opponent, **but (he [S] wanted [M]) to find fresh and ingenious ways to do so.**
sometimes he would do that **and then (he [S] would [O]) do it again.**

We know he was mostly a *libero*, but **(he [S]) could have been (an outstanding goalscoring midfielder [C])** – and briefly was – an outstanding goalscoring midfielder.

We know he was mostly a *libero*, but could have been – and **(he [S]) briefly was – an outstanding goalscoring midfielder.**

he would either go round the goalkeeper or **(he [S] would [O]) just pass it into the net.**

He made it look like the simplest, most logical thing in the world. **And it was (the simplest, most logical thing in the world [C]).**

Soon after Beckenbauer began to explore a new position, and **(Beckenbauer [S]) showed that, even if it ain't broke, sometimes it pays to fix it.**

(It [S] is [O/M]) Not that he was averse to bread and butter goals, but he frequently infused them with a striking flavour

2009-07-24 - FOOTBALLING 'WHAT IF'S

After an OK performance against Romania – **(it [S] was [O/M]) no better or worse than any of the other creative players on a night when England were hopelessly outclassed**

he was dropped for the next game against Nigeria and **(he [S] was [O]) replaced by, and you'll like this, Dennis Wise.**

had he scored, Rensenbrink rather than Mario Kempes would have claimed the Golden Boot and **(Rensenbrink [S]) might now be sitting alongside Johan Cruyff in the pantheon**

2009-07-17 - GREAT TEAM GOALS

If Blur had performed with such effulgence at Glastonbury, you'd still be drooling over your commemorative 128-page Guardian pullout and **(you [S] would [O] be) honing a story which proves that you, along with the other seven million, really were there.**

(It [S] went [M] from) One end of the field to the other, without the opposition touching the thing, and all this against the best team in Europe.

How many passes were there? **Who cares (how many passes there were [C])?**

Under Arsène Wenger's management, the team goal has been Arsenal's bread and butter - or rather **(the team goal [S] has [O] been [M]) their filet mignon, so delectable have the offerings been.**

but it is the only one that was conceived in a space the size of a phonebox. **(It [S] is [O/M]) Not that this lot needed to don capes to demonstrate their superpowers.**

By then he was in acres of space, but **(he [S] was [O/M] in acres of space [C]) only because of how good his team-mates had been when there was no space at all**

2009-07-03 - GREAT HEADERS

As for Bonve, despite playing primarily in midfield he went on to become Bulgaria's all-time leading scorer. **And in 1982 (he [S]) ended his career at Oxford United.**

Here Borgetti was darting in what any defender would have considered the wrong direction **and (Borgetti [S]) displayed extraordinary awareness and exquisite deftness to rotate on the run and bop Cuauhtémoc Blanco's pass beyond the reach, and even the comprehension, of Gigi Buffon.**

2009-06-26 - EXTINCT FOOTBALL COMPETITIONS

Modern six-a-side football, represented by those Masters tournaments on Sky, throws up many a question. **OK, (modern six-a-side football [S] throws up [M]) just two**

In 1967, QPR had beaten West Brom in the League Cup final, but (QPR [S]) couldn't claim their place in the Fairs Cup because Uefa rules prevented the entry of third-tier teams.

Swindon, Sheffield Wednesday, Middlesbrough, West Brom, Sunderland and Wolves made up an English group; **Napoli, Juventus, Roma, Fiorentina, Lazio and Vicenza (made up [M]) the Italian one.**

Crystal Palace repeated the scoreline against Everton in a tighter-than-it-sounds extra-time win in 1991, before Nottingham Forest pipped Southampton 3-2 a year later in a facsimile copy of the classic 1979 League Cup final. **At which point the competition was smothered to death. (The competition [S] was [O] smothered [M] to death) By what?**

Crystal Palace repeated the scoreline against Everton in a tighter-than-it-sounds extra-time win in 1991, before Nottingham Forest pipped Southampton 3-2 a year later in a facsimile copy of the classic 1979 League Cup final. **At which point the competition was smothered to death. By what? (The competition [S] was [O] smothered [M] to death) By the advent of the Premier League, of course**

George Best took the very first spot kick – yes, it's a penalty shoot-out! – **and (George Best [S]) scored.**

In the other tie, Slavia Prague won their home leg against Juventus 4-0, **but (Slavia Prague [S]) quickly fell 2-0 behind in the return.**

Organisers of the tournament hoped British teams would deign to enter, **but they never did (enter [M])**

2009-06-19 - WHAT WE MISS IN MODERN FOOTBALL

What was the last big-money move to crash into view from the leftfield? **(Was [O/M] it [S]) Sol Campbell to Arsenal in 2000?**

What was the last big-money move to crash into view from the leftfield? Sol Campbell to Arsenal in 2000? (There were murmurs about Campbell, though nobody thought he'd have the stones to go through with it.) **(Was [O/M] it [S]) Andy Cole to Manchester United in 1995?**

What was the last big-money move to crash into view from the leftfield? Sol Campbell to Arsenal in 2000? (There were murmurs about Campbell, though nobody thought he'd have the stones to go through with it.) Andy Cole to Manchester United in 1995? **(Was [O/M] it [S]) Eric Cantona to Old Trafford a couple of years earlier?**

Paisley was staying in a hotel under the pseudonym Bill Smith, pretending to be his chairman's brother – and taking no chances whatsoever, **(Paisley [S]) hadn't even told his wife where he was going, in case any hacks caught wind.**

("Jessie will not tell lies. **So if she didn't know where I was, she wouldn't have to (tell [M] lies [C]), in case anyone tried to find me.**")

When the £440,000 transfer was finally sealed with Jock Stein, Paisley turned to Smith and **(Paisley [S]) said: "Let's get out of here before they realise what we've done."**

Given the Latin motto Victoria Concordia Crescit by their majestically monickered programme editor Harry Homer, the crest was grand, dignified, overly fastidious and pompous. **(It [S] was [O/M]) Quintessentially Arsenal.**

Ever since Fifa increased the number of teams going to the World Cup finals in 1982 – from a 16-team jamboree in Argentina to the 24 plates of dog's tapas served up in Spain – the justification has always been to increase representation of finalists from Africa, Asia and Central America. **(That [S] is [O/M]) All good and correct, even though the increases were really made to ensure Europe gained a few spots rather than lose a couple to the under-represented continents.**

Europe had 9.5 places in 1978, **(Europe [S] had [O/M]) 15 by the first 32-team event in 1998.**

Europe had 9.5 places in 1978, 15 by the first 32-team event in 1998. **(It [S] is [O/M]) A shame, then, that Europe never took a hit for the team.**

Drogba's display of extreme petulance was the most entertaining moment of the season. **(It [S] was [O]) Only spoilt because – and this I daresay is an unpalatable truth – we were all secretly hoping it would properly kick off, illogical swipes thrown at innocent Uefa bystanders.**

Now, nobody wants anyone to get hurt, or a full-scale riot like 1971's Battle of Bombonera between Boca Juniors and Sporting Cristal – **19 players (were [O]) sent off.** Cristal's Fernando Mellan considered lucky to have a fractured skull (it was initially thought he had brain damage), and his team-mate Orlando de la Torre's mother dying of a heart attack while watching it all unfold on TV

Now, nobody wants anyone to get hurt, or a full-scale riot like 1971's Battle of Bombonera between Boca Juniors and Sporting Cristal – 19 players sent off, **Cristal's Fernando Mellan (was [O]) considered lucky to have a fractured skull (it was initially thought he had brain damage), and his team-mate Orlando de la Torre's mother dying of a heart attack while watching it all unfold on TV**

Now, nobody wants anyone to get hurt, or a full-scale riot like 1971's Battle of Bombonera between Boca Juniors and Sporting Cristal – 19 players sent off, Cristal's Fernando Mellan considered lucky to have a fractured skull (it was initially thought he had brain damage), and **his team-mate Orlando de la Torre's mother (was [O]) dying of a heart attack while watching it all unfold on TV**

The lid's slowly coming off Pandora's box – **first (there [S] was [O/M]) Zinedine Zidane's assault on Marco Materazzi in the 2006 World Cup final, now Howard Webb's laughable show at the Confederations Cup – and there's not much time to slam it shut again.**

The lid's slowly coming off Pandora's box – first Zinedine Zidane's assault on Marco Materazzi in the 2006 World Cup final, now (there [S] is [O/M]) Howard Webb's laughable show at the Confederations Cup – and there's not much time to slam it shut again.

2009-06-12 - TERRIBLE TRANSFERS

he'd scored in Manchester City's League Cup final win of 1976 at 19, **(he [S] had [O]) gone on to star in Ron Atkinson's famous West Bromwich Albion side, top-scoring for the club in 1979-80, and (he [S]) was hopeful of getting into Ron Greenwood's England squad for the 1982 World Cup.**

he'd scored in Manchester City's League Cup final win of 1976 at 19, gone on to star in Ron Atkinson's famous West Bromwich Albion side, top-scoring for the club in 1979-80, and **(he [S]) was hopeful of getting into Ron Greenwood's England squad for the 1982 World Cup.**

By February, he had been fined £750 for making disparaging remarks about the club in the newspapers, and **(he [S] had [O]) seriously jeopardised his England career by accusing Greenwood of anti-northern bias.**

Clarke tried to swap him for Nottingham Forest's Garry Birtles, then **(Clarke [S] tried to swap [M] him [C] for) Manchester City's Trevor Francis**

Clarke tried to swap him for Nottingham Forest's Garry Birtles, then Manchester City's Trevor Francis, but (it [S] was [O/M]) to no avail.

Was it £930,000 well spent? If you live in Sheffield, Salford or near the Fulham Broadway, hell yeah (it [S] was [O/M] £930,000 well spent [C]).

he scored one more goal during the 1938-39 season after his initial burst, and **(he [S]) asked for a run in the reserves to find his form.**

and yet what does everyone remember him for? **(Everyone [S] remembers [M] him [C] for) One defence-splitting pass against Deportivo La Coruna when his side were already 3-1 up on aggregate**

Aldridge had no option but to move, leaving for Real Sociedad, where he would score 33 goals in 63 games. (It [S] is [O/M]) An impressive stat

Aldridge had no option but to move, leaving for Real Sociedad, where he would score 33 goals in 63 games. An impressive stat, but (it [S] is [O/M]) not quite as impressive as the one he'd totted up at Anfield, where he scored 50 times in 83 matches (0.60 goals per game).

RADIO COMMENTARY CORPUS

CHELSEA VS BARCELONA – CHAMPIONS LEAGUE – 2ND ROUND, 2ND LEG - MARCH 2005

that's cleared away up in the air by Oleguer and eventually (.) (*that* [S] 's [O]) hooked away towards (.) the right side Iniesta dropped deep

Iniesta dropped deep and (*Iniesta* [S]) is inside his own half and they failed to clear it away Barcelona

this is Xavi on the far side (.) (*Xavi* [S]) plays it to Deco centre circle (.) Ronaldinho on the left hand touchline (.)

and Joe Cole a little back heel (.) (*it* [S]) went wrong so Carvalho had to sweep in

so Carvalho had to sweep in and (*Carvalho* [S]) had [O] to clear it away (.) only as far as uh Belletti still inside the Chelsea half

and clear it away (.) only as far as uh Belletti (*it* [S] is [O/M]) still inside the Chelsea half a cross from Iniesta (.)

it's going to be indirect Gavin (.) yeah (*it* [S] 's [O] going to be [M] indirect [C]) and all that pressure came because of a little back heel from Joe Cole (.)

Puyol is further away to the right hand side Ronaldinho (*is* [O/M]) on the edge of the penalty area Eto'o on the edge of the wall (1.0

Ronaldinho on the edge of the penalty area Eto'o (*is* [O/M]) on the edge of the wall (1.0) and Iniesta on the edge of the box too and Belletti too (.)

Eto'o on the edge of the wall (1.0) and Iniesta (*is* [O/M]) on the edge of the box too and Belletti too (.) and it's a little dinked freekick into the penalty area

and it's easily collected by Petr Cech and Deco (*is* [O/M]) absolutely fuming (.) yeah

and Deco absolutely fuming (.) yeah (*Deco* [S] is [O/M] absolutely fuming [C]) Iniesta tried to make a run inside there

it just didn't come off==it certainly didn't (come off [M])==and when those intricate moves don't come off they look poor (1.0)

there's plenty of time left and (*there* [S] 's [O/M]) plenty of slip (.) twixt cup (.) and lip (.) well plenty of time left

and plenty of slip (.) twixt cup (.) and lip (.) well (*there* [S] 's [O/M]) plenty of time left but again that goal coming from Chelsea's right hand side you know

but Joe Cole's got that little trick where he just tucks it inside with his back hell and then (*he* [S]) cracked the shot (.) it was actually quite well saved

it was actually quite well saved but (*it* [S] was [O/M]) not pushed well enough away from the danger (.) and that gave Lampard the chance to come in for a tap in

and that gave Lampard the chance to come in for a tap in (*it* [S] is [O/M]) some night here (.) at Stamford Bridge where Chelsea lead by two goals to nil and they're on the attack again

he didn't push it away from danger enough (.) and (*there* [S] are [O/M]) questions as well about the left hand side Van Bronckhorst you know all three goals that Chelsea have scored against them ((even))

he was shuffling to try and catch up with Joe Cole and **(he [S]) wasn't even pounding the turf** this is Kežman (.)
and they're surely now heading to the quarter finals **(this [S] is [O/M]) absolutely wonderful** (.) stunning (.)
absolutely wonderful (.) **(this [S] is [O/M]) stunning** (.) absolutely stunning (.)
stunning (.) **(this [S] is [O/M]) absolutely stunning** (.) Duff makes that run so well from a left hand side as he comes inside
they went out in the Nou Camp in extra time (.) and **(they [S]) had Babayaro sent off that night** (.) but had gone really by then
and had Babayaro sent off that night (.) **but (they [S]) had gone really by then** this is Ronaldinho with the cross back into the middle
and Petr Cech saves inside the six yard area (.) and **(Petr Cech [S] saves [M]) again** (.) well surely (.) surely they're not gonna let this one slip away ((are they))
and Chelsea now they don't need to panic **(they [S]) don't need to force it** chances will come because (.)
the fans are delirious with joy (1.0) **their manager (is [O/M]) just anxious to get his instructions across to his players** (.) we won't have extra time here now
that's for definite **we may still (have [M] extra time [C]) at the San Siro AC Milan nil Manchester United nil**
Peter Cech has kept twenty four cleansheets this season and recently **(Peter Cech [S]) won a record thousand and twenty four minutes** (.) **without conceding a Premier League goal** Chelsea have a player down injured on the far side from us their right hand side
Cech went the first six hours of his Champions League career with Sparta Prague (.) without conceding a goal (.) **(he [S] is [O/M]) Europe's best world's best now** (.) **goalkeeper** he must be close=
he must be close==well yeah **(he [S] must [O] be [M] close [C])** he's gotta be up there
he's gotta be up there **but (he [S]) has got a fantastic defence in front of him** and you know hasn't been tested greatly I don't think (.) this season in the Premier League
but has got a fantastic defence in front of him and you know **(he [S]) hasn't been tested greatly I don't think** (.) **this season in the Premier League** and made a mistake in the Carling Cup final I thought for one of the goals there
and you know hasn't been tested greatly I don't think (.) this season in the Premier League and **(he [S]) made a mistake in the Carling Cup final I thought for one of the goals there** but he's certainly a great goalkeeper=
the ball at the feet of Xavi (.) **(Xavi [S]) slips it forward looking for Samuel Eto'o** (.) Eto'o and Iniesta were in the same position there
Kežman tries to volley it inside (.) **(it [S] is [O]) blocked here by Belletti** you heard the cries of the Chelsea fans

they clearly thought it was handball (.). (it [SI] is not given) so Xavi plays it forward

so Xavi plays it forward and (Xavi [S]) takes the return here from Ronaldinho and Gio Van Bronckhorst is on that left corner of the penalty area

Eto'o stretched for it (it [SI] nearly came to Ronaldinho) very very good stop and clearance away by Gallas (.). who saw the danger

nearly came to Ronaldinho (it [S] is [O/M]) very very good stop and clearance away by Gallas (.). who saw the danger and Joe Cole away down the right hand side (.). will clear his lines (.).

and (.). diving back was Cech (Cech [SI] makes a fine save as well) four two on aggregate the score

now that was an opportunity for Ronaldinho to bring it back to three one (.). (there [S] are [O/M]) just a couple of warning signs there for Chelsea (.). Eto'o with the shot tipped over (.). originally for the corner from from and there Ronaldinho coming in

and that looked close Alan (.). (that [S] looked [M]) very very close worryingly close

very very close (that [S] looked [M]) worryingly close (.). ((but you know)) I'm sitting here astounded by these first [twenty three] minutes because you know a fortnight ago in Barcelona Chelsea had precisely two goal attempts (.). neither of them on target (1.0)

and I don't think they were actually on top for the first seven minutes either Gavin no (they [S] weren't [O/M] on top [C])= =Barcelona started really well=

=Barcelona started really well==(Barcelona [S] absolutely (started [M] really well [C]) and when Chelsea scored Barcelona were having a period of really good possession

and then they went down the other end and (they [SI] scored (1.0) here's Gudjohnsen who set Chelsea on their way

it's hit forward by Xavi (it [S] 's [O]) headed back by Eto'o (.). here's Deco trying to feed it towards the right side (.).

and (.). Gallas does the simple thing (he [S]) just heads it out of play we've played twenty four (.). astonishing minutes at Stamford Bridge (.).

Deco (.). just on the edge of the centre circle (.). looks for the run of Eto'o (.). (it [SI] is headed away by (.). Terry might be collected by Iniesta

is headed away by (.). Terry (it [SI] might be collected by Iniesta and then (.). Duff who scored that third goal tackling back for Chelsea

then it's played on by Eto'o (it [S] 's [O/M]) Eto'o again this time it's Lampard who's playing further back than we'd normally expect by him who hits it up field

Kežman trying to win it for Chelsea (Kežman [S]) doesn't do so and then it's headed on by Ronaldinho

and Cech clears it away (.). towards the half way line towards the Chelsea right flank (.). (it [SI] is [O]) brought down by Van Bronckhorst (.). here's Ronaldinho

good ball by Eto'o (Eto'o [SI] finds Belletti the right full back (.). mid way inside the Chelsea half there's the cross in

and I'm astounded at that **and (he [S] 's [O] given [M]) a yellow card as well (.)** and a yellow card

and a yellow card as well (.) **and (he [S] 's [O] given [M]) a yellow card well I can't believe that**

but Ronaldinho (.) with this penalty can bring it back to three one **and (Ronaldinho [S] can [O]) renew hope for the Catalans (.)** Collina trying to make sure that every Chelsea player's outside the penalty area (1.0)

Ronaldinho comes forward **and (Ronaldinho [S]) beats Cech low to the goalkeeper's right hand (.)** and Barca are back (.)

Chelsea lead Barcelona three one **what news (is [O/M] there [S]) at the Guiseppe Meazza Simon** still getting over the shock of that penalty decision by Collina (.)

I had no doubt at all that (.) Ferreira (1.0) his hand went not didn't go to the ((ba-)) **(I [S]) have to be careful how I phrase this (.)** the ball hit his hand (.)

and (.) there was a yellow card produced for Ferreira by the way **yeah (.) (there [S] was [O] a yellow card [C] produced [M])** straight away he produced it

he acted very definite **(he [S] acted [M]) very quickly with his actions (1.0)** quickly quickly to Milan (.) Simon

Makélélé swings it forward **(it [S] is [O]) headed on by Gudjohnsen (.)** Kežman's trying to muscle his way through (.)

Kežman's trying to muscle his way through (.) **but (Kežman [S] 's [O] trying to muscle [M] his way through [C]) illegally because he was holding Oleguer (.) inappropriately let's say (.)** that's a freekick to Barcelona

that's a freekick to Barcelona **yeah (that [S] 's [O/M] a freekick to Barcelona [C])** Chelsea need to just try and take the sting out of the game now

in it goes (.) **(it [S]) is fed back by Xavi** Gerard tried to squeeze the pass through for Van Bronckhorst (.)

he just got his foot to it (.) **(he [S]) made good ground on the right hand side** and won his team a throw in excellent play

made good ground on the right hand side **and (he [S]) won his team a throw in excellent play** this is sport on five on BBC five live

here at Stamford Bridge in west London (.) Chelsea lead Barcelona three goals to one (.) **and (Chelsea [S]) are in front on aggregate by four goals to three (1.0)** there's (.) a lengthy lecture from (.) Collina to Makélélé after a free-kick was awarded to Barcelona (.)

it's taken **and (it [S] 's [O]) played on by Ronaldinho to Van Bronckhorst on the far side (.)** back to Ronaldinho who scored from the penalty spot (.) to bring Barcelona back to three one (.)

what's the referee given **(the referee [S] 's [O] given [M]) a throw in (1.0) to Chelsea (.)** Gallias to take it (2.0)

did he not watch his own team last season Porto **(they [S] were [O/M]) [biggest] cheats of all time (2.0)** Porto still in the Champions League (.)

[biggest] cheats of all time **Porto (are [O/M]) still in the Champions League** (.) remember they play tomorrow night (.)

and it's a freekick finally to Barcelona (.) **(it [S] 's [O/M]) not (a freekick [C]) from that position son** (.) over here (.) Belletti (.)

not from that position son (.) **(it [S] is [O/M]) over here** (.) **Belletti** (.) and Belletti does as Collina tells him ((as it's)) the wise thing to do (.)

Makélélé heads it back (.) **(it [S] is [O]) brought down** (.) by **Kežman** and then headed away by Chelsea

bought down (.) by Kežman **and then (it [S]) is headed away by Chelsea** here's Eto'o

to Iniesta **(Iniesta [S]) was preferred to Guily who's got a problem obviously** there's a foul on Eto'o off the ball

he's fancied by Manchester United and Arsenal (.) **(it [S] is [O/M]) very close that on aggregate** (.) **six nil** (.) to **Lyon** there's always a chance

I think they've had the wind knocked out of them definitely by that penalty==yeah **(they [S] 've [O] had [M] the wind knocked out of them [C])**==definitely

=yeah==**definitely (they [S] 've [O] had [M] the wind knocked out of them [C])**and you see Barcelona getting good possession and pinning them back (.)

and Ronaldinho's beginning to ((show)) a lot more as he is now (.) **(Ronaldinho [S]) skips away from two challenges** and then the Chelsea blue shirts crowd in on him (.)

and here's Gerard in a far forward position than he's accustomed to (.) **(it [S] is [O]) taken up by Eto'o who'd come away from the penalty area** onto Deco

Deco ((flicks it forward)) **(it [S]) is half cleared** (.) chested down by Ronaldinho (.)

is half cleared (.) **(it [S]) is chested down by Ronaldinho** (.) Eto'o doesn't make anything of that (.)

and then it's played up field to Kežman (.) **and (there [S] is [O/M]) another late flag** (.) **from the linesman on the far side of the field** (.) my initial response was that Kežman was offside

and it's only six one to the French side on aggregate **(I [S]) told [you]** told you

told [you **(I [S]) told you]** I'm rushing to the bookies (.)

don't worry (1.0) **no I'm not (rushing [M] to the bookies [C])** (.) I'm not going to leave this game (.)

Barcelona with the throw in level with the edge of the Chelsea penalty area (.) **(it [S] is [O]) taken by Belletti** (.) now it's with Deco (.)

now it's with Deco (.) **(Deco [S]) rolls the ball with his right foot** (1.0) and turns away from Makélélé (.)

rolls the ball with his right foot (1.0) **and (Deco [S]) turns away from Makélélé** (.) on to Belletti (.) inches in from the touchline (.)

and then Deco just (chips) the ball forward **and (it [S] is [O/M]) good anticipation by Cech as he realised that ball wasn't going to rush behind for a goal kick** (.) he was aware that Eto'o was sprinting towards it (.)

and Cech just came out of his goal and **(Cech [S]) shepherded it behind** it's very much a tactical battle out there you know

Iniesta's beginning to move around too (.) **Ronaldinho ('s [O] beginning to move [M] around) as well** (.) there's lots of movement now in an attacking sense from Barcelona (.)

and has the referee spotted it =yeah **(the referee [S] has [O] spotted [M] it [C])**==he has spotted it=
 =he has spotted it== **yeah (the referee [S] has [O] spotted [M] it [C])**==and it's a freekick to Barcelona (.)

he's on the other side **and (he [S]) spotted that just a little tug on on Eto'o who got away from Terry** having said that (.) we're still in agreement that (.) it was a harsh decision [to give a penalty] for handball by Ferreira

Deco is there (1.0) **and who else is (there [C])** (.) Van Bronckhorst is across (1.0)

right foot shot drilled in (.) **(that [S] is [O/M]) good save by Cech** (.) good save

good save by Cech (.) **(that [S] is [O/M]) good save** good strong hand as well because it looked like that moved a bit in the air (1.0)

good save **(that [S] is [O/M]) good strong hand as well because it looked like that moved a bit in the air** (1.0) the balls they use these days all move in the air (1.0)

Deco with it right footed (.) **(it [S]) didn't beat the first defender that was Frank Lampard** and Lampard (.) clatters it away out of play for a throw in (.)

we're not getting any attacking play from Frank Lampard tonight (.) **(Frank Lampard [S] is [O]) defending so much** (1.0) Terry heads the ball away

Ronaldinho tried to chip the goalkeeper **(it [S] is [O/M]) fantastic strike by the Brazilian** (.) **fantastic** (1.0) Cech just didn't see it until it was passed him (.)

three nil down and you think their heads had gone (.) **but no (their heads [S] hadn't [O] gone [M])** (.) they've got right back into this tie (.)

and now they're ahead because of away goals (.) **(they [S] 're [O/M]) ahead on aggregate** Kežman (.) back to Paulo Ferreira (.)

Cole gives him the nudge==yeah **(Cole [S] does [O] give [M] him [C] the nudge [C])**==and that's a freekick (.) despite the protests

but the linesman was entirely correct yeah **(the linesman [S] was [O/M] correct [C])** (.) he just tried to get his shoulder across there (.)

Xavi (.) **(it [S] is [O/M]) good challenge by Terry** but what's the referee spotted (.)

and suddenly Barcelona can counter attack **(there [S] are [O/M]) too many blue shirts** (.) **up field at the moment** Ronaldinho (.) onto Oleguer the central defender

it must have come off a Barcelona boot because it's a (.) Chelsea throw in it is (a **Chelsea thrown in [C]**) he's a danger Eto'o I tell you

I thought that was really smart striking by him in the Nou Camp in the first game (.) to get that second goal (it [S] was [O/M]) excellent movement (1.0) Sheffield United lead Crewe by two goals to nil

AC Milan still lead United one nil on aggregate and (the **attention tonight [S]** focuses on [M] the **Champions League action [C]**) here principally at Stamford Bridge (.) on the night **Chelsea three Barcelona two**

LIVERPOOL VS AC MILAN – CHAMPIONS LEAGUE – FINAL - MAY 2005

and the ball is with Pirlo (.) (Pirlo [S]) feeds Serginho (.) Tomasson's in the area

Tomasson's in the area **Shevchenko is (in the area [C]) too** the ball doesn't come in

Maldini now (.) for AC Milan (**Maldini [S]**) got the show on the road with the opening goal (.) poor ball in

got the show on the road with the opening goal (.) (it [S] is [O/M]) poor ball in headed away by Hamann (.)

Spanish referee giving Liverpool a good advantage there (.) yup (**Spanish referee [S]** **did [O]** give [M] **Liverpool [C]**) ==and it's a freekick to Liverpool

and it's a freekick to Liverpool (it [S] is [O/M]) just as well that he was offside (.) clever little ball by Pirlo (.)

just as well that he was offside (.) (it [S] is [O/M]) clever little ball by Pirlo (.) just lifted over Riise (1.0)

clever little ball by Pirlo (.) (Pirlo [S]) just lifted it over Riise (1.0) Maldini fifty two seconds

Stam again looking to try and find Cafu Liverpool (are [O/M]) on the defensive and now Hamann is there (.)

Hamann tries to pick out Ciis  but (**Hamann [S]**) only finds Pirlo (1.0) and now Kaka picks the ball up in the ((deep)) (.)

Milan at the moment just (.) seem to have the control here (.) as Serginho nudges forward down that left hand side (**that [S] is [O/M]**) great challenge coming in though from Steven Gerrard that's the role that Mark Lawrenson was saying that (.) he thinks Benetiz has given him to try and shadow Serginho (1.0)

that's the role that Mark Lawrenson was saying that (.) he thinks Benetiz has given him to try and shadow Serginho (1.0) now (there [S] is [O/M]) a mistake by Pirlo (.) and Liverpool have a throw in (.) deep inside their own half

and in the end (.) it actually wears you out (it [S] wears [M] you [C] out) not just physically but mentally (.)

not just physically **but (it [S] wears [M] you [C] out) mentally** (.) well the last time they won this trophy these two clubs they both won in penalty shootouts (.)

well the last time they won this trophy these two clubs they both won in penalty shootouts (.) **Milan (won [M] this trophy [C]) against Juventus at Old Trafford** (.)
 Liverpool of course in eighty four (.) against Roma (.)

Milan against Juventus at Old Trafford (.) **Liverpool of course (won [M] this trophy [C]) in eighty four (.) against Roma** (.) here come Liverpool though now

but then Liverpool give the ball away too easily (.) **(Liverpool [S]) mustn't do that** (.) Milan have it (.)

they've almost gone to five at the moment (.) **and (they [S] are [O]) dropping quite deep** (1.0) and Maldini said that Liverpool's approach essentially is cautious (.)

and Maldini said that Liverpool's approach essentially is cautious (.) **(Maldini [S] said [M]) that they wouldn't attack** (.) we know how to attack he said before the game (.)

I think Tomasson knew that he was just offside (.) **(Tomasson [S]) pulled out of the challenge on the goalkeeper** and it's a freekick=

and it's a freekick==**(it [S] 's [O/M]) not too dissimilar to a number of opportunities** (.) **in the first half where Milan almost got in those positions** (1.0) Mark Lawrenson Graham Taylor John Toshack with us here in Istanbul where it's seven minutes to midnight (.)

not too dissimilar to a number of opportunities (.) in the first half where Milan almost got in those positions (1.0) **Mark Lawrenson Graham Taylor John Toshack (are [O/M]) with us here in Istanbul where it's seven minutes to midnight** (.) and (1.0) the clearance eventually (.) by Dudek

Garcia gets up **and (Garcia [S]) finds Ciisé** (1.0) Ciisé almost used his hand there to control that

he's running into a bit of a blind alley (1.0) **and in the end (he [S]) fouls** (.) Maldini as well and I think the freekick's been given (1.0)

and I think the freekick's been given (1.0) **[yeah] (the freekick [S] 's [O] been given [M])** [Ciisé] just looking to get a bit more involved here

[Ciisé] just looking to get a bit more involved here **(Ciisé [S]) is just slightly lifeless I think** have you seen his hair (1.0)

[it looks like it's been tattooed or something] =yeah **(it [S] does [O] look [M] like he's got a black scorpion at the back of his head [C])** (.) right here comes Pirlo who's suddenly much more involved

and Kaka's managed to find some room **(there [S] is [O/M]) too much space really for Kaka** (.) Tomasson in the area

Tomasson in the area **(that [S] is [O/M]) great challenge coming in for Liverpool** (.) Gerrard's there again defensively (.)

Ciisé glances the ball back inside the Milan half (.) **but (.) (Ciisé [S]) doesn't find anyone in red** (.) and Liverpool just sagging a little bit here (.) as the ball is lifted in by Serginho (.)

ball came onto him inside the six yard area (.) **(Tomasson [S]) only seemed to have to make contact** didn't get anyway near it (.)

only seemed to have to make contact (**Tomasson [S]**) didn't get anywhere near it (.) but there's another warning sign for Liverpool (.)

but there's another warning sign for Liverpool (.) (**It [S]**) tell you why he didn't score Mike (.) because he didn't think that **Traore would miss it** and in the end (.) he just took his eye off the ball Tomasson (.) **Traore (took [M]) his eye off the game (.)** and Liverpool got away with it (1.0)

Cafu drills the ball in (.) (**it [S]**) went a very long way right across the six yard area (.) might still be in play over on the far side of the field (.) went a very long way right across the six yard area (.) (**it [S]**) might still be in play over on the far side of the field (.) no might still be in play over on the far side of the field (.) no (**it [S] is not [O/M] in play [C]**) it's just been carried out (.)

it's Ciis  now with a touch towards (.) Luis Garcia (.) (**there [S] are [O/M]**) too many white shirts there and Gattuso steals the ball away from Liverpool once more (.)

Riise's not forward so much **Gerrard ('s [O/M]) back** but Šmicer to me (.) looks to be struggling you know

lots of options (.) **Pirlo's ball in (is [O/M]) too near Dudek as Shevchenko came in at the far post (.)** nothing on though for Dudek at the moment

Pirlo's ball in too near Dudek as Shevchenko came in at the far post (**there [S] is [O/M]**) nothing on though for Dudek at the moment there's no shape now down there at all (.)

and Dudek still has the ball==(**there [S] is [O/M]**) no pressure on Pirlo whatsoever probably more importantly (2.0) Šmicer just remind me when he came on (1.0) Šmicer (.) (**it [S] was [O/M]**) just before (.) half time or (.) certainly well into the first half wasn't it (.) twenty one minutes Greeny's saying to me

twenty one minutes Greeny's saying to me (**he [S] came on [M]**) for Harry Kewell==yup

for Harry Kewell==yup (**he [S] came on [M] for Harry Kewell [C]**) well he's played a major part in getting Liverpool back into this game (.) with the second goal (.) straight after Gerrard had made it three one (.)

we've only fifteen seconds of this first period of (.) extra time as Alonso gives the ball back (1.0) and (**Alonso [S]**) hits it all the way back to Dida (.) in the Milan goal away to our left (1.0) now Liverpool (1.0) may be tiring (.)

and they have to cope for the next few seconds (1.0) with only ten men and Pirlo orchestrating things once more inside the centre circle (.) but Milan now (**are [O/M]**) just at walking pace (.) it's with Kaka (.) as (.) Šmicer still struggles to get back on his feet again over on the far side the field

most of this first period has been played inside the Liverpool half (.) (**it [S] is [O/M]**) nice play now by Cafu (.) it's a bit deep that towards Shevchenko

Shevchenko stretched though (**Shevchenko [S]**) got the volley in (.) and Dudek was on the end of it

well we'll be counting down the minutes now (.) **(we [S] 'll [O] be counting down [M] the minutes [C]) particularly (.) for as long as it stays three three (1.0) Milan**
three nil up at half time (.)

here's (.) Kaka who started in dazzling form **his cross (is [O/M]) not good (.)** is headed away by Riise (.)

his cross not good (.) **(his cross [S]) is headed away by Riise (.)** Ciis  is largely on his own

Hamann does brilliantly holding off two Milan challenges **(Hamann [S]) finds Alonso (.)** onto (.) Šmicer

Šmicer takes it up once more (1.0) **(Šmicer [S]) slips it towards Hyypia (.)** Milan sitting back at the moment (.)

Nesta getting across there first and **(Nesta [S]) just shepherding the ball behind for a goalkick** I think at some stage (.) in the second half of extra time Rui Costa will
come on Alan=

I think at some stage (.) in the second half of extra time Rui Costa will come on Alan==**yup (Rui Costa [S] will [O] come on [M])**= =and even you know if you're thinking
ahead to penalties for me=

=and even you know if you're thinking ahead to penalties for me==**without question (Rui Costa [S] will [O] come on [M]) (.)** a class act (.) the Portuguese (.)
=**without question (.) (he [S] is [O/M]) a class act (.) the Portuguese (.)** Cafu on the far side (1.0)

Gattuso screaming that he wants the ball (.) **(Gattuso [S]) has not been given it (.) as yet** Pirlo instead finds Kaka (.)

Kaka feeding it through for Serginho **(it [S] is [O]) intercepted by Alonso who plays it up field for Ciis ** Ciis  should run at Nesta now

Ciis 's got the ball **(Ciis  [S]) gets away (.) from Gattuso (.)** crosses hoping for a corner

gets away (.) from Gattuso (.) **(Ciis  [S]) crosses hoping for a corner** and gets a corner

crosses hoping for a corner and **(Ciis  [S]) gets a corner ((he does))**

and gets a corner **((he does (get [M] a corner [C])))** that's what he's so good at

Šmicer to deliver (.) **(Šmicer [S]) plays it in low and weakly (.)**

plays it in low and **(Šmicer [S] plays [M] it [C]) weakly (.)** Gattuso didn't get to it at all well

Šmicer back in there (.) **(Šmicer [S]) drives it back to Hamann** Hamann shoots

Hamann shoots and **Hamann (shoots [M])** again that takes a deflection

Hyypia just peels off his man (**Hyypia [S]**) just goes towards well beyond the far post and dinks it back in just goes towards well beyond the far post and (**Hyypia [S]**) dinks it back in so it's a cheap foul into Pirlo again (**he [S] is [O]**) seeing far too much of the ball for my liking Pirlo (1.0) on it goes red shirts converge on him (**Shevchenko [S]**) gets the cross in towards Tomasson (.) again Traore was stretched there again Traore was stretched there (**Traore [S]**) didn't know what he was doing Traore (.) Tomasson back to Cafu (.) and Cafu in field (.) (**it [S] is [O]**) taken on the chest by **Gattuso** (.) there was a little spell of Liverpool pressure there (.) he's got past one defender (.) (**he [S]**) has got Garcia to his left (.) still has the ball has got Garcia to his left (.) (**he [S]**) still has the ball Ciisé wastes that possession Ciisé wastes that possession in the end (**Ciisé [S]**) shot from about thirty yards from goal and it bumbles through to the goalkeeper and you must see that (.) in your eyeline a red shirt run across you== (**! [S]**) can't believe he didn't see him (.) Pirlo (.) Pirlo (.) (**it [S] is [O/M]**) good ball to the left side towards **Serginho who brings it down brilliantly** (.) into the penalty area it goes and it was deflected away by Carragher (**it [S]**) could have gone anywhere could have gone into his own net (.) could have gone anywhere (**it [S]**) could have gone into his own net (.) it's cleared he just screamed cramp (1.0) [yeah (**he [S]**) screamed [M] cramp [C]] yeah] but he's still not sure (.) and (**he [S]**) is better off in this wide position just in case the ball gets played through the centre where Gerrard can use his pace (1.0) I think Milan sense an opportunity here (.) but he gets it behind it's a corner (.) (**he [S]**) has done well (.) not even limping ((as well)) (.) has done well (.) (**he [S] 's [O]**) not even limping ((as well)) (.) of all the places where it comes and (.) Dudek came (**Dudek [S]**) didn't get a touch on the ball and Garcia cleverly let it just drift over his head (.) behind for a goalkick I think he's trying to say to the defenders (.) don't worry boys (.) I knew I knew it was going long (.) I was never going to try and touch it (.) **he didn't know (it was going long [C])**=it still might not come to this

but (.) Dida (.) you know two years ago (.) he came off his line so often **but (he [S]) rode his luck** and was the man that made sure that Milan (.) beat Juventus at Old Trafford

but rode his luck and **(he [S]) was the man that made sure that Milan (.) beat Juventus at Old Trafford (.)** Dudek's looked a little bit hesitant (.) in recent minutes

here's Alonso **(it [S] is [O/M]) good turn by Alonso (.)** and then he was fouled there by Serginho (.)

and is Hyypia going forward **no he's not (going [M] forward [C]) (.)** nor Carragher forward

no he's not (.) nor **(is [O]) Carragher (going [M]) forward** nor Traore forward (.)

nor Carragher forward **nor (is [O]) Traore (going [M]) forward (.)** it looks as if it's going to be aimed at Ciisé

it looks as if it's going to be aimed at Ciisé it is **(going to be aimed [M] at Ciisé [C]) (.)** Ciisé jumps

Ciisé jumps **(Ciisé [S]) heads it on to the penalty area** but does so to no good effect

heads it on to the penalty area **but (Ciisé [S]) does so to no good effect** it's back to Dida

they want to win it here in extra time with a fourth goal (.) and **(they [S]) have got possession on the far side of the field (.)** now Liverpool (.) have left everybody back bar Ciisé (.)

that looked like a foul on Hyypia (.) **(it [S] is [O]) not given (.)** and then Garcia (.) was caught in possession (.)

and then Garcia (.) was caught in possession (.) **(it [S] was [O/M]) very careless indeed by Garcia (.)** is taken up now by Pirlo the dangerous Pirlo down the left flank for Milan (.)

very careless indeed by Garcia (.) **(it [S]) is taken up now by Pirlo the dangerous Pirlo down the left flank for Milan (.)** and he gets beyond Gerrard

Pirlo runs and still **(Pirlo [S] runs [M]) the Milan player** and that was an obstruction by Hamman

now I think Pirlo ran into the German==(Pirlo [S]) definitely **(ran [M] into the German [C])** I mean it's really really clever play by Pirlo

he just nudged it to a side and (.) **(he [S]) made sure he ran into to Hamman** and the referee had to give the foul (.)

and the referee had to give the foul (.) **(it [S] was [O/M]) great play initially mind** no question about it (.)

played in **(it [S]) took a deflection** that's gone behind for a corner

and it took it high and **(it [S]) arced over the far post for Liverpool** it's the last time I'm going to tell you (.)

it's the last time I'm going to tell you (.) oh nine hundred nine oh nine six nine three (.) (is [O/M]) the number to call for six oh six which will follow some time (.) corner to Milan (.)

swung in left footed (it [S] is [O/M]) great corner well defended too (.) by Liverpool

great corner (it [S] is [O]) well defended too (.) by Liverpool it was Carragher who headed it away (.)

Šmicer looks very tired (.) (he [S]) still has the ball though up towards the half way line and then was he ((blocked)) (.) surely

and then was he ((blocked)) (.) surely no (he [S] was not [O] blocked [M]) (.) he played for a foul

Gerrard just about gets in a challenge there (Gerrard [S]) finds Hamman (.) Šmicer to Garcia (.)

Garcia back to Hamman and (it [S]) is swept on towards the far side (.) do you know something I'm not saying they're getting the decisions wrong

[it's unbelievable] (.) (it [S] 's [O/M]) very very slow (1.0) the ball is with Pirlo (.)

now Garcia from Alonso's pass on towards Ciis  (it [S] is [O/M]) not the best of balls Ciis 's got no chance with that

Ciis 's got no chance with that (it [S] is [O]) headed clear by Nesta (1.0) Milan come forward again (.)

in it goes (.) and (it [S] is [O]) drifted towards the left side towards Serginho (.) Gerrard rises well

Gerrard rises well (Gerrard [S]) heads in field towards Alonso and Alonso (.) coolly plays it towards Šmicer

Gerrard dives in and (Gerrard [S]) gets to the ball (.) and clears it (.) towards the halfway line

and gets to the ball (.) and (Gerrard [S]) clears it (.) towards the halfway line and now it comes off Maldini

I would have thought so (.) (it [S] is [O/M]) no wonder Benetiz is frustrated (1.0) Stam on the half way line after Milan (.) take the throw in that shouldn't have been theirs (.)

((here's a)) brilliant save by Dudek (.) and (it [S] is [O/M]) another brilliant save by Dudek (.) how did he keep that out (.)

how did he keep that out (.) (it [S] is [O/M]) astonishing (.) Shevchenko could have scored twice

but he kept it out (it [S] is [O/M]) magnificent (.) Milan thought they'd won it

I thought they'd won it (it [S] was [O/M]) unbelievable from the Polish goalkeeper (.) I think Kaka went up there to say well done (2.0)

Hamman might win it but (Hamman [S]) hasn't got the pace to get after (.) I think that's a foul by Didi Hamman

freekick to AC Milan (it [S] is [O]) taken quickly by Cafu to the far side and now it's out of play for a throw in (.)

I can't get over that save [((Alan))] (it [S] was [O/M]) (just) (.) astounding the other thing as well I think a couple of times when the ball's come in he's completely bumbled them out

Riise looks dreadfully tired and (Riise [S]) just lifts it over the halfway line (.) two minutes to go

Liverpool are completely dead on their feet==(Liverpool [S] are [O]) completely **[dead on their feet]** throw in by Stam (.)

Cafu right edge of the penalty area (.) (Cafu [S]) drops it back Alonso chests it down very confidently

Alonso chests it down very confidently (Alonso [S]) finds Hamman Hamman onto Ciisé

that's a freekick yeah (that [S] is [O/M] a freekick [C]) (.) no doubt about it

yeah (there [S] is [O/M]) no doubt about it even if he complains he got the ball (.) Stam it's tackle from behind (1.0)

and Liverpool will be much relieved to get that freekick (it [S] is [O/M]) welcome breather (1.0) don't rush about taking it Liverpool (.)

but that's between Ciisé and Garcia and (that [S]) rushed out of play one minute to go (1.0)

and rushed out of play (there [S] is [O/M]) one minute to go (1.0) ((well)) just keep your belief here

Maldini climbs all over Garcia but (Maldini [S] climbs over [M] Garcia [C]) fairly and (.) heads it back to Nesta (.)

but fairly and (Maldini [S]) (.) heads it back to Nesta (.) Nesta now (.) to Maldini

Pirlo (.) on towards the far side and (it [S]) is easily won back (.) by Hamman Hamman's done brilliantly since he come on

Hamman still going finally (Hamman [S]) runs into Stam who clatters the ball over the halfway line we've got one minute of stoppage time (.) at the end of this extra time

we've got one minute of stoppage time (.) at the end of this extra time and (we [S]) are into it here's Ciisé right in the Milan penalty area

here's Ciisé right in the Milan penalty area (Ciisé [S]) gets it back to Šmicer surely Liverpool can't win it from this ((state))

I think it's into Hamman [(((Hamman [S]) stops it))] [into Hamman back to Gerrard]

[into Hamman back to Gerrard] (it [S]) takes the wall out of play (.) Liverpool wait because the referee waits (.)

it's teed up for Gerrard **no** (*it* [S] *isn't* [O] **teed up** [M] *for Gerrard*) (.) it's back to Riise

TV COMMENTARY CORPUS

LIVERPOOL VS MANCHESTER UNITED – FA CUP - 5TH ROUND - FEBRUARY 2006

Morientes here (.) **(he [S])** nearly got set up by a defender do you know John before the first goal went in Manchester United had dealt extremely well with all the crosses

Rooney's (.) still hobbling slightly **(it [S]) is a short throw this time by (.) Riise** but this is Hyypia (1.0)

Rooney's still not back on the pitch **(Rooney [S]) is now** (4.0) this is Ronaldo (1.0)

he's won several of those (.) **(he [S] 's [O]) not (won [M]) several of those [C]) in particularly dangerous areas it must be said** but that's in the centre circle (1.0)

this is Sissoko (2.0) **(it [S] 's [O/M]) just a little scrappy at the moment** (.) neither side holding onto the ball for very long (2.0)

but up til now Liverpool have held onto it rather better than United (2.0) **and Vidic (is [O/M]) not too sure with that header** then Crouch goes down (.)

and I think that's right (.) **yeah (that [S] is [O/M] right)** (1.0) Peter Crouch in the end just (.) tried to run into Vidic (.)

Peter Crouch in the end just (.) tried to run into Vidic (.) **and (Peter Crouch [S]) then looked at the referee** and said he fouled me (1.0)

and then looked at the referee **and (Peter Crouch [S]) said he fouled me** (1.0) a bit of good old fashioned bodily contact (2.0)

Gary Neville missed that (.) **(Gary Neville [S]) completely (missed [M] that [C])** (.) but there was cover behind him (.)

there's nobody there (.) **Crouch (does [M]) (.) little flick back for Morientes** (.) good block Vidic

and Van Nistelrooy squares up to Harry Kewell and Kewell **(squares up [M]) to him** (.) and Howard Webb's got a little bit of sorting out to do here

the card is coming out (1.0) **(it [S]) looks as though it may be yellow for Giggs for the initial tackle** (.) yeah

looks as though it may be yellow for Giggs for the initial tackle (.) **yeah (it [S] looks [M] as though it may be yellow for Giggs [C])** think tackle from behind is what the referee is saying (1.0)

yeah **(I [S]) think tackle from behind is what the referee is saying** (1.0) but there was (.) an incident just after that

I think Van Nistelrooy was suggesting to Kewell (.) that he went down extremely easily (1.0) **(it [S] 's [O/M]) a case of pot and kettle I think** well Steven Gerrard can take a freekick here right on the eighteen yard line (.)

and Steven Finnan (2.0) ooof **(that [S] was [O/M] a) chance to make it two nil** (.) was it ever (.)

was it ever (.) **(Steven Finnan [S]) just got himself free at the back post** it was almost as though Stevie Gerrard picked him out (.)

it was almost as though Stevie Gerrard picked him out (.) (there [S] was [O/M]) no Manchester United player anywhere near him was there (.) that's poor marking isn't it

Hyyppia (.) Crouch to come in **and Morientes (to come in [M])** (11.0) ((lots of jostling))

so the chance goes for Finnan (.) **(Finnan [S]) has only ever scored one goal in Liverpool colours** (3.0) bit of a let off for united that (.)

has only ever scored one goal in Liverpool colours (3.0) (it [S] was [O/M]) bit of a let off for United that (.) well a big let off (1.0)

bit of a let off for United that (.) well (it [S] was [O/M]) a big let off (1.0) two nil after thirty four minutes would have been quite a handicap (1.0)

Gary Neville having to hurry across to match Riise (4.0) so (there [S] are [O/M]) ten minutes left in the (.) first half here (.) Wayne Rooney penalised

here comes Kewell **and still (Kewell [S] comes [M])** (.) they beat Millwall two years ago (.)

they beat Millwall two years ago (.) **(they [S]) lost to Arsenal on penalties** (.) Liverpool's last appearance was in the first (.) final at Cardiff in two thousand and one (1.0)

Liverpool's last appearance was in the first (.) final at Cardiff in two thousand and one (1.0) **(Liverpool [S]) came from (.) behind to beat Arsenal with two late Owen goals** (.) Riise wants this to run (.)

Van Nistelrooy (1.0) just goes down by the goal line (1.0) (it [S]) is back to Neville from Vidic (.) here's Vidic again (1.0)

Vidic saw the danger (5.0) (it [S] is [O/M] a freekick there (.) Crouch on Giggs (1.0)) I think physically in that midfield area Giggs Richardson Fletcher (.) just can't get near the ball John (.)

this is Rooney (2.0) now (it [S] is [O/M]) Van Nistelrooy in the centre that's who he's trying to find (1.0)

and Rooney gets a touch again **and (Rooney [S] gets [M] a touch [C]) again** (.) he's really battling for it here

Wayne Rooney looks at the referee **(Wayne Rooney [S]) appeals** (.) nothing given

Van Nistelrooy's offside (1.0) (it [S]) won't be his first goal at Anfield (2.0) I actually think Rooney had a case for a foul (.) on him by Hyyppia on the edge of the penalty area (.)

I actually think Rooney had a case for a foul (.) on him by Hyyppia on the edge of the penalty area (.) (I [S] am [O]) just wondering whether the referee was trying to play advantage think it's here isn't it (.)

just wondering whether the referee was trying to play advantage (I [S]) think it's here isn't it (.) there

think it's here isn't it (.) (it [S] is [O/M]) there yeah (.)

he battled away well (.) **(he [S]) went down eventually** that's ((what)) he was looking for it (.)

that's a foul (.) **(that [S] 's [O/M] a) foul by Crouch on Brown** (8.0) well there's the header that did the damage (1.0)

well there's the header that did the damage (1.0) **(if [S]) crept along the line didn't it** | think Vidic was supposed to mark him (.)

he can do it again too (2.0) **(he [S]) still can (do [M] it [C])** (.) here's Morientes (.)

this is Dietmar Hamann (.) **(Dietmar Hamann [S]) lofted it up for Peter Crouch** (1.0) shouts against Brown

but in fact the referee's given it the other way (3.0) **(he [S]) has done well the referee hasn't it** (1.0) you know he had his tester very early on with the Kewell foul on (.) Gary Neville (1.0)

finally Wayne Rooney goes down and **(Wayne Rooney [S]) retrieves the ball in the other corner** (1.0) five minutes to go to half time at Anfield in the (.) fifth round of the football association challenge cup (.)

Liverpool one Manchester United nil (6.0) **(there [S] will [O] be [M]) new sponsors for this competition next season** but it'll still be called the FA cup

the Liverpool man wins out==(the Liverpool man [S] wins out [M]) brilliantly (5.0) this is Dietmar Hamann

this is Dietmar Hamann **(fhat [S] is [O/M]) good strength there** you're right they're real athletes in the Liverpool midfield aren't they (.) all four of them (.)

they're in control in every area of the pitch at the moment (2.0) **(you [S]) wouldn't think looking at this that they were the team that had a (.) draining midweek game** (.) here's Finnan (.)

he's come inside Richardson (.) **(he [S]) has found Gerrard** (1.0) that's very deep (.)

Morientes will try and retrieve it (.) and he has **(retrieved [M] it [C])** and Crouch is coming in with the goalkeeper (1.0)

and Crouch is coming in with the goalkeeper (1.0) **(if [S]) was a good save that by Van Der Sar** (.) he's also looking straight up into the sun (.)

this is Sissoko (2.0) **(it [S] was [O/M] a) back pass wasn't it** (.) yeah (.)

back pass wasn't it (.) **yeah (it [S] was [O/M] a back pass [C])** (.) yet to score for Liverpool ((actually))

yeah (.) **(he [S] is [O/M]) yet to score for Liverpool ((actually))** now then Riise appeals

now then Riise appeals **but (Riise [S]) gets nothing** (7.0) through the legs (6.0)

Rooney (.) **(that [S]) is exactly what's (.) troubling Manchester United** can't get possession (2.0)

is exactly what's (.) troubling Manchester United (**Manchester United** [S]) can't get possession (2.0) and when they do Liverpool just keep pinching it back off them (1.0)

Van Nistelrooy (.) Fletcher (.) (it [S] is [O/M]) time perhaps for Manchester United to (.) impose themselves at last here's Ronaldo (.)

he's trying to release Morientes (1.0) (it [S]) came off his back (1.0) now Richardson looks for Ronaldo who's come over to the right hand side now (.) against Riise (.)

Sissoko tripped him from behind (2.0) **(he [S]) does commit his fair share of fouls** (.) Sissoko has to be said (1.0)

does commit his fair share of fouls (.) Sissoko (it [S]) has to be said (1.0) now then Wes Brown will go forward on the far side here for Manchester United

now then Wes Brown will go forward on the far side here for Manchester United (**Manchester United** [S]) desperately need something to lift them (.) as they go into **the added time** (2.0) and now Vidic has gone to join them up there (2.0)

and I would say Mark (.) pretty much a certainty for the England squad wouldn't he be yes (he [S] would [O] be [M] a certainty for the England squad [C]) well (.) the thing about him John he can also play right back if you need him

yes well (.) the thing about him (is [O/M]) John he can also play right back if you need him he can also play central midfield which he did for Liverpool early on in his career (.)

he can also play central midfield which he did for Liverpool early on in his career (.) (it [S] is [O/M]) just outstanding here's Rooney (1.0)

and that just sums up the first half really (2.0) Liverpool (are [O/M]) dominant in the middle of the field (2.0) and Manchester United's irritation showing there (.)

Mark (.) what do you make of the first half overall= =well Liverpool (are [O/M]) in control there haven't been many chances

there haven't been many chances **(there [S]) never is in these encounters** but all have fallen to Liverpool (.)

(there [S]) never is in these encounters **but (they [S]) all have fallen to Liverpool** (.) looking at Manchester United John (.) their best two players normally are Van Nistelrooy and Rooney

and (.) I would say really (.) Mark that that is the difference isn't it **(that [S] is [O/M] the difference [C]) most definitely John** (.) but it's a big difference today especially when the game is always going to be very tight (.)

Liverpool have won every fifty fifty (.) and **(Liverpool [S] have [O]) probably (won [M]) a few against the head as well in there** (1.0) I think they've won a few forty sixties as well to be honest=

I think they've won a few forty sixties as well to be honest= **(they [S] 've [O] won [M] a few forty sixties [C])** this is Crouch (1.0)

as they say in football and particularly in the FA cup you never know **(you [S]) could have a completely different second half** (1.0) certainly Manchester United followers will be hoping so

absolutely (.) **(that [S]) would have made it two nil (1.0) the man with the ball (1.0)** and Howard Webb who's controlled it well (.) brings the first half to a close (.)
muted disappointment at the Manchester United end (.) **Peter Crouch (was [O/M]) the scorer (.)** half time in the FA cup fifth round (.)

BOLTON WANDERERS VS CHELSEA – PREMIER LEAGUE – NOVEMBER 2006

well there's been a couple of little half chances for Andriy Shevchenko **(there [S] 's [O] been [M]) nothing that you would say he was a little bit slow to get onto (.)**
again ((there's a) ball across

again ((there's a) ball across **and (it [S] is [O]) laid down for him here (.)** Drogba gives him a little call (.)

Drogba gives him a little call (.) **(it [S]) just wouldn't sit down for him (.)** once again it's well defended (.) by Faye (1.0)

Davies into Terry who is (1.0) used to that sort of physical confrontation (1.0) **(Terry [S]) can cope with it (.)** Faye (1.0)

Davies goes again (.) **(Davies [S]) claims that he didn't get the last touch (.)** that's the way (1.0) the flag was pointing for Bolton (3.0)

they've been very grateful over the past couple of days for the help from Manchester City football club to set up training facilities at that (.) mini stadium next to the City of Manchester Stadium part of the sports city complex in Manchester (5.0) **(it [S] is [O/M]) offside just there=** =flag up (2.0)

offside just there= =**flag (is [O/M]) up (2.0)** they quite like that straight one

well Sam Allardyce has had his distractions **but (Sam Allardyce [S]) has kept his team focused (1.0)** third at the moment (.) for a club that's never finished higher than that

so (2.0) they are (.) rolling back the years with their (.) progress in (.) the Premier League as it is now (1.0) **(it [S] is [O]) rolled out by a long serving goalkeeper (.)**
Jaaskelainen (.) who was here even before Sam Allardyce (5.0) Lampard (2.0)

Sam Allardyce would tell you the exact percentage if you asked him= =yup **(Sam Allardyce [S] would [O] tell [M] you [C] the exact percentage [C])** (2.0) now Lampard's found some space in behind Gary Speed (.)

he got some stick there **but (he [S] got [M] some stick [C]) unfairly (.)** he had his eye on Essien (.)

well Bolton have worked it well here to (.) Ben Haim who's a bit of a make shift left back as Andy's been's suggesting (.) **(Ben Haim [S]) is really a (.) a central defender (.)** Ricardo Gardner's on the mend

Ricardo Gardner's on the mend **and (.) (Ricardo Gardner [S]) has played a reserve game recently (.)** he's been out all season (3.0)

Davies in the middle **and (1.0) John Terry (.) (has [O/M] his) eye on the ball** but (.) maybe a little bit of (.) vision on where Kevin Davies was as well (3.0)

and (1.0) John Terry (.) eye on the ball but (.) maybe (John Terry [S] had [O/M]) a little bit of (.) vision on where Kevin Davies was as well (3.0) Essien (4.0) Makélélé (1.0)

and Drogba (.) just finding a (.) channel to exploit then and (Drogba [S]) has got Ashley Cole up for (.) help (1.0) Drogba again (.)

I don't think he really could have expected Kevin Davies to be* after that one (.) = *no (he [S] couldn't [O] have expected [M] Kevin Davies to be after that one [C])= =but the (.) gesture suggested he did (4.0)

a little nutmeg on (.) one of the world's better midfield player's Michael Ballack there yup (he [S] would [O] have enjoyed [M] that [C]) (4.0) well Méité got lucky taking that one down (.)

well Méité got lucky taking that one down (.) ((that [S] is [O/M]) great play by [Davies]) [Davies]

[Davies] yup (that [S] is [O/M] great play by Davies [C]) (.) here's Diouf (.) one of four forward for Bolton here (.)

and Geremi (.) who's having a run in the team at right back (.) not fooled by the drop of the shoulder and the sway of the hips (.) (he [S]) didn't really do enough though Diouf there (1.0) this little bit of skill

this little bit of skill (it [S]) looked like he'd overrun this but just watch this

but just watch this (he [S]) just gets there as Ballack comes in (.) see you later son (4.0)

=(laughs) ([S]) can't wait for the book to come out (laughs) (2.0)

Dean Holdsworth was the scorer then (2.0) ([S]) don't think Sam was the manager was he nope

don't think Sam was the manager was he nope (Sam [S] wasn't [O/M] the manager [C]) he came in (.) nineteen ninety nine (.) on his birthday forty fifth birthday

he's looking for Shevchenko and (.) (Drogba [S]) went near post (.) Ballack was in there as well

I think that's the best chance yet for Chelsea (1.0) (it [S]) was due to some poor defending from Méité (.) what on earth he's doing trying to nick the ball off Drogba I just don't know (1.0)

what on earth he's doing trying to nick the ball off Drogba I just don't know (1.0) (there [S] are [O/M]) no excuses either because he'll have played a season with him before at Marseille and he's played a good few internationals with him at the Ivory Coast (2.0)

Steve Bennett's (.) pulled play back for the Chelsea freekick (1.0) (it [S]) doesn't concern Bolton too much if they're down on the (.) possession (.) sharings (3.0) well it's a fair way out (1.0)

Jaaskelainen telling his defenders to hold their line (.) on the edge of the area (Jaaskelainen [S] is [O] telling [M] his defenders [C]) not drop in (.) Lampard does fancy it (.)

ball's moving all over the place and **(ball [S] 's [O]) dipping towards him** (.) trying to catch that might have been fatal (.)

trying to catch that might have been fatal (.) **(he [S]) most likely would have spilt it** (.) and that was really good goalkeeping to get it out for a throw in from there (1.0)

and again it's parried out to Essien (.) **(it [S]) wasn't quite so effective from Jaaskelainen's reactions that time** (.) back in by Makélélé (.)

wasn't quite so effective from Jaaskelainen's reactions that time (.) **(it [S] is [O/M]) back in by Makélélé** (.) Campo's header

again difficult one for the goalkeeper (.) **(it [S] is [O/M]) not such a good punch that** (.) all he does is drop this right out in front of him (.)

well the (.) referee just wants to (.) make sure the push and shove is in the (.) realms of (1.0) what he will tolerate (.) **but John Terry (.) (is [O/M]) the (.) one everyone tries to mark** (.) and that was the dangerous Carvalho (.) coming round the back (1.0)

will it drop for Drogba (.) and maybe **(it [S] will [O]) drop [M]) for Shevchenko** (.) ricochets to where another punch from Jaaskelainen is required

and maybe for Shevchenko **(it [S]) ricochets to where another punch from Jaaskelainen is required** hammered back by Essien=

ricochets to where another punch from Jaaskelainen is required **(it [S] is [O]) hammered back by Essien**= = what a hit (1.0)

hammered back by Essien= **=what a hit (that [S] is [O/M])** (1.0) what a beautiful crisp strike of a football that was

they really are under the cosh at the moment Bolton (.) **(they [S]) can't get it out** (1.0) Carvalho hits the post here (1.0)

I think Campo thinks it's gone **but it hasn't (gone [M])** Carvalho didn't give this up (.)

and Essien just meets this unbelievably well from this punch (1.0) **(it [S] is [O]) beautifully struck** (.) ooohh ho ho hoooh (3.0)

it whistled over the bar (6.0) **(he [S]) hasn't scored an away goal for Chelsea yet Michael Essien** (1.0) I don't think he will ever (.) strike a (.) a ball away from home as well he hit that one

(1.0) Makélélé (7.0) Lampard two options Drogba (.) **(it [S] is [O]) parried again away by Jaaskelainen** (.) Essien

it's not a good cross (.) **(it [S] is [O]) chested down by Nolan** yeah

chested down by Nolan **yeah (it [S] is [O]) chested down [M] by Nolan [C])** it's another chance

I know he's confident **(he [S]) has got some goals** (.) I just think the angle's against him (1.0)

of course they spilt plenty of champagne here a couple of years ago= **yeah (they [S] spilt [M] plenty of champagne [C])** (1.0) what they have got this season of course is very little margin for error (.)

what they have got this season of course is very little margin for error (.) **(they [SI] need to win here** (3.0) that's a poor touch from Anelka there (1.0)

Lampard (1.0) **(it [SI] is [O/M]) another poor one from Frank** (1.0) here's Davies (.)

Jose Mourinho will be out (.) **(Jose Mourinho [S]) was out a couple of times at Arjin Robben** (.) and he's acting (.) with a hint of a smile as ball boy=
=he'll be happy with the first half performance tonight (.) **(he [S]) will certainly be more happy than he was at the weekend** (14.0) nudge by Davies (1.0)

I know what he's trying to do I understand **(what he's trying to do [C])** (.) but it's a very comfortable save in the end (.)
it's narrow (1.0) **all the width (is [O/M]) on the right** but it's fairly deep from Geremi

now Ashley Cole sets off (.) and others in Chelsea shirts **(set off [M])** (.) but Ballack can't (.) spin it into Cole's path (4.0)

it's Jaaskelainen eleventh game against Chelsea for Bolton **(Jaaskelainen [S]) has never kept a clean sheet** (.) but he working really hard *to have a clean sheet after
twenty five minutes here (2.0)

but no-one wants to see that big a discrepancy=**no (no-one [S] wants to see [M] that big a discrepancy [C])** you're not going to get much with eighteen percent
possession are you=
you're not going to get much with eighteen percent possession are you= **no (you [S] 're [O] not going to get [M] much [C])** but they (.) too are very well drilled at their
freakicks (.) even from inside their own half (.)

any mistakes he's there or thereabouts (.) Claude Makélélé (1.0) **(if [SI] doesn't happen by chance either** (.) and off he'll go now

Speed (.) shoves it in again **(if [S] is [O/M]) on from Méité** (1.0) Anelka (2.0)

=well I just wondered if that might be seen as a* =yellow card (.) one =yeah **(that [S] might [O] be seen [M] as a yellow card one [C])**=* yeah (.) could have been (3.0)
=yeah= yeah (.) **(if [SI] could have been (seen [M] as a yellow card one [C])** (3.0) it's great enterprise by Terry to see the possibilities of the counter attack (.)

Bolton are back in (1.0) good numbers again (.) and they need to be **(back in good numbers [C])** (.) Chelsea have been calling the tune here (1.0)

Essien (.) the player who skimmed the crossbar a few minutes ago was even more anxious to shoot that time (.) maybe **(Essien [S] was [O/M]) too anxious** (2.0) well
there's a double bill on Prem Plus for you on Saturday

he looked to toss it in straight away **but (he [S]) has (.) hammered a ball across for Ashley Cole who's one of the quickest (.) leftbacks around** but not (.) that quick
but has (.) hammered a ball across for Ashley Cole who's one of the quickest (.) leftbacks around **but (he [S] is [O/M]) not (.) that quick** he's a fantastic outlet for this side
(.)

he's a huge addition (**he [S]**) is hugely important (.) they are so narrow at times

I mean that (**they [S] are [O/M]**) so narrow (1.0) but if Cole doesn't give them that width (1.0) then there are very few times they will find it (4.0) he thought nothing of it (.) (**he [S]**) let it go straight one from Geremi

Anelka's involved again (.) (**Anelka [S] 's [O]**) partnered now by Carvalho (2.0) well this is the ball

it's a super ball in (.) as he takes it on his chest (**is [O/M] there [S] anything there** (.) nah

anything there (.) **nah (there [S] isn't [O/M] anything there [C])** (.) think the linesman probably got it right (1.0)

nah (.) (**[S] think the linesman probably got it right** (1.0) the linesman was looking at the incident

and then the referee was looking at the [linesman]* or the assistant as we should call him (2.0) **[yeah] (the referee [S] was [O] looking [M] at the linesman [C])*** in from Ivan Campo (3.0)

LIVERPOOL VS ARSENAL – CHAMPIONS LEAGUE QUARTER FINAL 2ND LEG - APRIL 2008

this is the star prize (1.0) (**there [S] is [O/M] one spectator here this evening still to take his seat (.) the Liverpool manager Rafa Benitez who's been frantic and almost (.) maniacal on the touchline from the outset** (.) think he's just sat down for the first time Clive (.)

one spectator here this evening still to take his seat (.) the Liverpool manager Rafa Benitez who's been frantic and almost (.) maniacal on the touchline from the outset (.) (**[S] think he's just sat down for the first time Clive** (.) yeah (1.0) just to make some notes (7.0)

think he's just sat down for the first time Clive (.) **yeah (he [S] has [O] sat down [M])** (1.0) just to make some notes (7.0) the two managers (.) were very animated in the closing moments of Saturday's (.) Premier League encounter

Fàbregas (.) Clichy (1.0) Diaby (3.0) Flamini (1.0) **William Gallas (is [O/M]) a beaten semi finalist with Chelsea** it was he who tried desperately to hook Luis Garcia's phantom goal off the line (.) down at the Kop end (2.0)

Eboué (1.0) Hleb (.) Fàbregas (.) **Touré (.) (is [O/M]) strong enough to see off Mascherano** (.) it's Fàbregas

it's space for Diaby (**it [S] 's [O]**) well left by Adebayor (2.0) here goes Adebayor once more (.)

Alonso just beat Fàbregas to the punch (.) (**it [S] goes [M] out as far as Flamini** (.) survives the handball appeals (.)

out as far as Flamini (.) (**Flamini [S] survives the handball appeals** (.) Fàbregas and Hleb combine (.)

Fàbregas and Hleb combine (.) (it [S] 's [O/M]) lovely football from Arsenal (.) Diaby (.)

Diaby (.) (it [S] 's [O/M]) advantage Arsenal (1.0) Abou Diaby (1.0) has scored at the Kop end (2.0)

Reina does well to anticipate Adebayor (.) just coming around his man (**Reina [S]**) **got a good touch on it** (.) but when it's just played here (.) to Diaby (.)

he should be dealing with that (.) (**he [S]**) **should stand up to it at his near post** and get something stronger on it (.)

should stand up to it at his near post and (he [S] should [O]) get something stronger on it (.) just gets his angles slightly wrong (.)

and get something stronger on it (.) (**he [S]**) **just gets his angles slightly wrong** (.) and the touch goes in (1.0)

and the touch goes in (1.0) (it [S]) was a well struck shot by Abou Diaby (1.0) but Reina was beaten at his near post (1.0)

Fernando Torres (.) (it [S] is [O]) blocked by Flamini (3.0) and if it is possible to have done enough to deserve a goal after thirteen minutes of play (.) Arsenal deserve to be in front (.)

Alonso's let Diaby go (.) (Diaby [S]) takes it away from Škrtel now he's probably not really expecting once he hits it (.) for it to go in (.)

but go in it does (.) and what a start (it [S] is [O/M]) (2.0) Liverpool led for just twelve minutes of the Premier League on Saturday (.)

but (.) Arsenal have got an opportunity here (1.0) (Arsenal [S] are [O]) forcing Liverpool into errors (9.0) Hyypia (.) up towards Kuyt (1.0)

he's managed to wriggle away from Senderos momentarily (.) (**he [S]**) **feeds it back to Xavi Alonso** (2.0) Škrtel (4.0)

but the free kick has been given (.) (there [S] is [O/M]) just a suspicion there Jim certainly an appeal against Mathieu Flamini for handball in the build up to that goal (1.0)

just a suspicion there Jim certainly an appeal against Mathieu Flamini for handball in the build up to that goal (1.0) **yeah (there [S] is [O/M] a suspicion of an appeal against Mathieu Flamini for handball [C]) just after Alonso got it away** (.) I mean the referee clearly indicated the minute it had happened that it hit shoulder (.)

Gerrard (.) did well (**Gerrard [S]**) **gathered there** (.) he was checked by Senderos (1.0)

and that's what the referee was pointing to this side of the pitch for (2.0) (it [S] is [O]) set up for Gerrard (.) not quite as they rehearsed it was it (.)

set up for Gerrard (.) (it [S] was [O/M]) not quite as they rehearsed it was it (.) Carragher

it's given straight to Clichy (3.0) (it [S] 's [O/M]) on to Adebayor (1.0) he's got such acceleration (.) taking one stride to every two of Škrtel's (.) and linking up with Eboué (1.0)

=well look at Gerrard now (**Gerrard [S]**) is so concerned himself (.) at the need for Liverpool to regain some composure or find some composure he's drifted into **the centre more now just trying to stabilise things** he's a firefighter

but it can be his weakness because it can undo the tactical plan (1.0) **absolutely (it [S] can [O] be [M] his weakness [C])** Rafael Benitez is always talking about the compactness

and I said with the change of formation tonight would Liverpool lose some of that (.) **well (it [S]) looks as if they have because Arsenal are carving them open (2.0)** they're in a position now where they can pick Liverpool off (3.0)

I mean as well as Liverpool needing to find some composure and indeed try and get it to the feet of Torres (.) and Crouch who've both been isolated ((from it)) (.) (.) they just need to watch the backdoor again as well (.) (**they [S]**) just (**need to**) make sure that they (.) keep concentration at the back (1.0) Arsenal enjoying a large share of the possession on Anfield territory (.)

this representing the highest challenge of his career (.) (**he [S]**) continues to cling to the conviction that he can meet the challenge and that Arsenal will be **champions of Europe and England (1.0) (is [O/M] he [S] a visionary (.)** or continues to cling to the conviction that he can meet the challenge and that Arsenal will be champions of Europe and England (1.0) **dreamer (4.0)** or dreamer (4.0)

visionary (.) or (**is [O/M] he [S] a dreamer (4.0)** Kuyt (.)

I think Arsene Wenger's just said to them look you're better on the ball (.) than Liverpool (.) go out and assert that and boy have they (**asserted [M] that [C]**) (1.0) Fàbregas (.) Eboué (.)

Fàbregas was caught late there by Mascherano (**Mascherano [S]**) had a bit of a nibble (.) at Fàbregas (1.0) respect from Mascherano (.)

respect from Mascherano (.) (**he [S]**) goes no way near the referee (1.0) he got close enough to Fàbregas (1.0)

Hleb (.) (**[S]**) don't know how he (.) managed to emerge with the ball there Diaby (.) short passing triangles which Arsenal (.) love to (.) carve you open with (.)

and now Liverpool are exposed because Carragher is upfield (2.0) (**that [S] is [O/M]**) excellent play by Diaby (.) he's got support from Gaël Clichy (.)

that's a great run from Clichy (**that [S] 's [O/M]**) a great ball (.) from Diaby and (.) I mean (.) it could have come back off Adebayor when (.) Reina got the punch (1.0)

=well they were always going to turn up here and (**they [S] were [O] going to**) at least put it in in the first half (.) it's the second half where it may show (.)

amazing was the word that Rafael Benitez used to describe (.) Kuyt's first leg (.) performance (.) (**it [S]**) was certainly an eventful one with the goal and that (.) **penalty appeal (2.0)** there is the (.) possession statistic

and there's nothing in it (1.0) **well (it [S]) looks a lot tighter on that than what we've seen out there (.)** I think it's just use of the football (.)

Alonso (1.0) Kuyt (2.0) Torres **he's gone past one and the striker ('s [O] gone [M] past) by another** but charged down by Clichy well it's what Liverpool need now (.) (Liverpool [S] need) **just to string a few passes together** start finding red shirts just to string a few passes together (Liverpool [S] need to) **start finding red shirts** and just build the confidence a little bit (2.0) start finding red shirts **and (Liverpool [S] need to) just build the confidence a little bit (2.0)** Clichy's down (.)

it's going to be a bruising night ([S] hope they've kept a bed or two (.) clear at Walton hospital (5.0) so far so good for those who've (.) travelled up the motorways (.) from the south of England (1.0)

hope they've kept a bed or two (.) clear at Walton hospital (5.0) (it [S] is [O/M]) **so far so good for those who've (.) travelled up the motorways (.) from the south of England** (1.0) Kuyt (1.0) Mascherano (.) Carragher (1.0)

Flamini gets tight (.) (**Flamini [S] forces it wide** (3.0) it's a raw night at Anfield (1.0)

it's a raw night at Anfield (1.0) (**there [S] are [O/M]**) **not too many prawns are on the menu here** (4.0) the ball has gone missing thanks to the (.) travelling Arsenal fans (.)

I can tell you our Champions Tuesday on ITV doesn't end here **highlights and reaction from both of the evening's quarter finals (are [O]) at ten forty tonight on ITV one (.)** then more live European football on Thursday on ITV four starting at five fifteen with the first of the UEFA cup quarter finals in St Petersburg (.)

highlights and reaction from both of the evening's quarter finals (are [O]) at ten forty tonight on ITV one (.) **then (there [S] is [O/M]) more live European football on Thursday on ITV four starting at five fifteen with the first of the UEFA cup quarter finals in St Petersburg (.)** but more importantly Sporting Lisbon versus Rangers live and exclusive on ITV four Thursday evening from seven thirty (1.0)

then more live European football on Thursday on ITV four starting at five fifteen with the first of the UEFA cup quarter finals in St Petersburg (.) **but more importantly (there [S] is [O/M]) Sporting Lisbon versus Rangers live and exclusive on ITV four Thursday evening from seven thirty** (1.0) look how much quicker they are to the ball (.)

he's normally very good at distributing it like that **but (.) so far tonight (he [S]) has looked edgy** Gerrard (.) spreading it to Kuyt (.)

Carragher's on the way again (.) (**Carragher [S] won't reach it** (4.0) Arsenal have won just two of the eleven games that they've played (.) in the last couple of months Arsenal have won just two of the eleven games that they've played (.) in the last couple of months **and (Arsenal [S] have [O] won [M]) those thanks to late goals in Milan and at Bolton** (3.0) Liverpool's away goal (.) at the Emirates (.) gave them the edge in the eyes of most people (1.0)

but Arsenal have taken this game to Liverpool from the outset tonight **and (Arsenal [S]) lead by Abou Diaby's thirteenth minute goal** (2.0) Gerrard (2.0)

I think he knew when he saw (.) Diaby's outstretched leg (.) that he had maybe a chance depending on the referee's position (.) **no (it [S] is [O/M]) (.) not (a penalty [C]) for me** (2.0) [(((it would)))]

[[(((Frojdfeldt)))] gave him a terrible look didn't he= =yeah (**Frojdfeldt [S] did [O] give [M] him [C] a terrible look [C]**) (.) well I mean it would have been very very hard on Arsenal wouldn't it particularly after last week because for me that was a pen (1.0)

they just need to get him in (**(they really do)) need to (get him in [C])**) (.) I think the problem for him is (.) just (.) ((he's just looking for help)) (1.0)

Hleb (1.0) rides the challenge from Alonso (.) (**Hleb [S] finds Touré**) (.) now Eboué (2.0) Fàbregas (.)

it's like a relay (1.0) **(this [S] is [O/M] lovely passing from Arsenal**) (.) then Eboué gives it away (.)

Clichy pounces on Gerrard's loose pass (.) (**Clichy [S] thought about a shot**) (.) instead feeds Adebayor (.)

thought about a shot (.) **instead (Clichy [S] feeds Adebayor**) (.) Fàbregas has ((sneaked)) into the centre (1.0)

Fàbregas has ((sneaked)) into the centre (**(are [O/M]) hesitant in possession**) (.) Benetiz continues to make notes (2.0)

he has recognised at times the weight of expectation from Liverpool's history (1.0) **(there [S] are [O/M]) always good and great players former players present on match nights to remind everybody** (12.0) Hleb seeing a lot of the ball (.)

Gerrard being forced back (.) (**Gerrard [S] has been on the fringe of the game so far the Liverpool skipper**) (1.0) you know Eboué Clive I think is doing well tonight for Arsenal

and sometimes you wonder if he can really fit in the system (.) (**(you [S] wonder [M]) if he can make it work** but (.) I think he's doing a good job for them tonight

LIVERPOOL VS CHELSEA – CHAMPIONS LEAGUE SEMI FINAL 1ST LEG - APRIL 2008

Drogba (is [O/M]) in front of Xabi Alonso (.) here's Joe Cole against Martin Škrtel (.)

he looks very very lively (.) (**(he [S] looks [O/M]) strong**) (11.0) Drogba with a backheel (3.0)

Drogba with a backheel (3.0) **(if [S] is [O]) cleared again by Škrtel who's only partnered Carragher at the heart of the defence six or seven times for Liverpool** Carragher's played at right back in the last three European matches (2.0)

it's exactly what Liverpool need now (**what Liverpool need [S] is [O/M] to) get Alonso on the ball** and get some passing going

get Alonso on the ball (**what Liverpool need [S] is [O/M] to) and get some passing going**) (.) this one's just a little overdone (1.0)

Gerrard penalised (**there [S] was [O/M]) just a little tug** (.) on Ashley Cole I think (3.0) Avram Grant chose this week of all weeks to tell us that Steven Gerrard is his favourite player (1.0) a player who Chelsea tried desperately to sign in two thousand and four and two thousand and five (.)

Avram Grant chose this week of all weeks to tell us that Steven Gerrard is his favourite player (1.0) a player who Chelsea tried desperately to sign in two thousand and four and two thousand and five (.) (it [S] is [O/M]) funny that (2.0) here he is

it's passed Cech but (it [S] 's [O/M]) not passed Carvalho (.) and Dirk Kuyt didn't realise quite what a good opportunity he had but you just get on with it and (you [S]) wait for the whistle (.) that was a fantastic chance

but the first touch on the chest got away from him (.) (the first touch on the chest [S]) allowed Cech in (.) that was a great opportunity

but then again we know he can do that and (we [S] know [M] he) often does he's got such a pure (.) right foot a man whose spot kick proved decisive a year ago late in the night Dirk Kuyt (.) offered the first good opportunity of the evening (1.0)

well he's scored some important goals (.) against Inter (.) of course (1.0) (he [S] 's [O]) scored [M] some important goals [C]) against Arsenal too (.) and Chelsea just got it wrong

Carvalho got back at the end (.) (Carvalho [S]) just (got [M] back [C]) (.) but the touch was just too heavy (.)

but the touch was just too heavy (.) (it [S]) got away from him if that's better (.) I think he's every chance of finishing it

Petr Cech wasn't all that convincing there (6.0) (it [S]) just took a moment or two for it to dawn on Kuyt what a good chance he had (1.0) but Cech was just a little hesitant it struck me (.) coming out at the feet of Kuyt (6.0)

Kuyt will certainly see out his defensive responsibilities (1.0) (Kuyt [S]) gave it away to Ferreira it bounced off to Gerrard

and a freekick to Chelsea (.) yeah (that [S] is [O/M] a freekick to Chelsea [C]) Torres was just leaning in trying to stop John Terry from getting there (2.0)

Torres was just leaning in trying to stop John Terry from getting there (2.0) (I [S]) think he knew Terry was probably likely to just get there and there was a little push at the end (1.0)

and there was a little push at the end (1.0) (Terry [S]) rather poignantly had to walk passed the European cup in the Liverpool trophy cabinet on his way into the press conference here last night (.) liked the look of it (1.0)

rather poignantly had to walk passed the European cup in the Liverpool trophy cabinet on his way into the press conference here last night (.) (Terry [S]) liked the look of it (1.0) Joe Cole (1.0)

Joe Cole (1.0) (that [S] is [O/M]) not quite what Ferreira had in mind Makélélé Lampard (1.0)

Makélélé Lampard (1.0) (it [S]) is tossed in towards Drogba (.) it's an awkward bounce for Carragher who got no help from his goalkeeper

well just for a minute I think Reina thought about coming for that one as well but then (Reina [S]) decided against it (.) it's one of those where you don't want to see it bounce or you're in trouble (4.0)

Carragher came through Drogba to get there **but (Carragher [S]) won the ball (.)** play on (2.0)

he just got up **and (he [S]) got on with it (4.0)** good control from Aurelio (4.0)

Torres has got in (1.0) **(Torres [S]) had an early poke at it (.)** it's a goalkick

I thought Torres could have hit it you know first time left foot (.) **(Torres [S]) didn't trust his left did he (.)** he scored his first Liverpool goal against Chelsea here back in August

he scored his first Liverpool goal against Chelsea here back in August **(he [S]) announced (.) himself as (.) the new Liverpool number nine (.)** what nobody knew then is what a hero he would become in his first season here at Anfield (3.0)

good control in towards Joe Cole (.) **(it [S]) just needed a touch (.)** instant control and an instant cross from Didier Drogba (.)

it's good movement **and (it [S] 's [O/M]) a cracking little run inside from Joe Cole** I'm not sure even if he'd have got a touch whether he would have caused Reina real problems (.) because he was ahead of the front post

I mean (.) we've seen little glimpses of him (.) **(he [S] has [O]) not been at his best this season** had his injuries

not been at his best this season **(he [S] has [O]) had his injuries (.)** but he looks as if his form is there tonight

but Rafa Benitez can rest key men (.) at Birmingham this coming weekend **and (Rafa Benitez [S]) can still field a credible side** Chelsea take on Manchester United in the Premier League summit on Saturday lunchtime between the two legs=

Aurelio's just done it now (1.0) **(Aurelio [S]) has given Chelsea a good opportunity to get decent ball in the box (3.0)** Terry and Carvalho have ((gone)) forward to augment Drogba (.)

it's not a night for chances **(it [S] 's [O/M]) not two teams (.) that are known (.) for taking too many risks (4.0)** I think Chelsea have just started the game Clive as is if they really want to grab that away goal (.)

I think Chelsea have just started the game Clive as is if they really want to grab that away goal (.) **(they [S]) haven't managed it in their two previous semi final visits here (.)** and they just look as if they have more ambition about them (.) tonight (1.0)

tonight the Anfield leg will give us a clue (.) **but (the Anfield leg [S] will [O]) probably not (give [M] us [C]) the answer (1.0)** make that two significant differences (.)

but he found Lampard (.) **(it [S] is [O]) clipped in** Joe Cole has got space here (.)

he was aware of Drogba in support out the corner of his eye (.) **(he [S]) did neither one thing nor the other in the end (.)** he knows it (1.0)

Kuyt moves (.) **Lampard (is [O/M]) in** I must admit it's a delightful little weighted ball over the top

I think he thinks Cole that if he takes a touch he'll be closed down (.) (**he [S]**) **tried to take it too early** (.) just got it wrong (2.0)
 tried to take it too early (.) (**he [S]**) **just got it wrong** (2.0) it was crying out for him just to stick his foot through it (1.0)
 Drogba down (2.0) (**it [S] is [O/M]**) **interesting that Liverpool should clear the ball there** in a Premier League game they would be under no onus to do that (.)
 he had an operation earlier in the season (1.0) **yeah he did have (an operation [C])** I think he feels if he takes a touch Škrtel might just get there and close it out (.)
 Drogba is up (.) (**Drogba [S] is [O]**) moving gingerly we've seen that before
 Montagues or Capulets (.) (**it [S] is [O/M]**) **time to make your choice** (.) **in the ownership dispute here** (1.0) not a whiff of reconciliation (.)
 not a whiff of reconciliation (.) **Rick Parry (is [O]) very much at the centre** (.) the battlelines have been drawn (1.0)
 the battlelines have been drawn (1.0) (**I [S]**) **don't know that it's been a genuine distraction for the players so far** but the future of the club is on hold while the dispute continues (2.0)
 I don't think it's got through to them (.) (**I [S]**) **think Rafa's absorbed** (.) **whatever's going on Clive** and (.) if it drags on there's a chance
 and (.) if it drags on there's a chance **but (I [S] do [O]) not yet (think [M] it's got through to them [C])** (5.0) Aurelio (2.0)
 Aurelio (2.0) **Babel (is [O/M]) a little slow to move** there'll be no (.) audible protests from the (.) kopites this evening at the presence of Tom Hicks
 Cole to Drogba (.) (**it [S]**) **was a little too** (.) **short and delicate the pass for Lampard** (.) Alonso (.)
 they have momentum there (.) **but (they [S]) didn't have control** and Terry is able to clear (3.0)
 Mascherano (1.0) (**it [S] is [O]**) **cut out by Cole** (2.0) Didier Drogba incidentally is (.) moving quite freely now (5.0)
 good advantage played **Liverpool (are [O/M]) in possession** (1.0) Kuyt charged down by Terry (1.0)
 Kuyt charged down by Terry (1.0) (**it [S] hits [M]**) **chest** not hand (.) or harm (1.0)
 chest (**it [S] does [O]**) **not (hit [M]) hand** (.) or **harm** (1.0) Kuyt boxed in
 Álvaro Arbeloa (.) back to Xavi Alonso (.) (**it [S] is [O]**) **swung in** will find a way out to Fabio Aurelio
 swung in (**it [S]**) **will find a way out to Fabio Aurelio** but (.) ((that was)) beyond a Brazilian left back
 but (.) ((that was)) beyond a Brazilian left back **yeah (that [S] was [O/M] beyond a Brazilian left back [C])** I think it was intended (.) for the Brazilian

I think Rafa Benitez will just want something sustained from his side now (**Rafa Benitez [S] will [O] want [M] his side to) just (.) hang on to the ball a little longer (.)** start working some openings

just (.) hang on to the ball a little longer (.) (**Rafa Benitez [S] will [O] want [M] his side to) start working some openings** and just put a little pressure on that Chelsea defence (.)

start working some openings and (**Rafa Benitez [S] will [O] want [M] his side to) just put a little pressure on that Chelsea defence (.)** they had it very comfy so far they know each other so well (.) **the last fifteen meetings (have [O] seen [M]) (.) five Liverpool wins (.) five Chelsea wins (.)** slip by Malouda

Drogba (.) (**there [S] is [O/M] little bit of space for Michael Ballack (.)** and he has to look to the heavens to (.) look for the ball (1.0)

I think he's back on his game (.) (**he [S] looks on top form** his passing is just snapped into feet (.)

and [he's] the one Liverpool need on it (1.0) (**he [S] missed the semi final here three years ago through suspension rather controversially** Liverpool felt that Eidur Gudjohnsen got him booked (.)

now Aurelio (5.0) (**if [S] is [O] well seen by Ferreira (2.0)** little bit of frustration with Babel voiced from the (.) thousands behind him referee had a good view==yeah (**referee [S] did [O] have [M] a good view [C]**)==he was running (.) immediately behind the pair of them

he was running (.) immediately behind the pair of them and (**he [S] waved play on (.)** Terry going back to Cech (1.0)

Terry going back to Cech (1.0) (**if [S] was (.) a clumsy sort of a challenge (2.0)** I'm not sure there was any real intent from Carragher

I'm not sure there was any real intent from Carragher (**if [S] just looked like a coming together (.) from the two of them (.)** it's a decent touch (.) does it favour Carragher a little bit (.) (**he [S] doesn't get there (.)**

well if he's got a toe on the ball I think he might have (**got [M] a toe on the ball [C] you know** I think he might have just brushed the ball (.)